

PCT

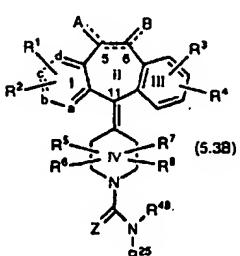
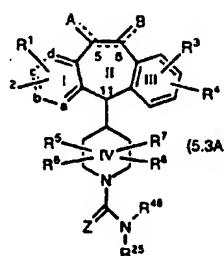
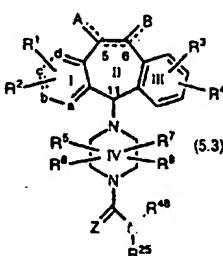
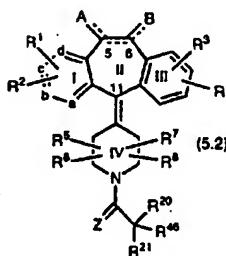
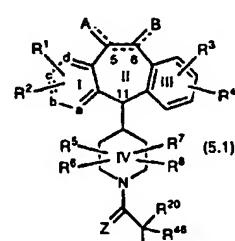
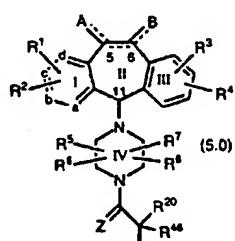
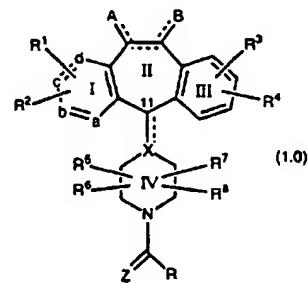
WORLD INTELLECTUAL PROPERTY ORGANIZATION  
International Bureau



INTERNATIONAL APPLICATION PUBLISHED UNDER THE PATENT COOPERATION TREATY (PCT)

(51) International Patent Classification 6 : <b>C07D 401/04, 221/16, 401/14, A61K 31/55, C07D 401/12</b>	A1	(11) International Publication Number: <b>WO 95/10516</b> (43) International Publication Date: <b>20 April 1995 (20.04.95)</b>
(21) International Application Number: <b>PCT/US94/11392</b>		(81) Designated States: AM, AU, BB, BG, BR, BY, CA, CN, CZ, EE, FI, GE, HU, JP, KG, KR, KZ, LK, LR, LT, LV, MD, MG, MN, NO, NZ, PL, RO, RU, SI, SK, TJ, TT, UA, UZ, VN, European patent (AT, BE, CH, DE, DK, ES, FR, GB, GR, IE, IT, LU, MC, NL, PT, SE), OAPI patent (BF, BJ, CF, CG, CI, CM, GA, GN, ML, MR, NE, SN, TD, TG), ARIPO patent (KE, MW, SD, SZ).
(22) International Filing Date: <b>12 October 1994 (12.10.94)</b>		
(30) Priority Data: 08/137,862                    15 October 1993 (15.10.93)                    US		
(71) Applicant: SCHERING CORPORATION [US/US]; 2000 Galloping Hill Road, Kenilworth, NJ 07033 (US).		Published <i>With international search report.</i>
(72) Inventors: BISHOP, W., Robert; 17 Hopper Avenue, Pompton Plains, NJ 07444 (US). DOLL, Ronald, J.; 126 Union Avenue, Maplewood, NJ 07040 (US). MALLAMS, Alan, K.; 147 Kings Highway, Hackettstown, NJ 07840 (US). NJOROGE, F., George; 2597 Juliet Place, Union, NJ 07083 (US). PETRIN, Joanne, M.; 27 Anderson Parkway, Cedar Grove, NJ 07009 (US). PIWINSKI, John, J.; 6 Saddle Ridge Drive, Lebanon, NJ 08833 (US). REMISZEWSKI, Stacy, W.; 147 Honeysuckle Drive, Township of Washington, NJ 07675 (US). TAVERAS, Arthur, G.; 43 Crestwood Road, Rockaway, NJ 07866 (US). WOLIN, Ronald, L.; 406 Mountain Avenue, Westfield, NJ 07090 (US).		
(74) Agents: JEANETTE, Henry, C. et al.; Schering-Plough Corporation, Patent Dept. K-6-1 1990, 2000 Galloping Hill Road, Kenilworth, NJ 07033-0530 (US).		

(54) Title: TRICYCLIC AMIDE AND UREA COMPOUNDS USEFUL FOR INHIBITION OF G-PROTEIN FUNCTION AND FOR TREATMENT OF PROLIFERATIVE DISEASES



(57) Abstract

A method of inhibiting Ras function and therefore inhibiting the abnormal growth of cells is disclosed. The method comprises the administration of a compound of formula (1.0) to a biological system. In particular, the method inhibits the abnormal growth of cells in a mammal such as a human being. Novel compounds of formulae (5.0, 5.1, 5.2, 5.3, 5.3A and 5.3B) are disclosed. Also disclosed are processes for making 3-substituted compounds of formulae (5.0, 5.1, 5.2 and 5.3). Further disclosed are novel compounds which are intermediates in the process for making 3-substituted compounds of formulae (5.0, 5.1, 5.2 and 5.3).

**FOR THE PURPOSES OF INFORMATION ONLY**

Codes used to identify States party to the PCT on the front pages of pamphlets publishing international applications under the PCT.

AT	Austria	GB	United Kingdom	MR	Mauritania
AU	Australia	GE	Georgia	MW	Malawi
BB	Barbados	GN	Guinea	NE	Niger
BE	Belgium	GR	Greece	NL	Netherlands
BF	Burkina Faso	HU	Hungary	NO	Norway
BG	Bulgaria	IE	Ireland	NZ	New Zealand
BJ	Benin	IT	Italy	PL	Poland
BR	Brazil	JP	Japan	PT	Portugal
BY	Belarus	KE	Kenya	RO	Romania
CA	Canada	KG	Kyrgyzstan	RU	Russian Federation
CF	Central African Republic	KP	Democratic People's Republic of Korea	SD	Sudan
CG	Congo	KR	Republic of Korea	SE	Sweden
CH	Switzerland	KZ	Kazakhstan	SI	Slovenia
CI	Côte d'Ivoire	LI	Liechtenstein	SK	Slovakia
CM	Cameroon	LK	Sri Lanka	SN	Senegal
CN	China	LU	Luxembourg	TD	Chad
CS	Czechoslovakia	LV	Latvia	TG	Togo
CZ	Czech Republic	MC	Monaco	TJ	Tajikistan
DE	Germany	MD	Republic of Moldova	TT	Trinidad and Tobago
DK	Denmark	MG	Madagascar	UA	Ukraine
ES	Spain	ML	Mali	US	United States of America
FI	Finland	MN	Mongolia	UZ	Uzbekistan
FR	France			VN	Viet Nam
GA	Gabon				

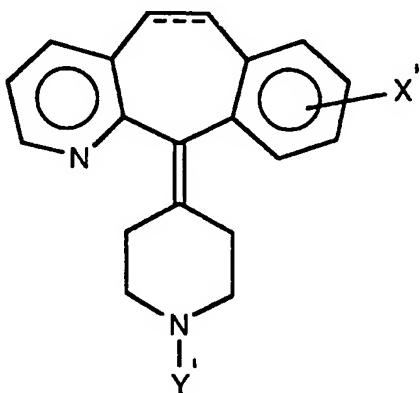
-1-

5

10      TRICYCLIC AMIDE AND UREA COMPOUNDS USEFUL FOR  
INHIBITION OF G-PROTEIN FUNCTION AND FOR TREATMENT  
OF PROLIFERATIVE DISEASES

BACKGROUND

15      International Publication Number WO92/11034, published July 9, 1992, discloses a method of increasing the sensitivity of a tumor to an antineoplastic agent, which tumor is resistant to the antineoplastic agent, by the concurrent administration of the antineoplastic agent and a potentiating agent of the formula:



20      wherein the dotted line represents an optional double bond, X' is hydrogen or halo, and Y' is hydrogen, substituted carboxylate or substituted sulfonyl. For example, Y' can be, amongst others, -COOR' wherein R' is C1 to C6 alkyl or substituted alkyl, phenyl, substituted phenyl, C7 to C12 aralkyl or substituted aralkyl or -2, -3, or -4 piperidyl or N-substituted piperidyl. Y' can also be, amongst others, SO<sub>2</sub>R' wherein R' is C1 to C6 alkyl, phenyl, substituted phenyl, C7 to C12 aralkyl or substituted aralkyl. Examples of such potentiating agents include 11-(4-piperidylidene)-5H-benzo[5,6]cyclohepta[1,2-b]pyridines such as Loratadine.

25

- 2 -

Oncogenes frequently encode protein components of signal transduction pathways which lead to stimulation of cell growth and mitogenesis. Oncogene expression in cultured cells leads to cellular transformation, characterized by the ability of cells to grow in soft agar and  
5 the growth of cells as dense foci lacking the contact inhibition exhibited by non-transformed cells. Mutation and/or overexpression of certain oncogenes is frequently associated with human cancer.

To acquire transforming potential, the precursor of the Ras oncoprotein must undergo farnesylation of the cysteine residue located in  
10 a carboxyl-terminal tetrapeptide. Inhibitors of the enzyme that catalyzes this modification, farnesyl protein transferase, have therefore been suggested as anticancer agents for tumors in which Ras contributes to transformation. Mutated, oncogenic forms of ras are frequently found in many human cancers, most notably in more than 50% of colon and  
15 pancreatic carcinomas (Kohl et al., Science, Vol. 260, 1834 to 1837, 1993).

In view of the current interest in inhibitors of farnesyl protein transferase, a welcome contribution to the art would be compounds useful for the inhibition of farnesyl protein transferase. Such a contribution is  
20 provided by this invention.

#### SUMMARY OF THE INVENTION

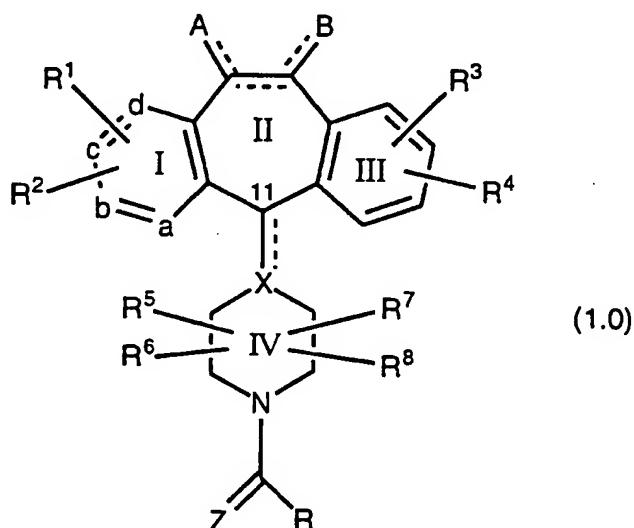
Inhibition of farnesyl protein transferase by tricyclic compounds of this invention has not been reported previously. Thus, this invention  
25 provides a method for inhibiting farnesyl protein transferase using tricyclic compounds of this invention which: (i) potently inhibit farnesyl protein transferase, but not geranylgeranyl protein transferase I, *in vitro*; (ii) block the phenotypic change induced by a form of transforming Ras which is a farnesyl acceptor but not by a form of transforming Ras engineered to be a  
30 geranylgeranyl acceptor; (iii) block intracellular processing of Ras which is a farnesyl acceptor but not of Ras engineered to be a geranylgeranyl acceptor; and (iv) block abnormal cell growth in culture induced by transforming Ras. Several compounds of this invention have been demonstrated to have anti-tumor activity in animal models.

35 This invention provides a method for inhibiting the abnormal growth of cells, including transformed cells, by administering an effective amount of a compound of this invention. Abnormal growth of cells refers to cell growth independent of normal regulatory mechanisms (e.g., loss of

- 3 -

contact inhibition). This includes the abnormal growth of: (1) tumor cells (tumors) expressing an activated Ras oncogene; (2) tumor cells in which the Ras protein is activated as a result of oncogenic mutation in another gene; and (3) benign and malignant cells of other proliferative diseases in  
5 which aberrant Ras activation occurs.

Compounds useful in the claimed methods are represented by  
Formula 1.0:



or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt or solvate thereof, wherein:

- 10 one of a, b, c and d represents N or NR<sup>9</sup> wherein R<sup>9</sup> is O<sup>-</sup>, -CH<sub>3</sub> or -(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>n</sub>CO<sub>2</sub>H wherein n is 1 to 3, and the remaining a, b, c and d groups represent CR<sup>1</sup> or CR<sup>2</sup>; or
  - each of a, b, c, and d are independently selected from CR<sup>1</sup> or CR<sup>2</sup>;
  - each R<sup>1</sup> and each R<sup>2</sup> is independently selected from H, halo, -CF<sub>3</sub>,
- 15 -OR<sup>10</sup> (e.g., -OCH<sub>3</sub>), -COR<sup>10</sup>, -SR<sup>10</sup> (e.g., -SCH<sub>3</sub> and -SCH<sub>2</sub>C<sub>6</sub>H<sub>5</sub>), -S(O)<sub>t</sub>R<sup>11</sup> (wherein t is 0, 1 or 2, e.g., -SOCH<sub>3</sub> and -SO<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>3</sub>), -N(R<sup>10</sup>)<sub>2</sub>, -NO<sub>2</sub>, -OC(O)R<sup>10</sup>, -CO<sub>2</sub>R<sup>10</sup>, -OCO<sub>2</sub>R<sup>11</sup>, -CN, -NR<sup>10</sup>COOR<sup>11</sup>, -SR<sup>11</sup>C(O)OR<sup>11</sup> (e.g., -SCH<sub>2</sub>CO<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>3</sub>), -SR<sup>11</sup>N(R<sup>75</sup>)<sub>2</sub> wherein each R<sup>75</sup> is independently selected from H and -C(O)OR<sup>11</sup> (e.g.,
  - 20 -S(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>2</sub>NHC(O)O-t-butyl and -S(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>2</sub>NH<sub>2</sub>), benzotriazol-1-yloxy, tetrazol-5-ylthio, or substituted tetrazol-5-ylthio (e.g., alkyl substituted tetrazol-5-ylthio such as 1-methyl-tetrazol-5-ylthio), alkynyl, alkenyl or alkyl, said alkyl or alkenyl group optionally being substituted with halo, -OR<sup>10</sup> or -CO<sub>2</sub>R<sup>10</sup>;
  - 25 R<sup>3</sup> and R<sup>4</sup> are the same or different and each independently represents H, any of the substituents of R<sup>1</sup> and R<sup>2</sup>, or R<sup>3</sup> and R<sup>4</sup> taken

- 4 -

together represent a saturated or unsaturated C<sub>5</sub>-C<sub>7</sub> fused ring to the benzene ring (Ring III);

- R<sup>5</sup>, R<sup>6</sup>, R<sup>7</sup> and R<sup>8</sup> each independently represents H, -CF<sub>3</sub>, -COR<sup>10</sup>, alkyl or aryl, said alkyl or aryl optionally being substituted with -OR<sup>10</sup>, -SR<sup>10</sup>, -S(O)<sub>2</sub>R<sup>11</sup>, -NR<sup>10</sup>COOR<sup>11</sup>, -N(R<sup>10</sup>)<sub>2</sub>, -NO<sub>2</sub>, -COR<sup>10</sup>, -OCOR<sup>10</sup>, -OCO<sub>2</sub>R<sup>11</sup>, -CO<sub>2</sub>R<sup>10</sup>, OPO<sub>3</sub>R<sup>10</sup> or one of R<sup>5</sup>, R<sup>6</sup>, R<sup>7</sup> and R<sup>8</sup> can be taken in combination with R<sup>40</sup> as defined below to represent -(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>r</sub> wherein r is 1 to 4 which can be substituted with lower alkyl, lower alkoxy, -CF<sub>3</sub> or aryl, or R<sup>5</sup> is combined with R<sup>6</sup> to represent =O or =S and/or R<sup>7</sup> is combined with R<sup>8</sup> to represent =O or =S;

R<sup>10</sup> represents H, alkyl, aryl, or aralkyl (e.g., benzyl);

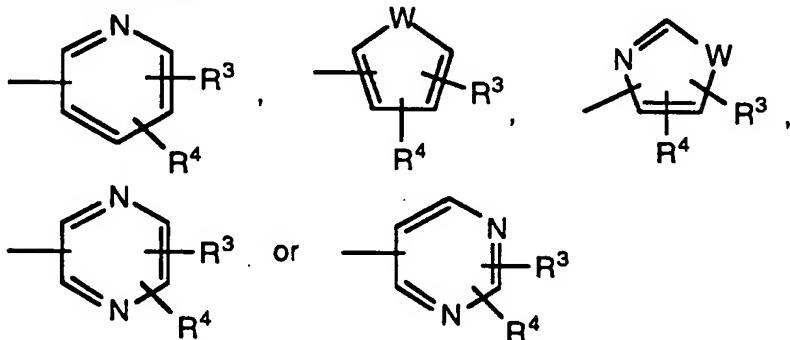
R<sup>11</sup> represents alkyl or aryl;

X represents N, CH or C, which C may contain an optional double bond (represented by the dotted line) to carbon atom 11;

- the dotted line between carbon atoms 5 and 6 represents an optional double bond, such that when a double bond is present, A and B independently represent -R<sup>10</sup>, halo, -OR<sup>11</sup>, -OCO<sub>2</sub>R<sup>11</sup> or -OC(O)R<sup>10</sup>, and when no double bond is present between carbon atoms 5 and 6, A and B each independently represent H<sub>2</sub>, -(OR<sup>11</sup>)<sub>2</sub>, H and halo, dihalo, alkyl and H, (alkyl)<sub>2</sub>, -H and -OC(O)R<sup>10</sup>, H and -OR<sup>10</sup>, =O, aryl and H, =NOR<sup>10</sup> or -O-(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>p</sub>-O- wherein p is 2, 3 or 4;

R represents R<sup>40</sup>, R<sup>42</sup>, R<sup>44</sup>, or R<sup>54</sup>, as defined below;

R<sup>40</sup> represents H, aryl, alkyl, cycloalkyl, alkenyl, alkynyl or -D wherein -D represents

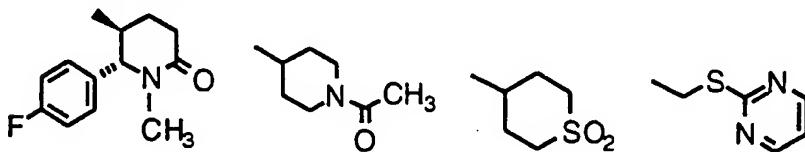


- wherein R<sup>3</sup> and R<sup>4</sup> are as previously defined and W is O, S or NR<sup>10</sup> wherein R<sup>10</sup> is as defined above; said R<sup>40</sup> cycloalkyl, alkenyl and alkynyl groups being optionally substituted with from 1-3 groups selected from halo, -CON(R<sup>10</sup>)<sub>2</sub>, aryl, -CO<sub>2</sub>R<sup>10</sup>, -OR<sup>12</sup>, -SR<sup>12</sup>, -N(R<sup>10</sup>)<sub>2</sub>, -N(R<sup>10</sup>)CO<sub>2</sub>R<sup>11</sup>, -COR<sup>12</sup>, -NO<sub>2</sub> or D, wherein -D, R<sup>10</sup> and R<sup>11</sup> are as defined above and R<sup>12</sup> represents R<sup>10</sup>, -(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>m</sub>OR<sup>10</sup> or -(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>q</sub>CO<sub>2</sub>R<sup>10</sup>

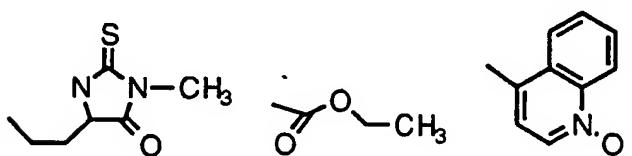
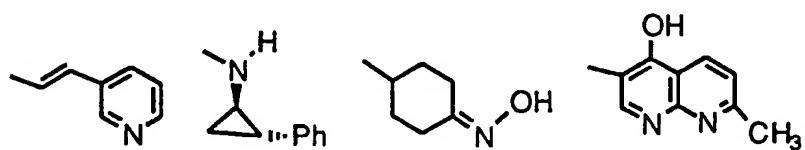
- 5 -

- wherein R<sup>10</sup> is as previously defined, m is 1 to 4 and q is 0 to 4; said alkenyl and alkynyl R<sup>40</sup> groups not containing -OH, -SH or -N(R<sup>10</sup>)<sub>2</sub> on a carbon containing a double or triple bond respectively; or R<sup>40</sup> represents phenyl substituted with a group selected from
- 5    -SO<sub>2</sub>NH<sub>2</sub>, -NHSO<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>3</sub>, -SO<sub>2</sub>NHCH<sub>3</sub>, -SO<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>3</sub>, -SOCH<sub>3</sub>, -SCH<sub>3</sub>, or -NHSO<sub>2</sub>CF<sub>3</sub>, preferably, said group is located in the para (p-) position of the phenyl ring; or

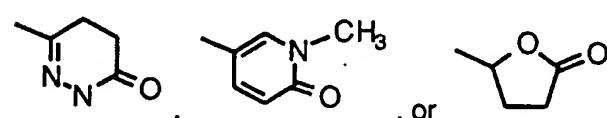
R<sup>40</sup> represents a group selected from



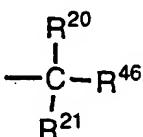
10



15



R<sup>42</sup> represents



wherein R<sup>20</sup>, R<sup>21</sup> and R<sup>46</sup> are each independently selected from the group consisting of:

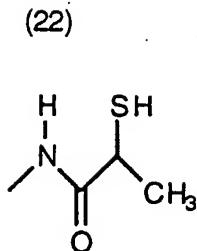
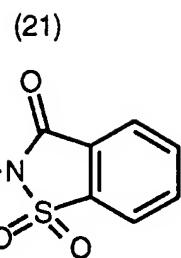
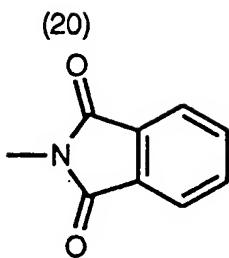
- 20    (1) H;  
       (2) -(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>q</sub>SC(O)CH<sub>3</sub> wherein q is 1 to 3 (e.g., -CH<sub>2</sub>SC(O)CH<sub>3</sub>);  
       (3) -(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>q</sub>OSO<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>3</sub> wherein q is 1 to 3 (e.g., -CH<sub>2</sub>OSO<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>3</sub>);  
       (4) -OH;  
       (5) -CS(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>w</sub>(substituted phenyl) wherein w is 1 to 3 and the  
 25    substituents on said substituted phenyl group are the same substituents

- 6 -

as described below for said substituted phenyl (e.g., -C-S-CH<sub>2</sub>-4-methoxyphenyl);

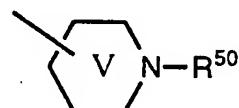
- (6) -NH<sub>2</sub>;
- (7) -NHCbz (wherein CBZ stands for carbonylbenzyloxy--i.e.,
- 5 CBZ represents -C(O)OCH<sub>2</sub>C<sub>6</sub>H<sub>5</sub>);
- (8) -NHC(O)OR<sup>22</sup> wherein R<sup>22</sup> is an alkyl group having from 1 to 5 carbon atoms (e.g., R<sup>22</sup> is t-butyl thus forming -NHBOC wherein BOC stands for tert-butyloxycarbonyl--i.e., BOC represents -C(O)OC(CH<sub>3</sub>)<sub>3</sub>), or R<sup>22</sup> represents phenyl substituted with 1 to 3 alkyl groups (e.g., 4-
- 10 methylphenyl);
- (9) alkyl (e.g., ethyl);
- (10) -(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>k</sub>phenyl wherein k is 1 to 6, usually 1 to 4 and preferably 1 (e.g., benzyl);
- (11) phenyl;
- 15 (12) substituted phenyl (i.e., phenyl substituted with from 1 to 3 substituents, preferably one) wherein the substituents are selected from the group consisting of: halo (e.g., Br, Cl, or I, with Br being preferred); NO<sub>2</sub>; -OH; -OCH<sub>3</sub>; -NH<sub>2</sub>; -NHR<sup>22</sup>; -N(R<sup>22</sup>)<sub>2</sub>; alkyl (e.g., alkyl having from 1 to 3 carbons with methyl being preferred); -O(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>t</sub>phenyl (wherein t is 20 from 1 to 3 with 1 being preferred); and -O(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>t</sub>substituted phenyl (wherein t is from 1 to 3 with 1 being preferred); examples of substituted phenyls include, but are not limited to, p-bromophenyl, m-nitrophenyl, o-nitrophenyl, m-hydroxy-phenyl, o-hydroxyphenyl, methoxyphenyl, p-methylphenyl, m-methyl-phenyl, and -OCH<sub>2</sub>C<sub>6</sub>H<sub>5</sub>;
- 25 (13) naphthyl;
- (14) substituted naphthyl, wherein the substituents are as defined for substituted phenyl above;
- (15) bridged polycyclic hydrocarbons having from 5 to 10 carbon atoms (e.g., adamantyl and norbornyl);
- 30 (16) cycloalkyl having from 5 to 7 carbon atoms (e.g., cyclopentyl, and cyclohexyl);
- (17) heteroaryl (e.g., pyridyl, and pyridyl N-oxide);
- (18) hydroxalkyl (e.g., -(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>v</sub>OH wherein v is 1 to 3, such as, for example, -CH<sub>2</sub>OH);
- 35 (19) substituted pyridyl or substituted pyridyl N-oxide wherein the substituents are selected from the substituents given above for said substituted phenyl, and said substituents are bound to a ring carbon by replacement of the hydrogen bound to said carbon;

- 7 -

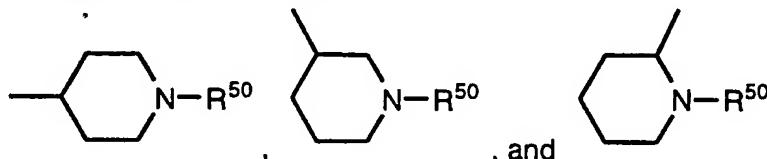


(23) -NHC(O)-(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>k</sub>-phenyl or -NH(O)-(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>k</sub>-substituted phenyl,  
wherein said k is as defined above (i.e., 1-6, usually 1-4 and preferably  
5 1);

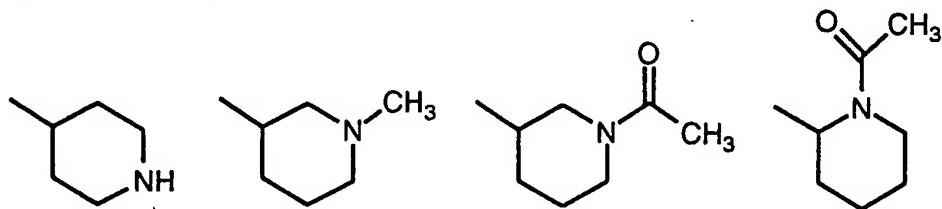
(24) piperidine Ring V:



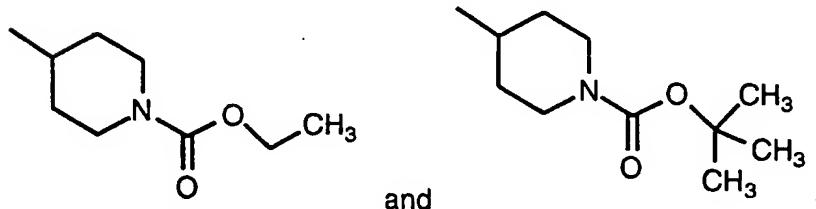
wherein R<sup>50</sup> represents H, alkyl (e.g., methyl), alkylcarbonyl (e.g., CH<sub>3</sub>C(O)-), alkyloxycarbonyl (e.g., -C(O)O-t-C<sub>4</sub>H<sub>9</sub>, -C(O)OC<sub>2</sub>H<sub>5</sub>, and  
10 -C(O)OCH<sub>3</sub>), haloalkyl (e.g., trifluoromethyl), or --C(O)NH(R<sup>10</sup>) wherein  
R<sup>10</sup> is H or alkyl; Ring V includes



examples of Ring V include:



15

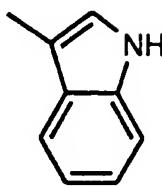


(25) -NHC(O)CH<sub>2</sub>C<sub>6</sub>H<sub>5</sub> or -NHC(O)CH<sub>2</sub>-substituted-C<sub>6</sub>H<sub>5</sub>, for example -NHC(O)CH<sub>2</sub>-p-hydroxyphenyl, -NHC(O)CH<sub>2</sub>-m-hydroxyphenyl, and -NHC(O)CH<sub>2</sub>-o-hydroxyphenyl;

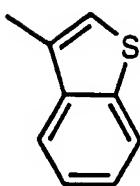
20 (26) -NHC(O)OC<sub>6</sub>H<sub>5</sub>;

- 8 -

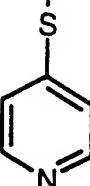
(27)



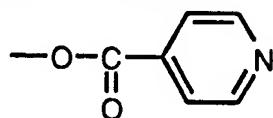
(28)



(29)



(30) -OC(O)-heteroaryl, for example



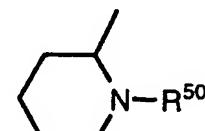
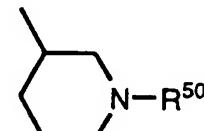
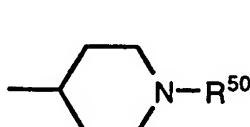
- 5 (31) -O-alkyl (e.g., -OCH<sub>3</sub>); and  
 (32) -CF<sub>3</sub>; or

R<sup>20</sup> and R<sup>21</sup> taken together form a =O group and the remaining R<sup>46</sup> is as defined above; or

Two of R<sup>20</sup>, R<sup>21</sup> and R<sup>46</sup> taken together form piperidine Ring V

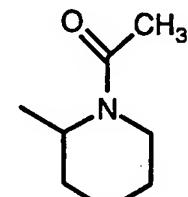
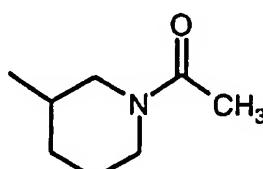
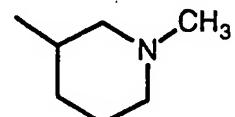
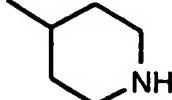


10 wherein R<sup>50</sup> represents H, alkyl (e.g., methyl), alkylcarbonyl (e.g., CH<sub>3</sub>C(O)-), alkyloxycarbonyl (e.g., -C(O)O-t-C<sub>4</sub>H<sub>9</sub>, -C(O)OC<sub>2</sub>H<sub>5</sub>, and -C(O)OCH<sub>3</sub>), haloalkyl (e.g., trifluoro-methyl), or -C(O)NH(R<sup>10</sup>) wherein R<sup>10</sup> is H or alkyl; Ring V includes

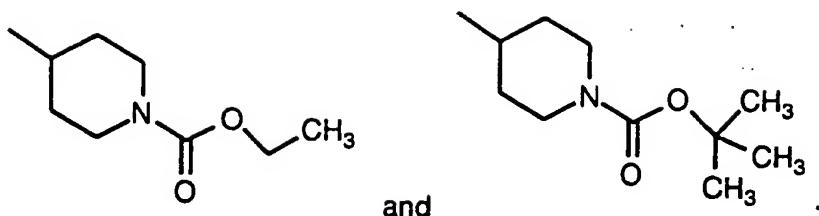


15

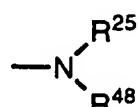
examples of Ring V include:



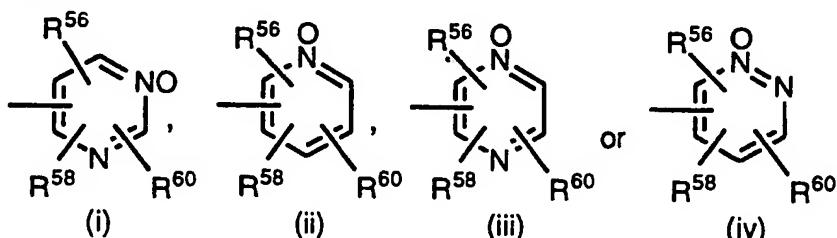
- 9 -



- with the proviso that R<sup>46</sup>, R<sup>20</sup>, and R<sup>21</sup> are selected such that the carbon atom to which they are bound does not contain more than one heteroatom (i.e., R<sup>46</sup>, R<sup>20</sup>, and R<sup>21</sup> are selected such that the carbon atom to which they are bound contains 0 or 1 heteroatom);
- 5      R<sup>44</sup> represents

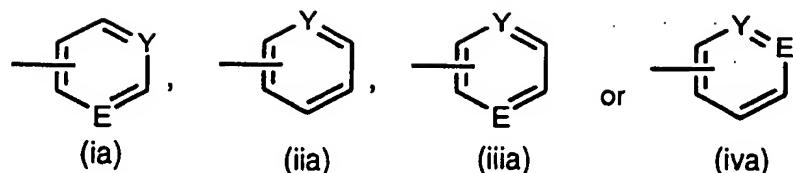


- wherein R<sup>25</sup> represents heteroaryl (e.g., pyridyl or pyridyl N-oxide) or aryl (e.g., phenyl and substituted phenyl); and R<sup>48</sup> represents H or alkyl (e.g., methyl);
- 10     R<sup>54</sup> represents an N-oxide heterocyclic group of the formula (i), (ii), (iii) or (iv):



- wherein R<sup>56</sup>, R<sup>58</sup>, and R<sup>60</sup> are the same or different and each is
- 15     independently selected from H, halo, -CF<sub>3</sub>, -OR<sup>10</sup>, -C(O)R<sup>10</sup>, -SR<sup>10</sup>, -S(O)eR<sup>11</sup> (wherein e is 1 or 2), -N(R<sup>10</sup>)<sub>2</sub>, -NO<sub>2</sub>, -CO<sub>2</sub>R<sup>10</sup>, -OCO<sub>2</sub>R<sup>11</sup>, -OCOR<sup>10</sup>, alkyl, aryl, alkenyl or alkynyl, which alkyl may be substituted with -OR<sup>10</sup>, -SR<sup>10</sup> or -N(R<sup>10</sup>)<sub>2</sub> and which alkenyl may be substituted with OR<sup>11</sup> or SR<sup>11</sup>; or
- 20     R<sup>54</sup> represents an N-oxide heterocyclic group of the formula (ia), (iia), (iiiia) or (iva):

- 10 -

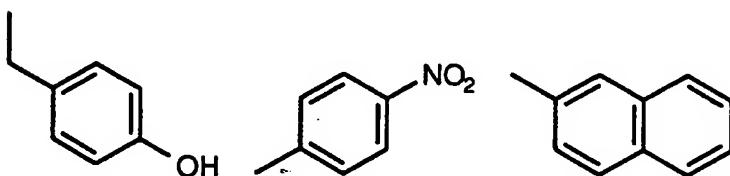
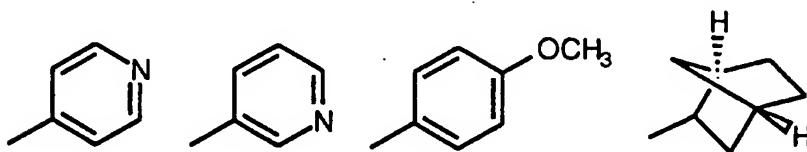


wherein Y represents N+O- and E represents N; or

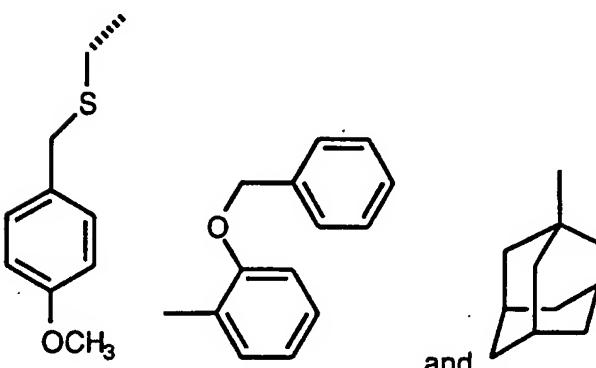
$R^{54}$  represents an alkyl group substituted with one of said N-oxide heterocyclic groups (i), (ii), (iii), (iv), (ia), (iiia), (iiia) or (iva):

5 Z represents O or S such that R can be taken in combination with R<sup>5</sup>, R<sup>6</sup>, R<sup>7</sup> or R<sup>8</sup> as defined above, or R represents R<sup>40</sup>, R<sup>42</sup>, R<sup>44</sup> or R<sup>54</sup>.

Examples of  $R^{20}$ ,  $R^{21}$ , and  $R^{46}$  for the above formulas include:

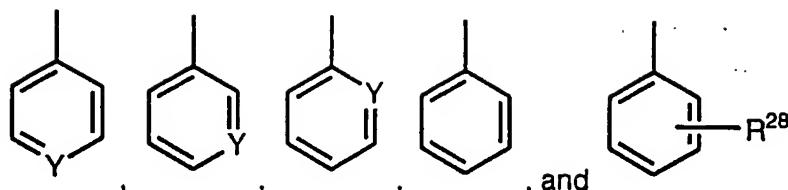


10



Examples of R<sub>25</sub> groups include:

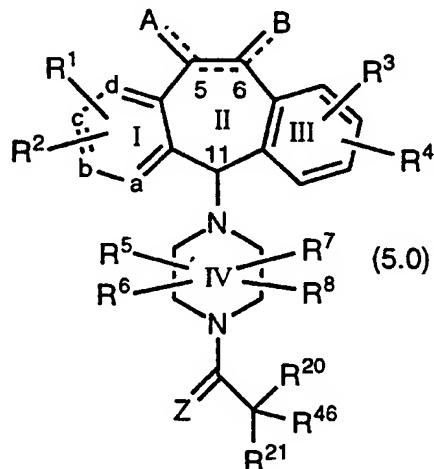
- 11 -



wherein Y represents N or NO, R<sup>28</sup> is selected from the group consisting of: C<sub>1</sub> to C<sub>4</sub> alkyl, halo, hydroxy, NO<sub>2</sub>, amino (-NH<sub>2</sub>), -NHR<sup>30</sup>, and -N(R<sup>30</sup>)<sub>2</sub> wherein R<sup>30</sup> represents C<sub>1</sub> to C<sub>6</sub> alkyl.

5 Tricyclic compounds useful in the methods of this invention are described in: (1) U.S. 5,151,423; (2) U.S. 4,826,853; (3) U.S. 5,089,496; (4) WO 88/03138 published on May 5, 1988 (PCT/US87/02777); and (5) U.S. 5,104,876; the disclosures of each being incorporated herein by reference thereto. Those compounds within the scope of this invention  
10 which are not described in these documents are described herein.

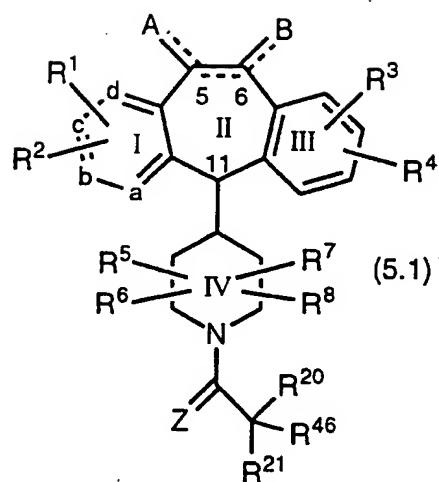
This invention also provides novel compounds of Formula 1.0 having the formula:



wherein all substituents are as defined for Formula 1.0

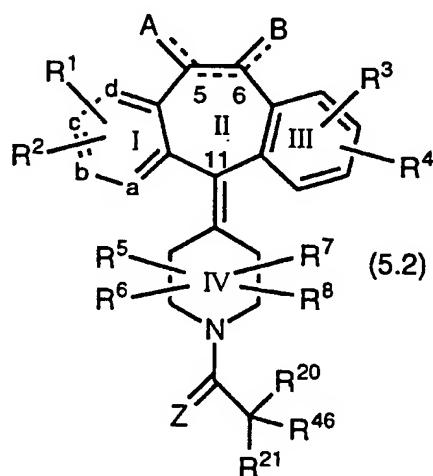
15 This invention further provides novel compounds of Formula 1.0 having the formula:

- 12 -



wherein all substituents are as defined for Formula 1.0

Additionally, this invention provides novel compounds of Formula 1.0 having the formula:



5

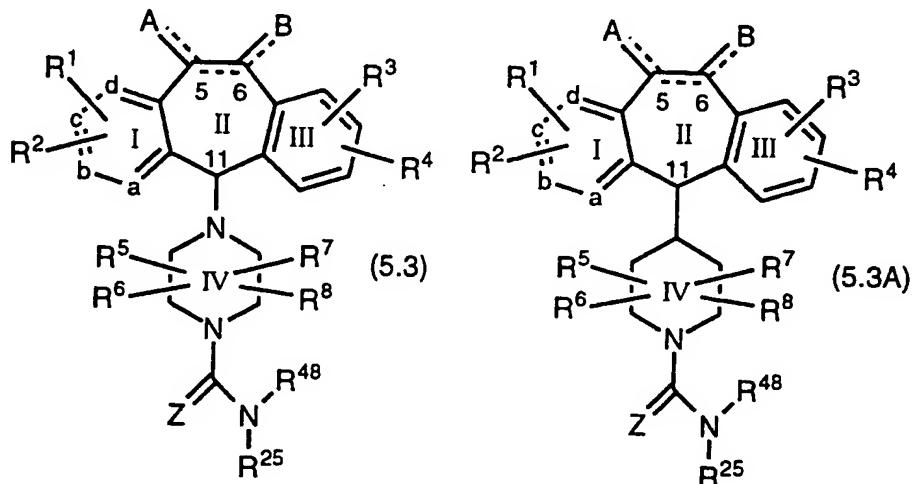
wherein all substituents are as defined for Formula 1.0.

- Compounds of Formula 5.2 include compounds wherein the substituents R<sup>20</sup>, R<sup>21</sup>, and R<sup>46</sup> are selected such that when one of said substituents R<sup>20</sup>, R<sup>21</sup>, and R<sup>46</sup> (e.g., R<sup>46</sup>) is selected from the group consisting of: (1) H, (2) -OH, (3) -NH<sub>2</sub>, (4) -NHC(O)OR<sup>22</sup>, (5) alkyl, (6) phenyl, (7) heteroaryl, (8) hydroxyalkyl, (9) substituted pyridyl, (10) substituted phenyl and (11) -O-alkyl, then the remaining two of said substituents R<sup>20</sup>, R<sup>21</sup> and R<sup>46</sup> (e.g., R<sup>20</sup> and R<sup>21</sup>) cannot both be H when: (a) R<sup>1</sup> and R<sup>2</sup> are both H, and (b) the double bond between C-5 and C-6 is absent, and (c) both A and B are H<sub>2</sub>, and (d) R<sup>4</sup> is H, and (e) R<sup>3</sup> is H or Cl at C-8. Compounds of Formula 5.2 also include compounds wherein when R<sup>46</sup> is a group (1) to (11) defined above then R<sup>20</sup> and R<sup>21</sup> cannot

- 13 -

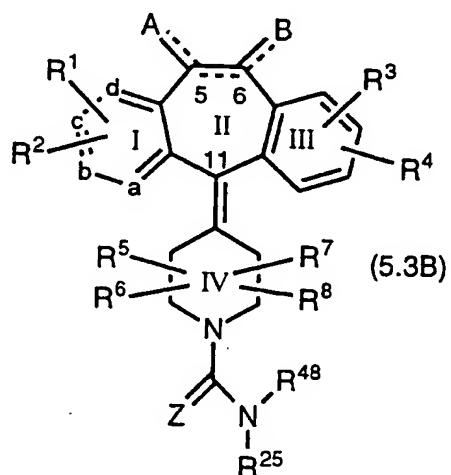
both be H when: R<sup>1</sup> and R<sup>2</sup> are both H, and both A and B are H or H<sub>2</sub>. Compounds of Formula 5.2 further include compounds wherein when R<sup>46</sup> is a group (1) to (11) defined above then R<sup>20</sup> and R<sup>21</sup> cannot both be H when R<sup>1</sup> and R<sup>2</sup> are both H. Compounds of Formula 5.2 also include compounds wherein two of R<sup>20</sup>, R<sup>21</sup> and R<sup>46</sup> are not H when R<sup>1</sup> and R<sup>2</sup> are both H.

This invention further provides novel compounds of Formula 1.0 having the formula:



10

or



wherein all the substituents are as defined for Formula 1.0. Preferably R<sup>25</sup> represents heteroaryl.

- 14 -

This invention also provides a method for inhibiting tumor growth by administering an effective amount of the tricyclic compounds, described herein, to a mammal (e.g., a human) in need of such treatment. In particular, this invention provides a method for inhibiting the growth of tumors expressing an activated Ras oncogene by the administration of an effective amount of the above described compounds. Examples of tumors which may be inhibited include, but are not limited to, lung cancer (e.g., lung adenocarcinoma), pancreatic cancers (e.g., pancreatic carcinoma such as, for example, exocrine pancreatic carcinoma), colon cancers (e.g., colorectal carcinomas, such as, for example, colon adenocarcinoma and colon adenoma), myeloid leukemias (for example, acute myelogenous leukemia (AML)), thyroid follicular cancer, myelodysplastic syndrome (MDS), bladder carcinoma and epidermal carcinoma.

It is believed that this invention also provides a method for inhibiting proliferative diseases, both benign and malignant, wherein Ras proteins are aberrantly activated as a result of oncogenic mutation in other genes--i.e., the Ras gene itself is not activated by mutation to an oncogenic form--with said inhibition being accomplished by the administration of an effective amount of the tricyclic compounds described herein, to a mammal (e.g., a human) in need of such treatment. For example, the benign proliferative disorder neurofibromatosis, or tumors in which Ras is activated due to mutation or overexpression of tyrosine kinase oncogenes (e.g., neu, src, abl, lck, and fyn), may be inhibited by the tricyclic compounds described herein.

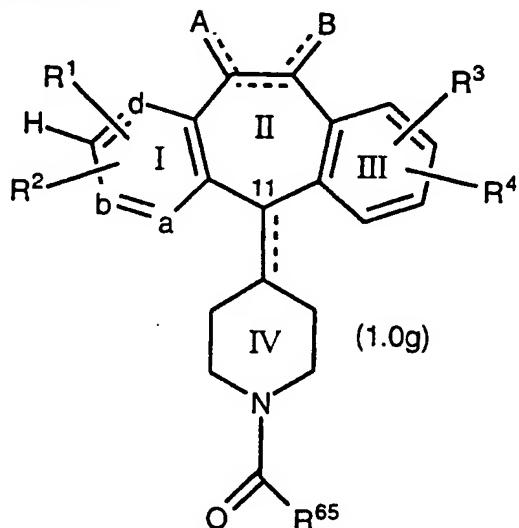
The compounds of this invention inhibit farnesyl protein transferase and the farnesylation of the oncogene protein Ras. This invention further provides a method of inhibiting ras farnesyl protein transferase, in mammals, especially humans, by the administration of an effective amount of the tricyclic compounds described above. The administration of the compounds of this invention to patients, to inhibit farnesyl protein transferase, is useful in the treatment of the cancers described above.

The tricyclic compounds useful in the methods of this invention inhibit the abnormal growth of cells. Without wishing to be bound by theory, it is believed that these compounds may function through the inhibition of G-protein function, such as ras p21, by blocking G-protein isoprenylation, thus making them useful in the treatment of proliferative diseases such as tumor growth and cancer. Without wishing to be bound by theory, it is believed that these compounds inhibit ras farnesyl protein

- 15 -

transferase, and thus show antiproliferative activity against ras transformed cells.

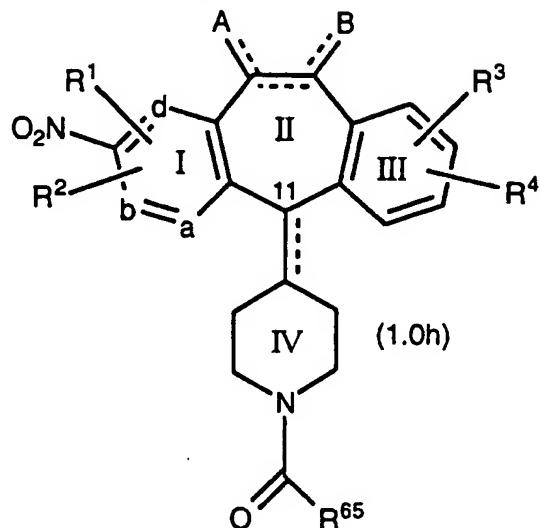
This invention also provides a process for producing 3-nitro substituted compounds. The process comprises reacting one molar equivalent of a compound:



wherein R<sup>1</sup>, R<sup>2</sup>, R<sup>3</sup>, R<sup>4</sup>, A, B, a, b, d, and the dotted lines are as defined for Formula 1.0; and R<sup>65</sup> represents H or -OR<sup>66</sup> wherein R<sup>66</sup> represents alkyl (e.g., C<sub>1</sub> to C<sub>4</sub> alkyl, preferably ethyl); with one molar equivalent of a 10 nitrating reagent, said nitrating reagent being preformed (i.e., prepared first) by mixing, at cold temperature (e.g., at 0°C) equimolar amounts of tetrabutyl ammonium nitrate with trifluoroacetic anhydride; the reaction of the nitrating reagent with the compound of Formula 1.0g taking place in a suitable aprotic solvent (e.g., methylene chloride, chloroform, toluene or tetrahydrofuran); said reaction with said nitrating reagent being conducted at a temperature and for a period of time sufficient to allow the reaction to proceed at a reasonable rate to produce the desired final 3-nitro compound of Formula 1.0h (described below)--i.e., the reaction of the compound of Formula 1.0g with said nitrating reagent is conducted at an initial temperature of 0°C, and said reaction temperature is thereafter allowed to rise to about 25°C during the reaction time period. The reaction usually proceeds overnight to completion, i.e., the reaction usually proceeds for about 16 hours. The reaction can be conducted within a temperature of 0°C to about 25°C during a time period of about 20 25 10 to about 24 hours. Preferably the reaction is initially conducted at 0°C

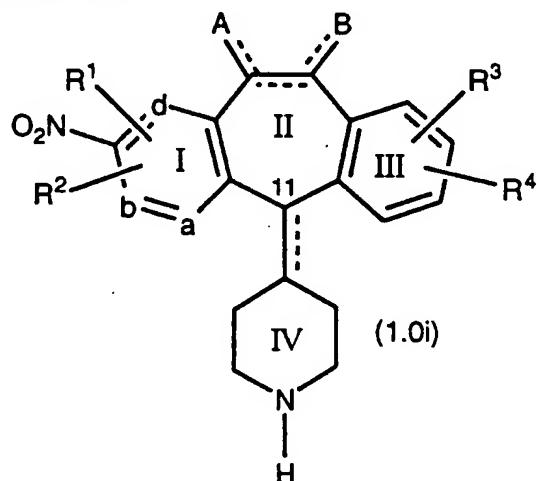
- 16 -

and the temperature is allowed to warm up to 25°C. The reaction produces the 3-nitro compound:



The compound of Formula 1.0h can then be converted to other 3-substituted products by methods well known to those skilled in the art. For example, the 3-nitro compounds can be converted to 3-amino, 3-halo, 3-cyano, 3-alkyl, 3-aryl, 3-thio, 3-arylalkyl, 3-hydroxyl, and 3-OR<sup>67</sup> wherein R<sup>67</sup> is alkyl or aryl. The 3-substituted compounds can then be converted to final products (wherein R<sup>65</sup> is R<sup>42</sup> or R<sup>44</sup>) by the procedures described herein.

This invention also provides a process for producing 3-nitro compounds of the formula:



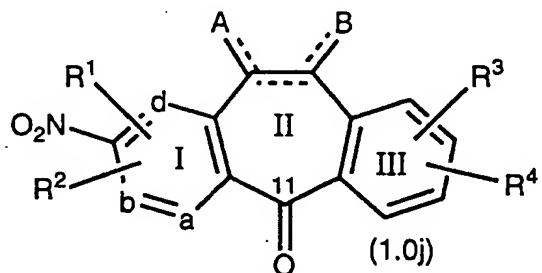
by producing a compound of Formula 1.0h from 1.0g as described above; 15 and then hydrolyzing the compound of Formula 1.0h by dissolving the

- 17 -

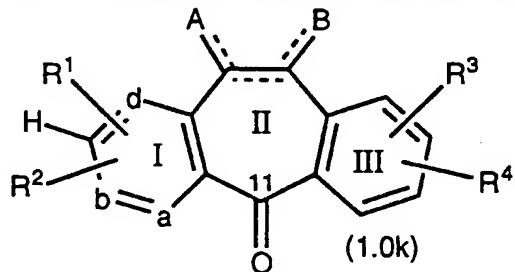
- compound of Formula 1.0h in a sufficient amount of concentrated acid (e.g., concentrated HCl or aqueous sulfuric acid), and heating the resulting mixture to a temperature sufficient to remove (hydrolyze) the -C(O)R<sup>65</sup> substituent, for example, heating to reflux or to a temperature of about 100°C. This hydrolysis process is exemplified in Preparative Example 28.

The compound of Formula 1.0i can then be converted to other 3-substituted compounds as discussed above for the compounds of Formula 1.0h. The compounds of Formula 1.0i can then be converted to compounds of this invention by the methods described herein.

This invention also provides a process for producing compounds of the formula:



by reacting one molar equivalent a compound of formula:



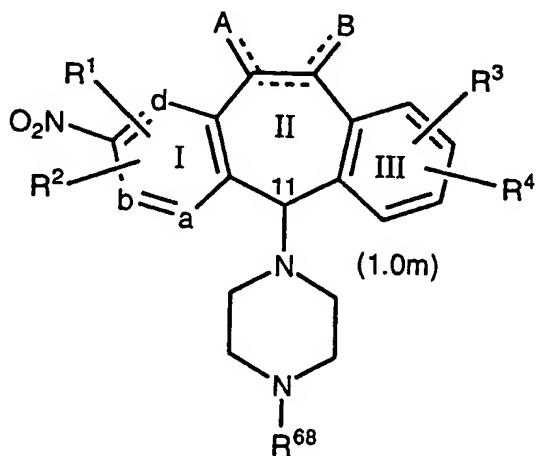
- with one molar equivalent of a nitrating reagent, said nitrating reagent being preformed (i.e., prepared first) by mixing, at cold temperature (e.g., at 0°C) equimolar amounts of tetrabutyl ammonium nitrate with trifluoroacetic anhydride; the reaction of the nitrating reagent with the compound of Formula 1.0k taking place in a suitable aprotic solvent (e.g., methylene chloride, chloroform, toluene or tetrahydrofuran); said reaction with said nitrating reagent being conducted at a temperature and for a period of time sufficient to allow the reaction to proceed at a reasonable rate to produce the desired final 3-nitro compound of Formula 1.0j--i.e., the reaction of the compound of Formula 1.0k with said nitrating reagent is conducted at an intial temperature of 0°C, and said reaction temperature

- 18 -

- is thereafter allowed to rise to about 25°C during the reaction time period. The reaction usually proceeds overnight to completion, i.e., the reaction usually proceeds for about 16 hours. The reaction can be conducted within a temperature of 0°C to about 25°C during a time period of about 5 10 to about 24 hours. Preferably the reaction is initially conducted at 0°C and the temperature is allowed to warm up to 25°C. In Formulas 1.0j and 1.0k, R<sup>1</sup>, R<sup>2</sup>, R<sup>3</sup>, R<sup>4</sup>, A, B, a, b, d, and the dotted lines are as defined for Formula 1.0

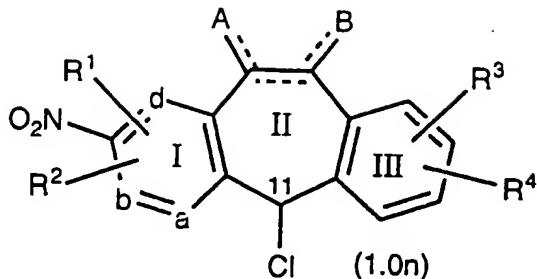
- 10 The compounds of Formula 1.0j can be converted to compounds of Formula 1.0h by methods described below. Also, as discussed above for the compounds of Formula 1.0h, the compounds of Formula 1.0j can be converted to other 3-substituted compounds wherein the substituents are those discussed above for Formula 1.0h.

- 15 The compounds of Formula 1.0j can be converted to compounds of Formula 1.0m:

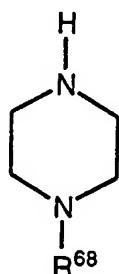


- wherein R<sup>68</sup> is H or -COOR<sup>a</sup> wherein R<sup>a</sup> is a C<sub>1</sub> to C<sub>3</sub> alkyl group (preferably R<sup>68</sup> is H), by reducing a compound of Formula 1.0j with a suitable reducing agent (such as sodium borohydride) in a suitable solvent (such as ethanol or methanol) at a suitable temperature to allow the reaction to proceed at a reasonable rate (e.g., 0 to about 25°C); reacting the resulting product (Formula 1.0j wherein the =O has been reduced to a -OH) with a chlorinating agent (e.g., thionyl chloride) in an suitable organic solvent (e.g., benzene, toluene or pyridine) at a suitable temperature to allow the reaction to proceed at a reasonable rate (e.g., about -20 to about 20°C, preferably at -15°C, see, for example Preparative Example 7) to produce a compound of Formula 1.0m;

- 19 -

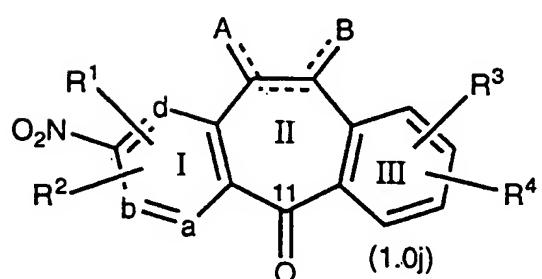
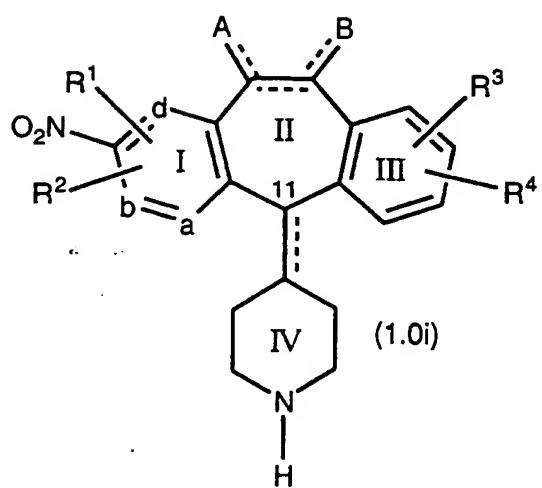
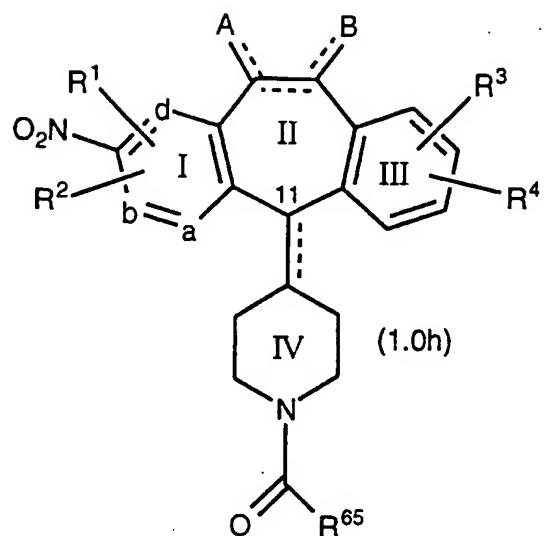


and reacting a compound of Formula 1.0n with a compound of the formula:

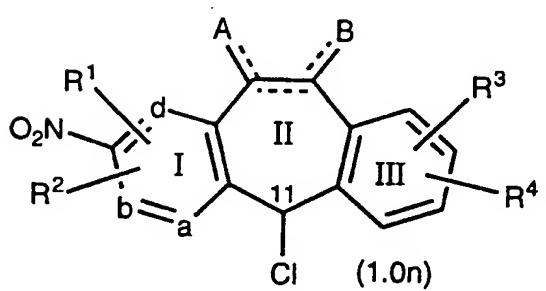
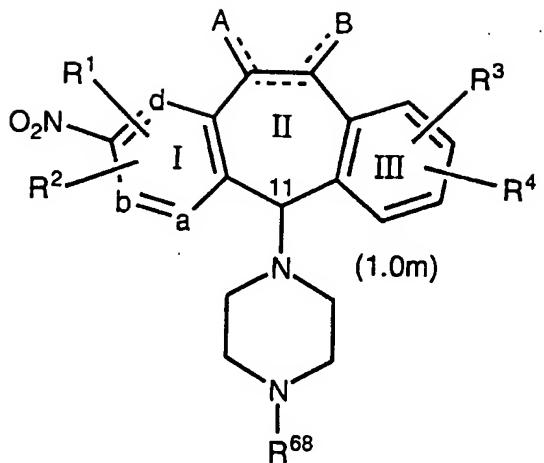


- 5 wherein R<sup>68</sup> is as previously defined, and is preferably H, in a suitable organic solvent (such as tetrahydrofuran or toluene) containing a suitable base (such as triethylamine or N-methylmorpholine) at a suitable temperature to allow the reaction to proceed at a reasonable rate (e.g., 25 to about 120°C).
- 10 Compounds of Formula 1.0m can be converted to compounds of this invention by the methods disclosed herein. Also, as discussed above for the compounds of Formula 1.0h, the compounds of Formula 1.0m can be converted to other 3-substituted compounds wherein the substituents are those discussed above for Formula 1.0h.
- 15 This invention also provides novel compounds (produced in the above described processes as intermediates to the compounds of this invention) having the formulas:

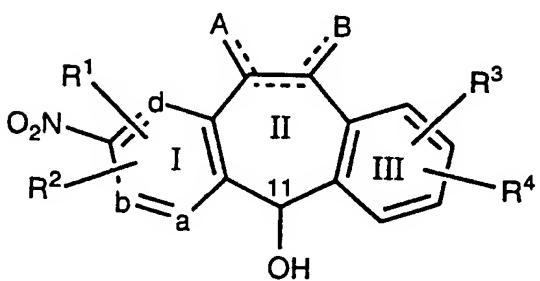
- 20 -



- 21 -



, and



5

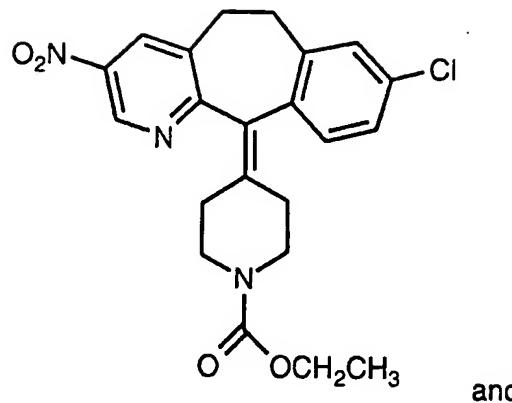
wherein all substituents are as defined herein.

Preferably, for the intermediate compounds of the processes of this invention, R<sup>1</sup> and R<sup>2</sup> are H; R<sup>3</sup> is halo, most preferably Cl, in the C-8 position; R<sup>4</sup> is H; and A and B are H when the double between C-5 and C-6 is present, and A and B are H<sub>2</sub> when the bond between C-5 and C-6 is a single bond (most preferably the bond between C-5 and C-6 is a single bond). Those skilled in the art will appreciate that Rings I, II, and/or III can be further substituted, as described herein, to produce the desired compounds of the invention.

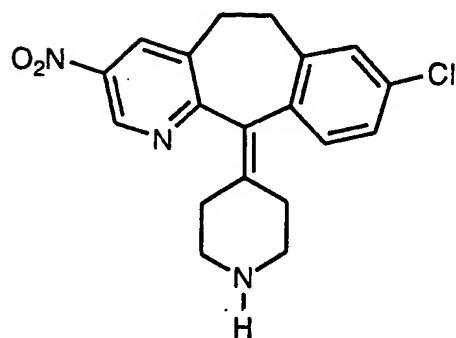
15

Examples of such novel intermediate compounds include:

- 22 -



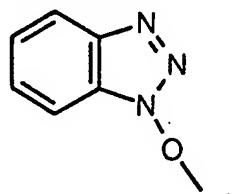
and



## 5 DETAILED DESCRIPTION OF THE INVENTION

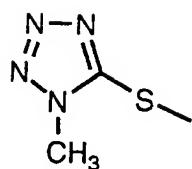
As used herein, the following terms are used as defined below unless otherwise indicated:

- M<sup>+</sup>-represents the molecular ion of the molecule in the mass spectrum;
- 10 MH<sup>+</sup>-represents the molecular ion plus hydrogen of the molecule in the mass spectrum;
- 15 Bu-represents butyl;  
Et-represents ethyl;  
Me-represents methyl;  
Ph-represents phenyl;  
benzotriazol-1-yloxy represents



1-methyl-tetrazol-5-ylthio represents

- 23 -



alkyl-(including the alkyl portions of alkoxy, alkylamino and dialkylamino)-represents straight and branched carbon chains and contains from one to twenty carbon atoms, preferably one to six carbon atoms;

- 5        alkanediyl-represents a divalent, straight or branched hydrocarbon chain having from 1 to 20 carbon atoms, preferably 1 to 6 carbon atoms, the two available bonds being from the same or different carbon atoms thereof, e.g., methylene, ethylene, ethylidene,  
10      -CH<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>2</sub>-, -CH<sub>2</sub>CHCH<sub>3</sub>, -CHCH<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>3</sub>, etc.

- 15      cycloalkyl-represents saturated carbocyclic rings branched or unbranched of from 3 to 20 carbon atoms, preferably 3 to 7 carbon atoms; heterocycloalkyl-represents a saturated, branched or unbranched carbocyclic ring containing from 3 to 15 carbon atoms, preferably from 4 to 6 carbon atoms, which carbocyclic ring is interrupted by 1 to 3 hetero groups selected from -O-, -S- or - NR<sup>10</sup>-(suitable heterocycloalkyl groups including 2- or 3-tetrahydrofuranyl, 2- or 3- tetrahydrothienyl, 2-, 3- or 4-piperidinyl, 2- or 3-pyrrolidinyl, 2- or 3-piperizinyl, 2- or 4-dioxanyl, etc.);

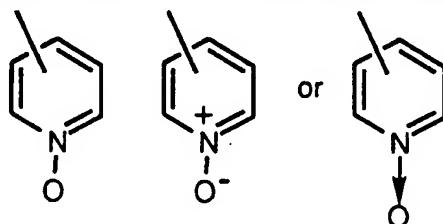
- 20      alkenyl-represents straight and branched carbon chains having at least one carbon to carbon double bond and containing from 2 to 12 carbon atoms, preferably from 2 to 6 carbon atoms and most preferably from 3 to 6 carbon atoms;

- 25      alkynyl-represents straight and branched carbon chains having at least one carbon to carbon triple bond and containing from 2 to 12 carbon atoms, preferably from 2 to 6 carbon atoms;

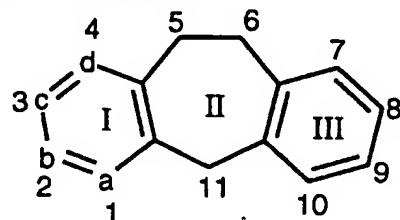
- 30      aryl (including the aryl portion of aryloxy and aralkyl)-represents a carbocyclic group containing from 6 to 15 carbon atoms and having at least one aromatic ring (e.g., aryl is a phenyl ring), with all available substitutable carbon atoms of the carbocyclic group being intended as possible points of attachment, said carbocyclic group being optionally substituted (e.g., 1 to 3) with one or more of halo, alkyl, hydroxy, alkoxy, phenoxy, CF<sub>3</sub>, amino, alkylamino, dialkylamino, -COOR<sup>10</sup> or -NO<sub>2</sub>; and  
halo-represents fluoro, chloro, bromo and iodo; and

- 24 -

- heteroaryl-represents cyclic groups, optionally substituted with R<sup>3</sup> and R<sup>4</sup>, having at least one heteroatom selected from O, S or N, said heteroatom interrupting a carbocyclic ring structure and having a sufficient number of delocalized pi electrons to provide aromatic character, with the aromatic heterocyclic groups preferably containing from 2 to 14 carbon atoms, e.g., 2-, 3- or 4-pyridyl or pyridyl N-oxide (optionally substituted with R<sup>3</sup> and R<sup>4</sup>), wherein pyridyl N-oxide can be represented as:
- 5      5

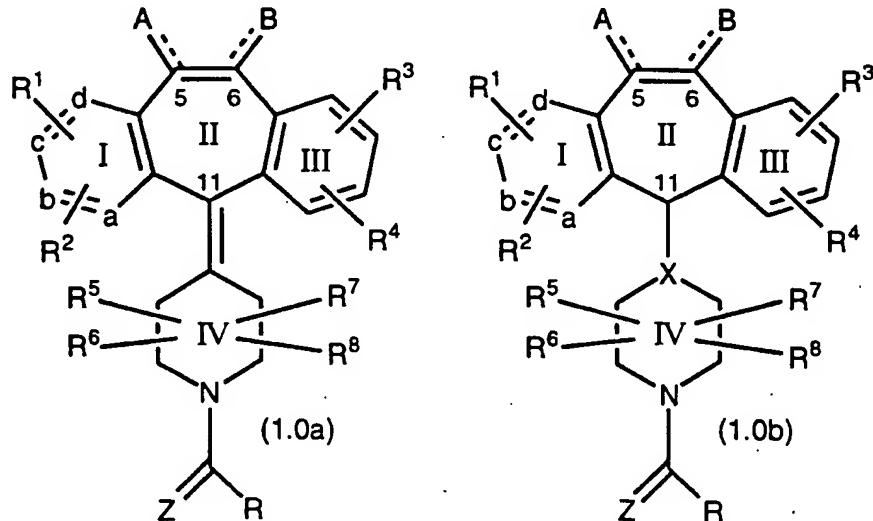


- Reference to the position of the substituents R<sup>1</sup>, R<sup>2</sup>, R<sup>3</sup>, and R<sup>4</sup> is  
10      10 based on the numbered ring structure:

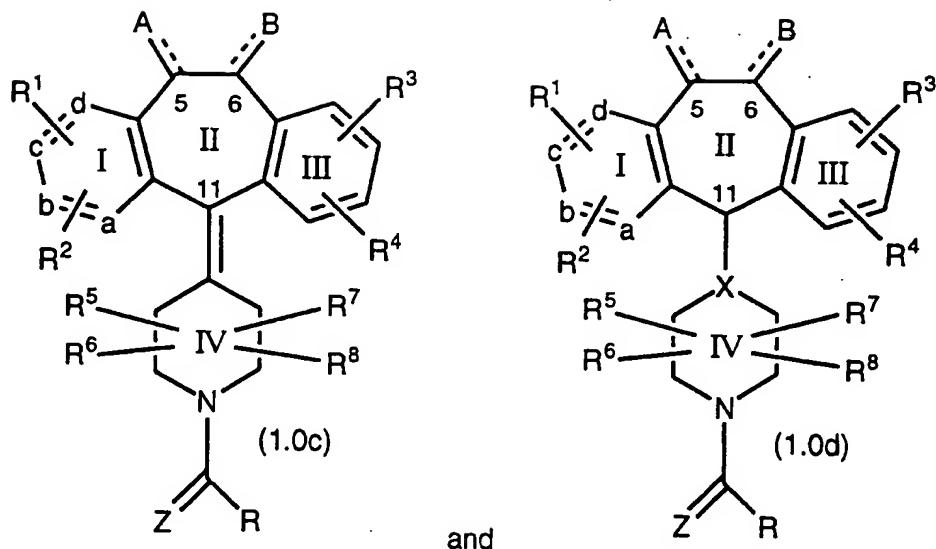


For example, R<sup>1</sup> can be at the C-4 position and R<sup>2</sup> can be at the C-2 or C-3 position. Also, for example, R<sup>3</sup> can be at the C-8 position and R<sup>4</sup> can be at the C-9 position.

- 15      15 Representative structures of Formula 1.0 include but are not limited to:



- 25 -



Preferably, for the compounds of Formula 1.0 (including 1.0a to 1.0d):

- each of a, b, c, and d are C (carbon); or
- 5 one of a, b, c and d (most preferably a) represents N or NO, most preferably N, and the remaining a, b, c and d groups represent CR<sup>1</sup> or CR<sup>2</sup>;
- 10 each R<sup>1</sup> and each R<sup>2</sup> is independently selected from H, halo (e.g., Cl, Br and F), -CF<sub>3</sub>, -OR<sup>10</sup> (e.g., hydroxy and alkoxy (e.g., -OCH<sub>3</sub>)), alkyl (e.g., methyl and t-butyl, said alkyl group being optionally substituted with halo), benzotriazol-1-yloxy, -S(O)<sub>t</sub>R<sup>11</sup> (e.g., -SCH<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>3</sub>), -SR<sup>11</sup>C(O)OR<sup>11</sup> (e.g., -SCH<sub>2</sub>CO<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>3</sub>), -SR<sup>10</sup> (e.g., R<sup>10</sup> represents -CH<sub>2</sub>C<sub>6</sub>H<sub>5</sub>) and 1-methyl-tetrazol-5-ylthio; most preferably R<sup>1</sup> and R<sup>2</sup> are independently H, halo, -CF<sub>3</sub>, lower alkyl (e.g., C<sub>1</sub> to C<sub>4</sub>, more preferably methyl) or benzotriazol-1-yloxy; more preferably R<sup>1</sup> is Cl or H, and R<sup>2</sup> is H, Cl or Br; still more preferably R<sup>1</sup> is at the C-4 position, and R<sup>2</sup> is at the C-3 position; even more preferably R<sup>2</sup> is Br or H;
- 15 R<sup>3</sup> and R<sup>4</sup> are the same or different and each independently represents H, halo, -CF<sub>3</sub>, -OR<sup>10</sup>, -COR<sup>10</sup>, -SR<sup>10</sup>, -S(O)<sub>t</sub>R<sup>11</sup> (wherein t is 0, 1 or 2), -N(R<sup>10</sup>)<sub>2</sub>, -NO<sub>2</sub>, -OC(O)R<sup>10</sup>, -CO<sub>2</sub>R<sup>10</sup>, -OCO<sub>2</sub>R<sup>11</sup>, -CN, -NR<sup>10</sup>COOR<sup>11</sup>, alkynyl, alkenyl, or alkyl, said alkyl or alkenyl group optionally being substituted with halo, -OR<sup>10</sup> or -CO<sub>2</sub>R<sup>10</sup>; most preferably R<sup>3</sup> and R<sup>4</sup> independently represent H, halo, -CF<sub>3</sub>, -OR<sup>10</sup> or alkyl (said alkyl group being optionally substituted with halo); more preferably R<sup>3</sup> and R<sup>4</sup> independently represent H or halo (e.g., Cl, Br, or F); even more

- 26 -

preferably R<sup>3</sup> is at the C-8 position and R<sup>4</sup> is at the C-9 position; still more preferably R<sup>3</sup> is Cl at the C-8 position and R<sup>4</sup> is H at the C-9 position;

R<sup>5</sup>, R<sup>6</sup>, R<sup>7</sup> and R<sup>8</sup> each independently represents H, -CF<sub>3</sub> or alkyl (said alkyl optionally being substituted with -OR<sup>10</sup>); most preferably R<sup>5</sup>,

- 5 R<sup>6</sup>, R<sup>7</sup> and R<sup>8</sup> independently represent H and alkyl, and more preferably H;

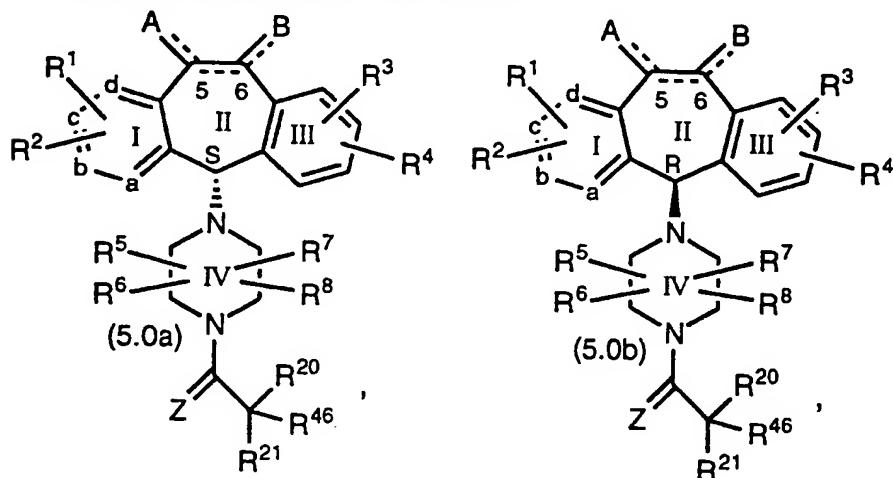
when the optional double bond between carbon atoms 5 and 6 is present, A and B independently represent H, -R<sup>10</sup> or -OR<sup>10</sup>, most preferably H, lower alkyl (C<sub>1</sub> to C<sub>4</sub>) and alkyloxy (i.e., R<sup>10</sup> represents

- 10 alkyl), more preferably H and -OH, and still more preferably H; and when no double bond is present between carbon atoms 5 and 6, A and B each independently represent H<sub>2</sub>, -(OR<sup>10</sup>)<sub>2</sub>, alkyl and H, (alkyl)<sub>2</sub>, -H and -OR<sup>10</sup> or =O, most preferably H<sub>2</sub>, -H and -OH, or =O, and more preferably A represents H<sub>2</sub> and B represents H<sub>2</sub> or =O;

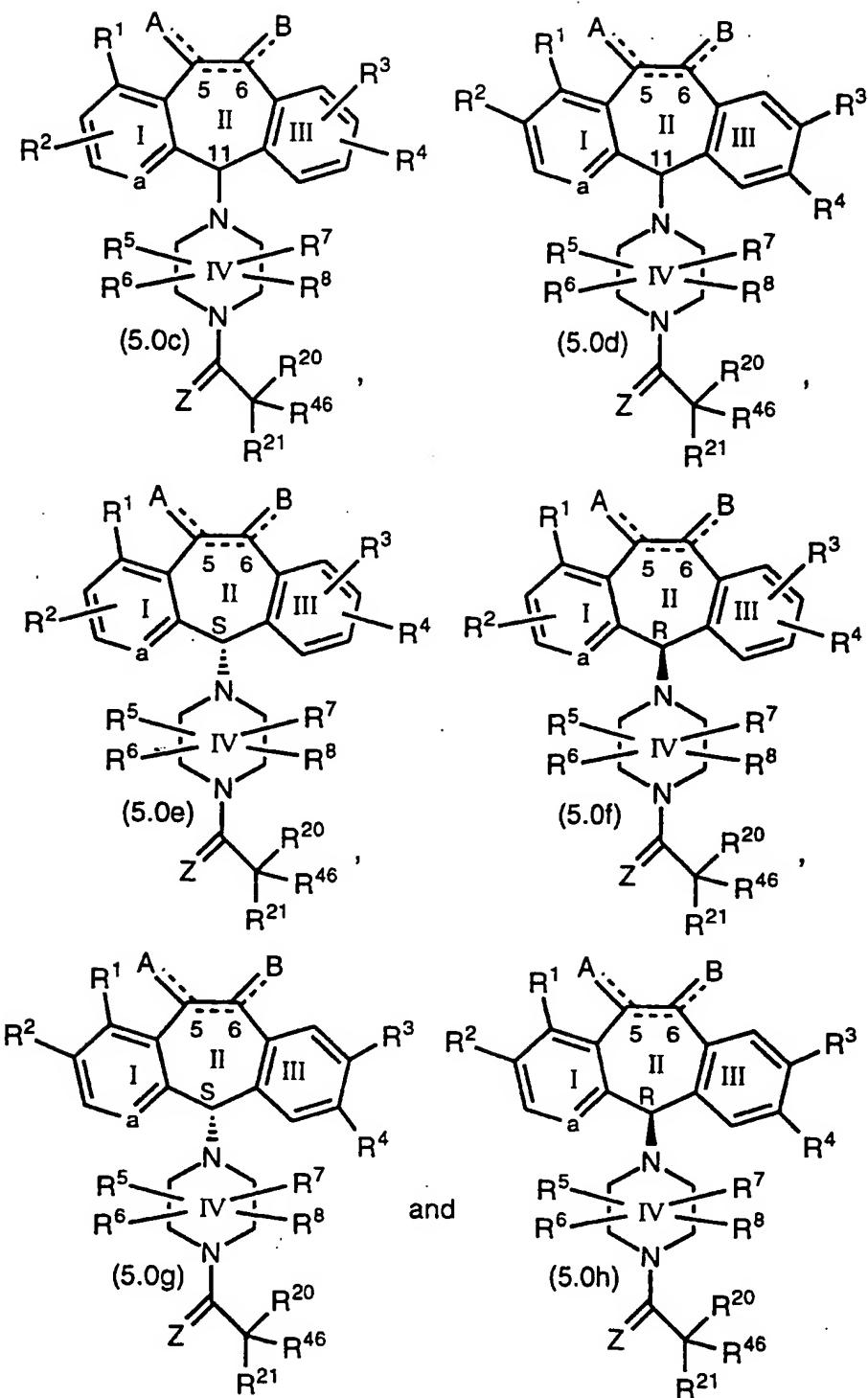
- 15 R represents R<sup>42</sup> or R<sup>44</sup>; and

Z represents O or S, and most preferably O.

Compounds of Formula 5.0 include:

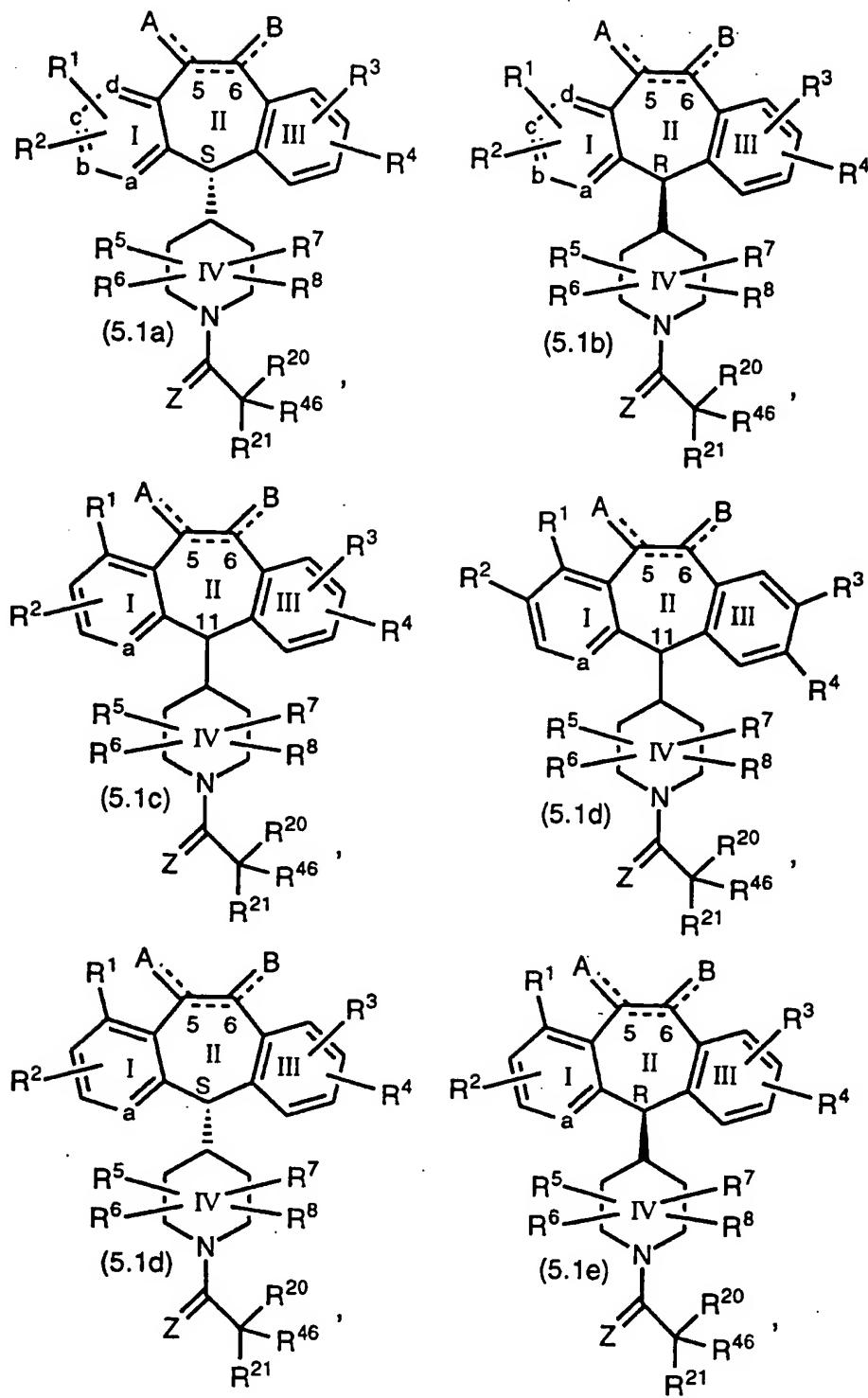


- 27 -

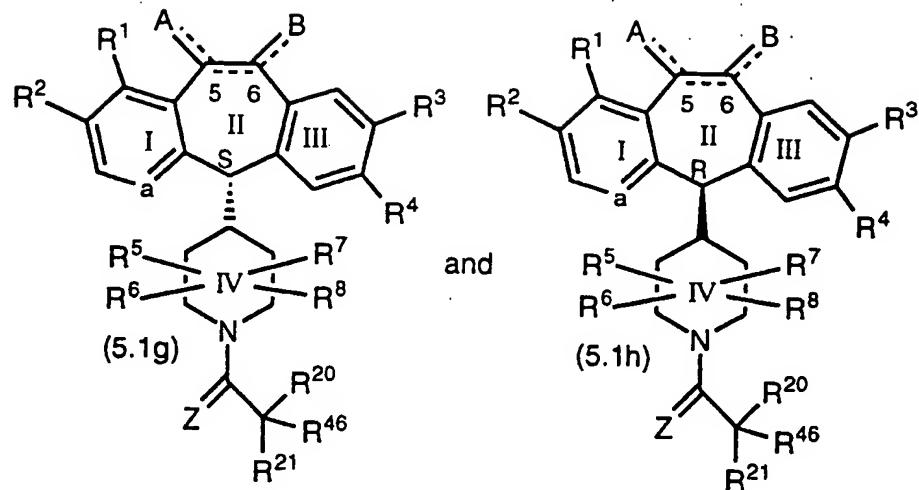


Compounds of Formula 5.1 include:

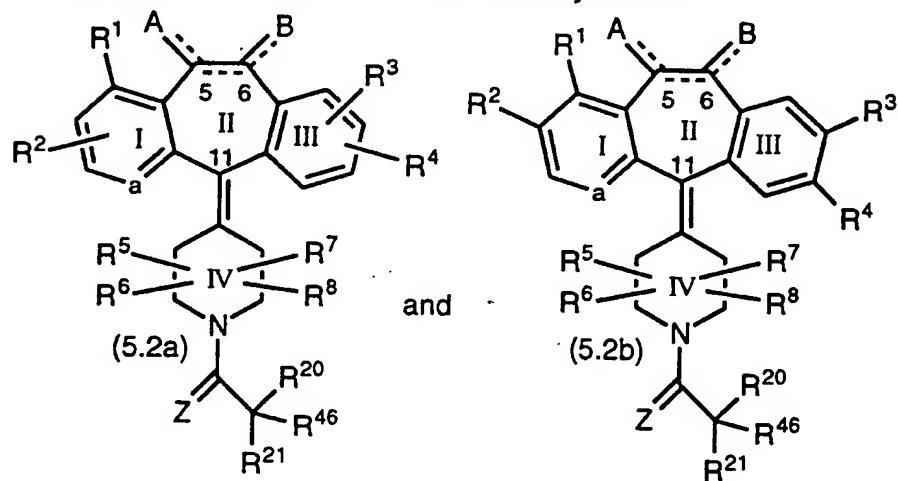
- 28 -



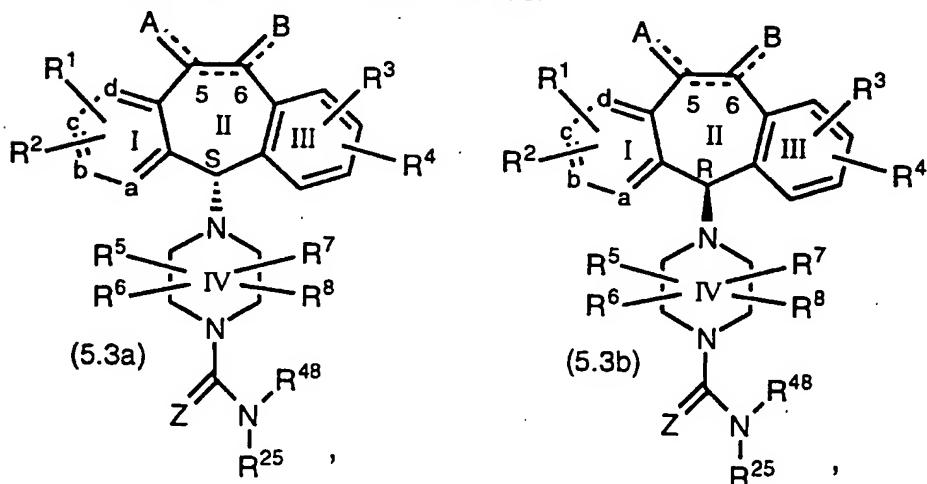
- 29 -



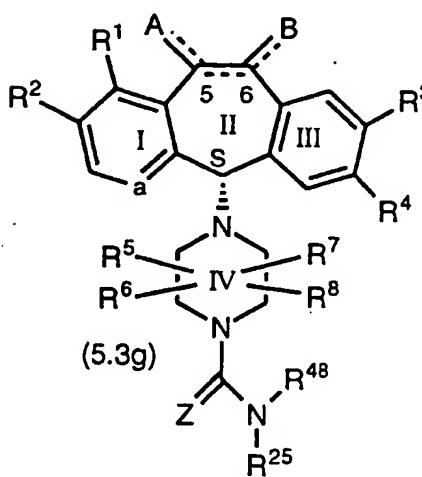
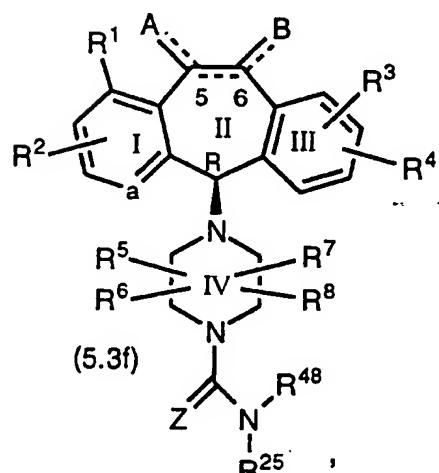
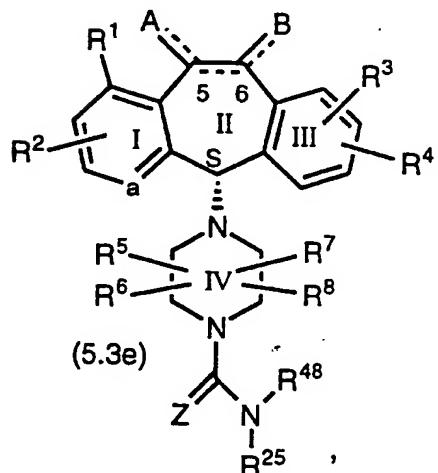
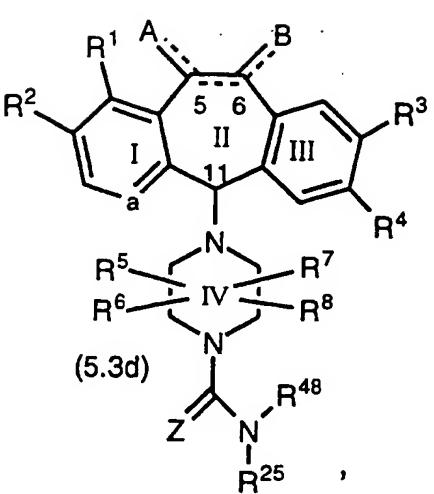
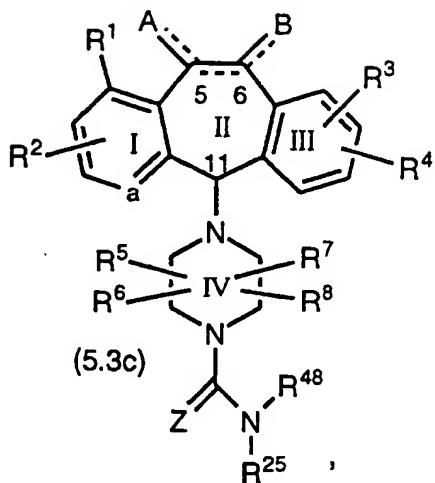
Compounds of Formula 5.2 additionally include:



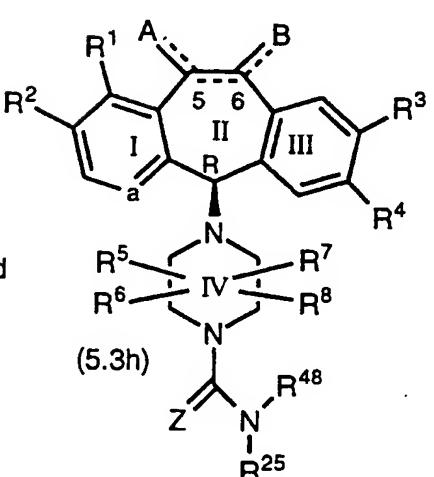
Compounds of Formula 5.3 include:



- 30 -

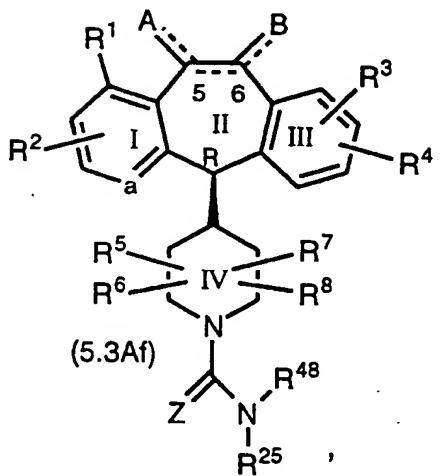
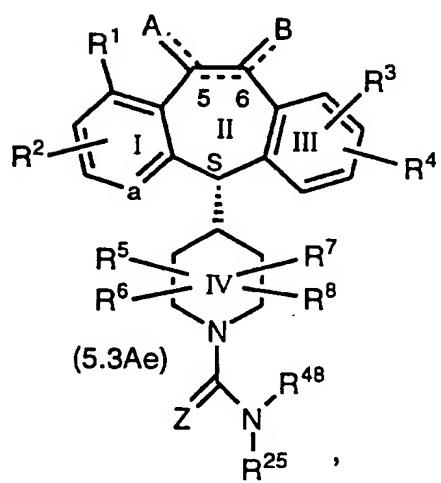
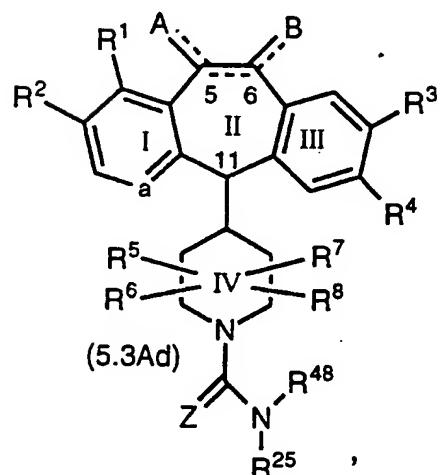
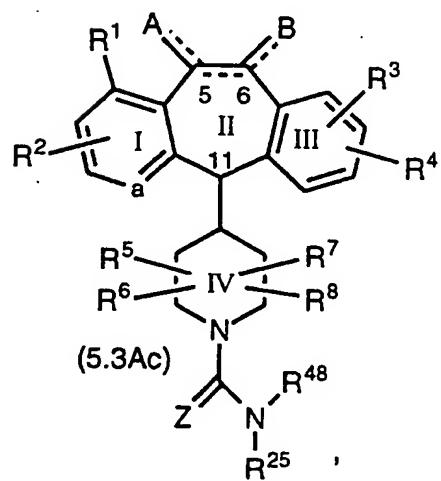
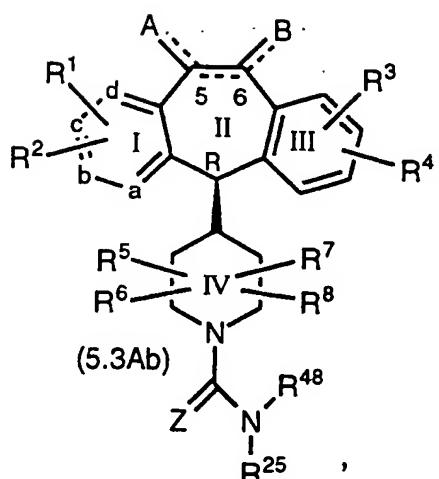
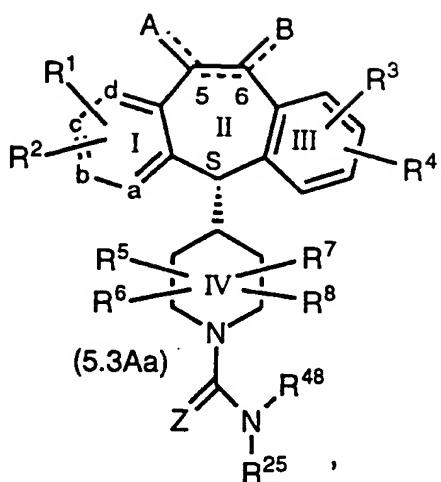


and

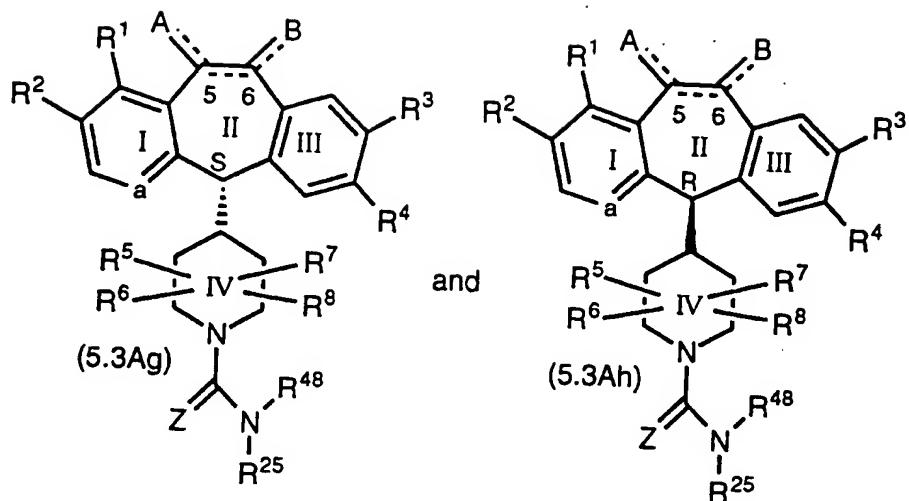


Compounds of formula 5.3A include:

- 31 -

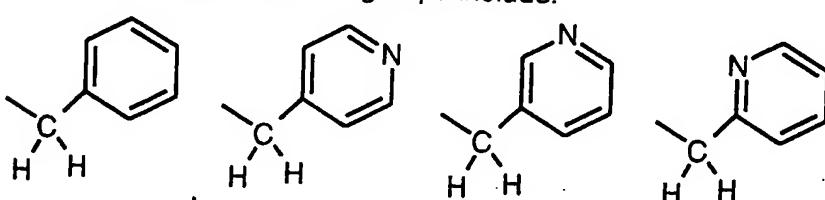


- 32 -

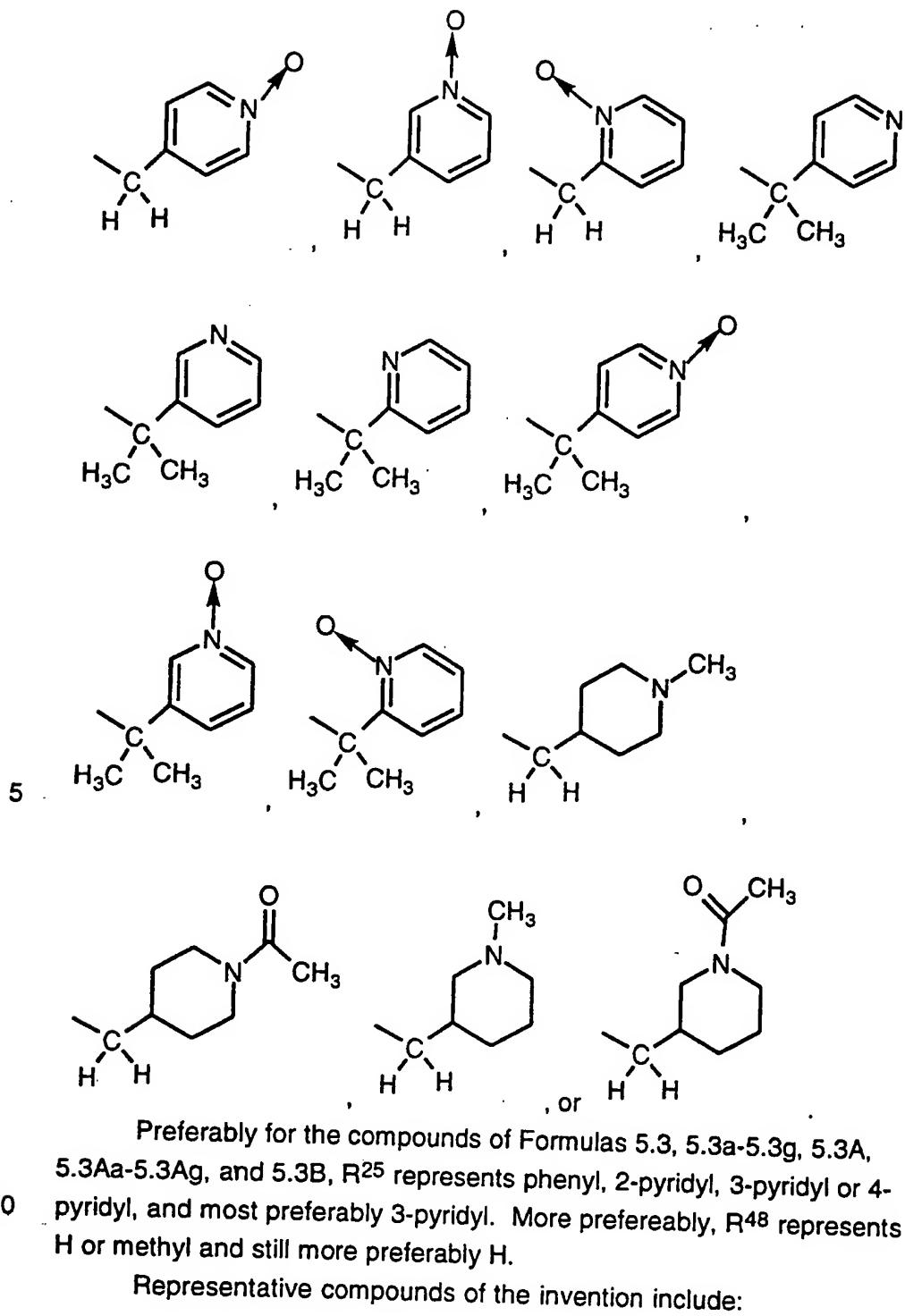


For the compounds of Formulas 5.0, 5.0a-5.0g, 5.1, 5.1a-5.1g, 5.2, 5.2a-5.2b, 5.3, 5.3a-5.3g, 5.3A, 5.3Aa-5.3Ag, and 5.3B, the definitions of the substituents are as defined for Formula 1.0.

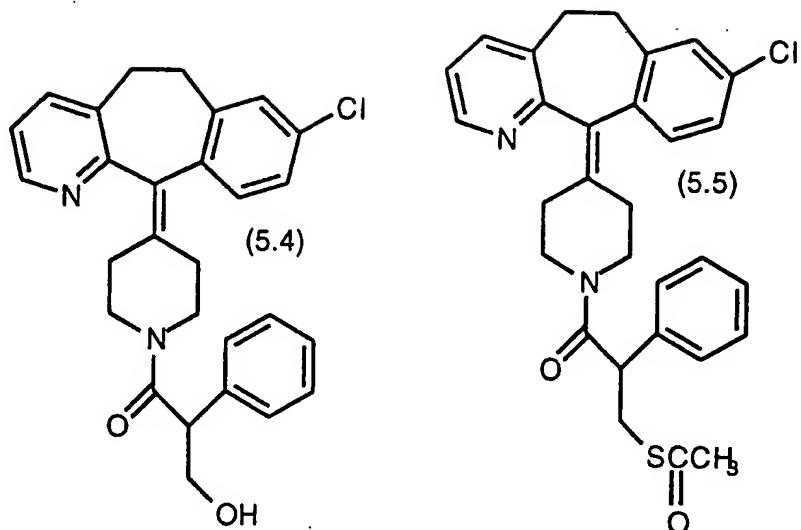
- 5 Preferably, for compounds of Formulas 5.0, 5.0a-5.0g, 5.1, 5.1a-5.1g, 5.2, and 5.2a-5.2b,  $R^{46}$  is selected from piperidine Ring V, heteroaryl, phenyl, substituted phenyl, substituted pyridyl or substituted pyridyl N-oxide, and  $R^{20}$  and  $R^{21}$  are independently selected from H or alkyl. Most preferably,  $R^{46}$  is pyridyl, pyridyl N-oxide or piperidine Ring V.
- 10 More preferably,  $R^{46}$  is pyridyl, pyridyl N-oxide or piperidine Ring V and both  $R^{20}$  and  $R^{21}$  are hydrogen or both  $R^{20}$  and  $R^{21}$  are alkyl (still more preferably methyl).
- 15 Even more preferably,  $R^{46}$  is selected from 3-pyridyl, 4-pyridyl, 3-pyridyl N-oxide, 4-pyridyl N-oxide, 4-N-methylpiperidinyl, 3-N-methylpiperidinyl, 4-N-acetyl piperidinyl or 3-N-acetyl piperidinyl, and both  $R^{20}$  and  $R^{21}$  are hydrogen or both  $R^{20}$  and  $R^{21}$  are alkyl (still even more preferably methyl). Even still more preferably,  $R^{46}$  is selected from 3-pyridyl, 3-pyridyl N-oxide, 4-pyridyl, and 4-pyridyl N-oxide, and both  $R^{20}$  and  $R^{21}$  are hydrogen or both  $R^{20}$  and  $R^{21}$  are methyl.
- 20 Examples of the  $R^{42}$  groups include:



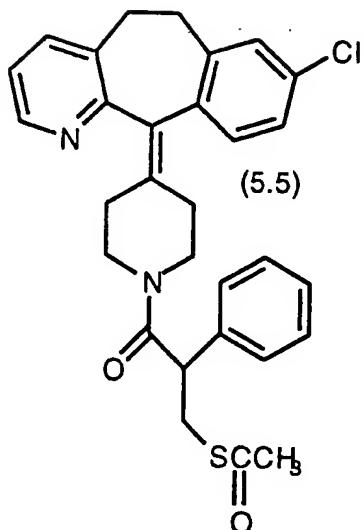
- 33 -



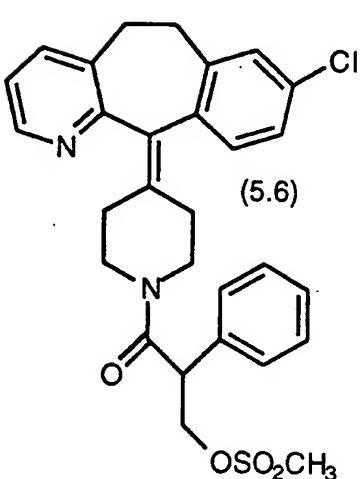
- 34 -



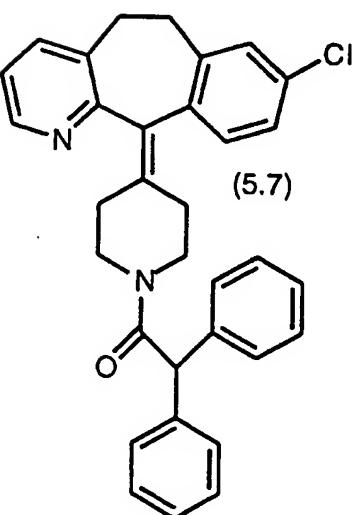
(5.4)



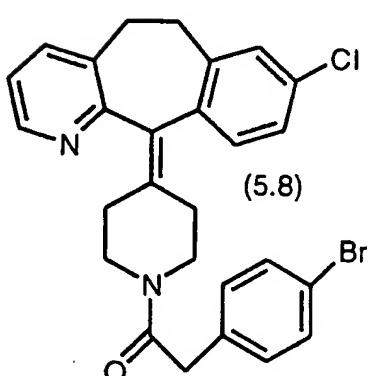
(5.5)



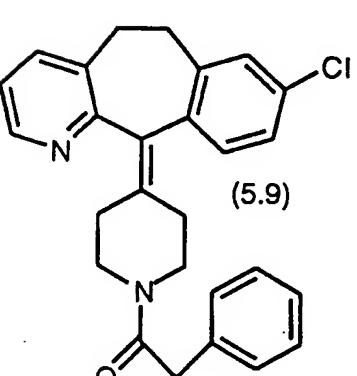
(5.6)



(5.7)

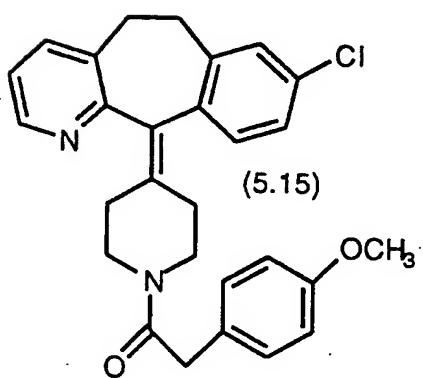
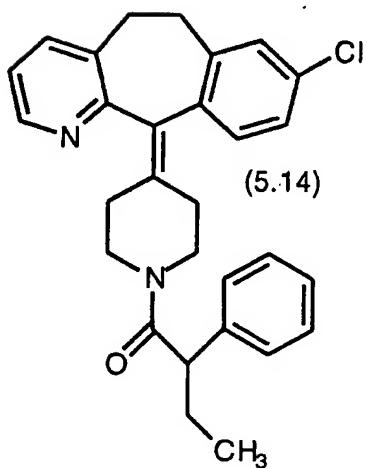
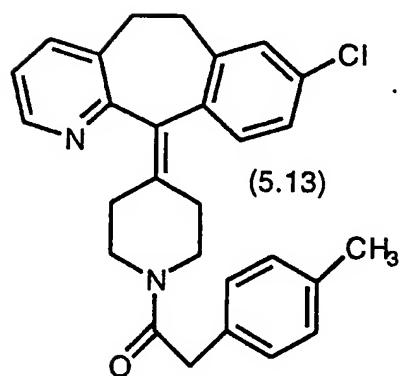
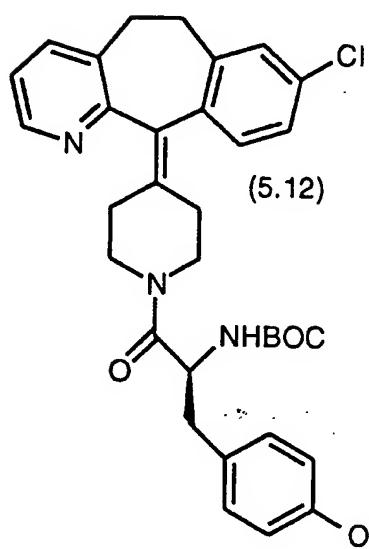
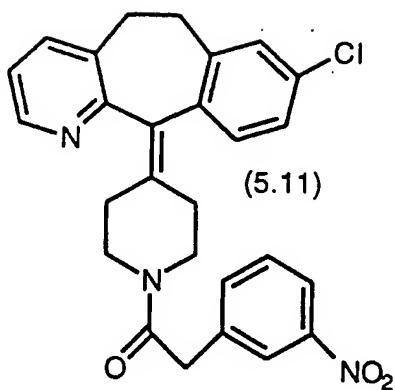
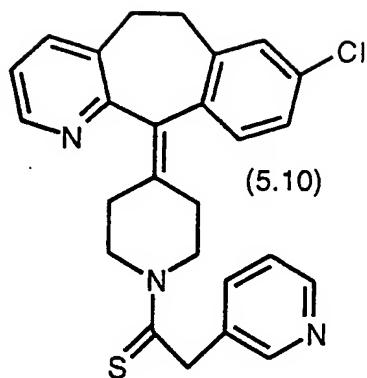


(5.8)

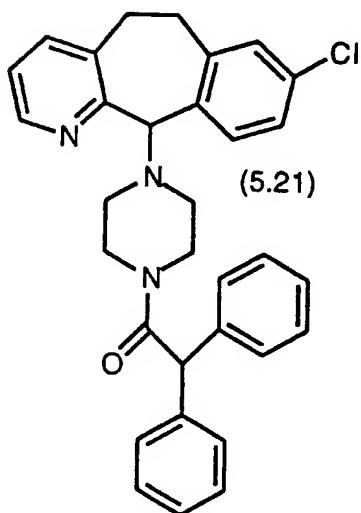
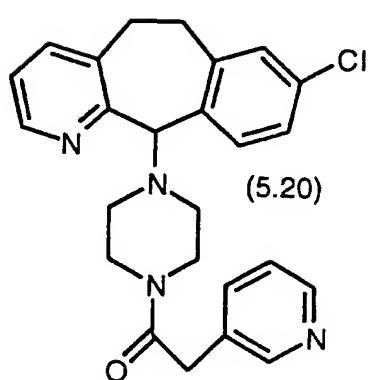
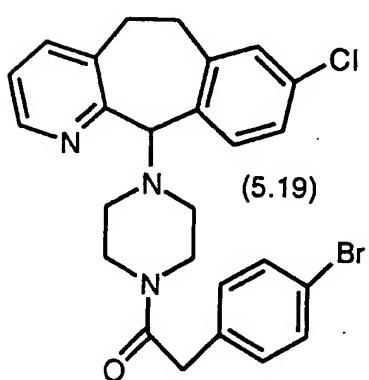
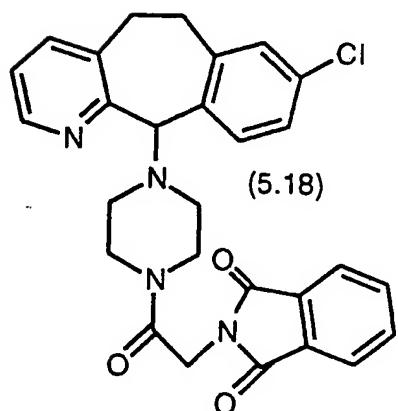
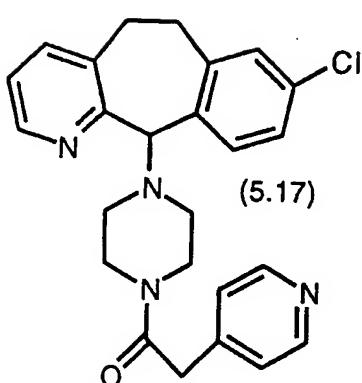
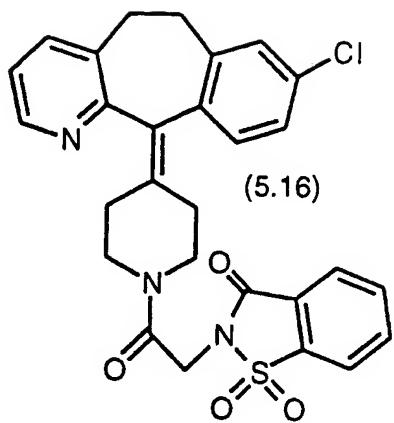


(5.9)

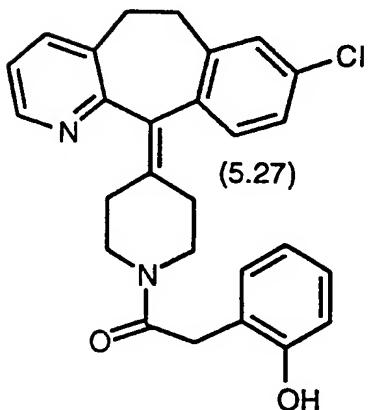
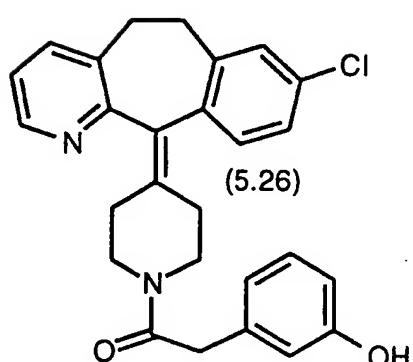
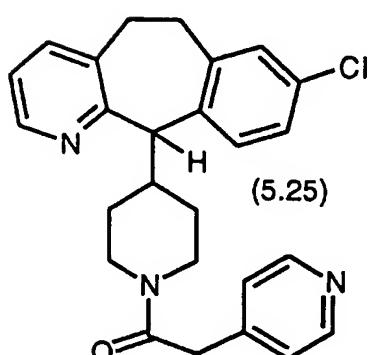
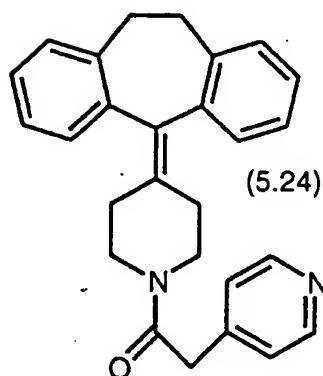
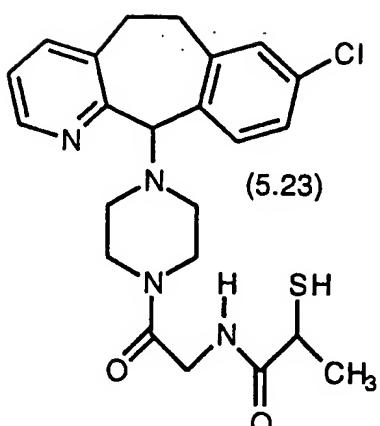
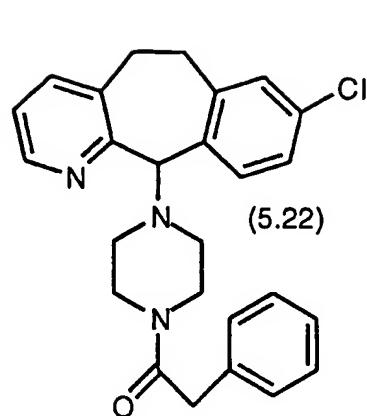
- 35 -



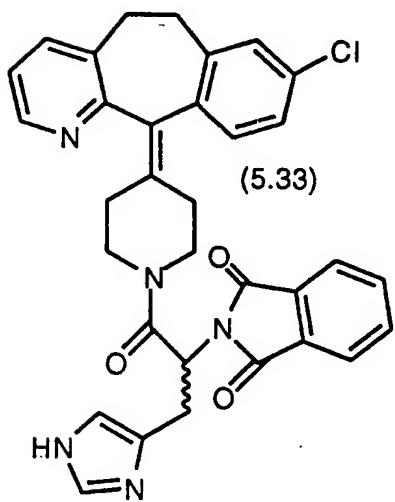
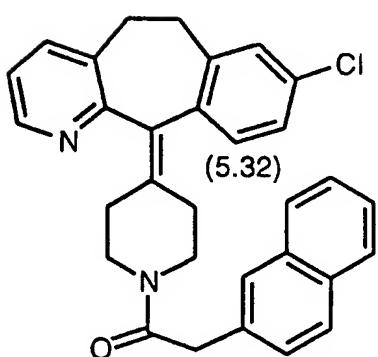
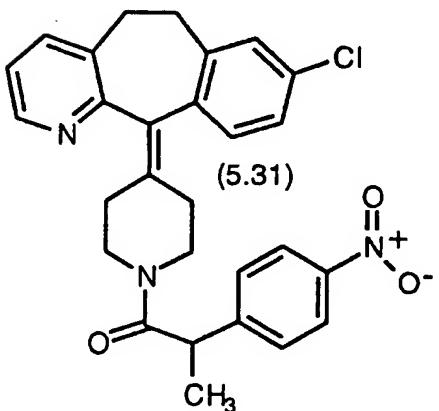
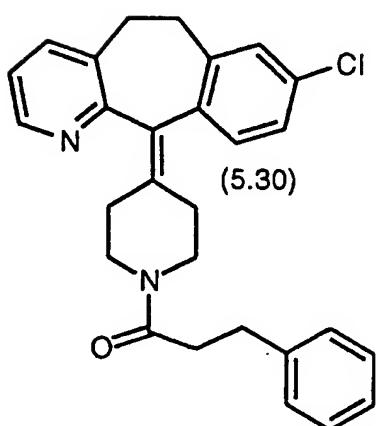
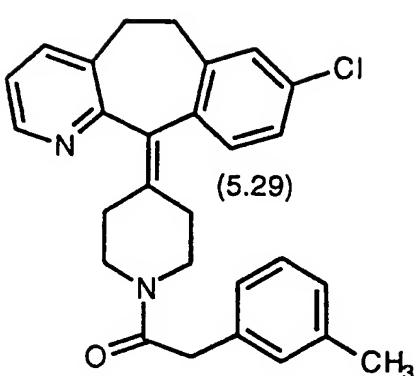
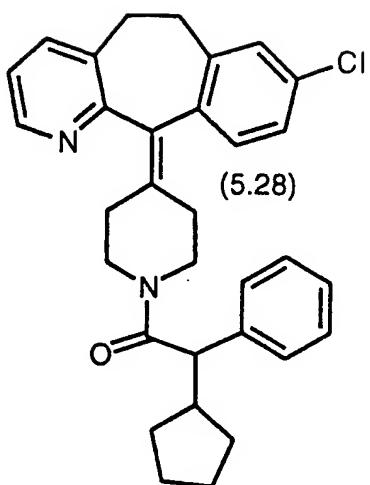
- 36 -



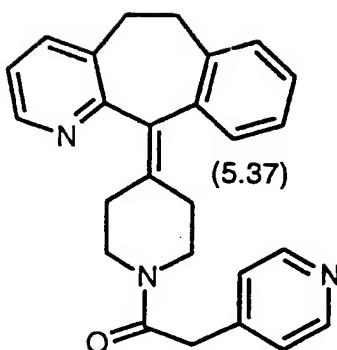
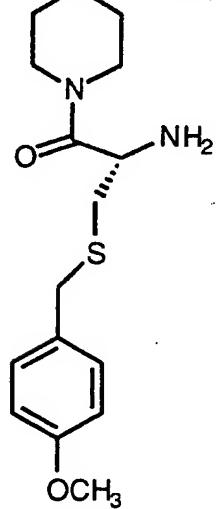
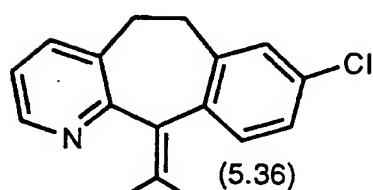
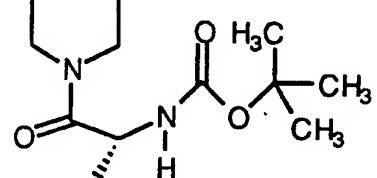
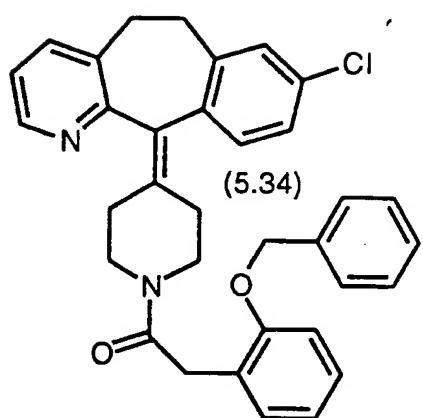
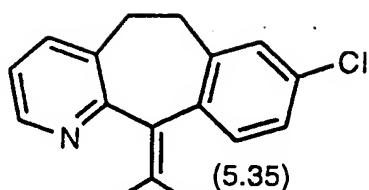
- 37 -



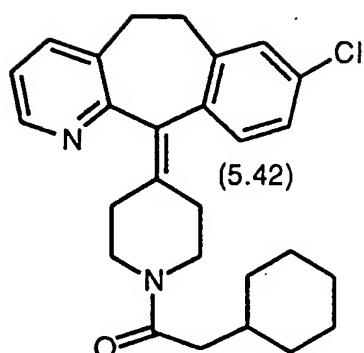
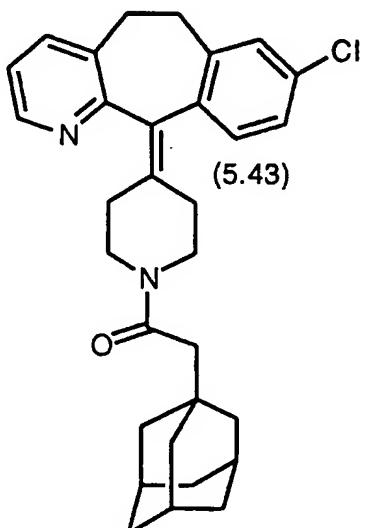
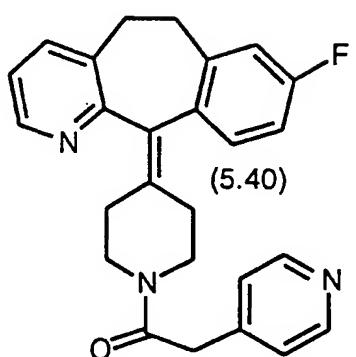
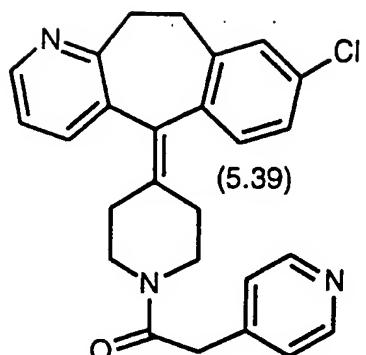
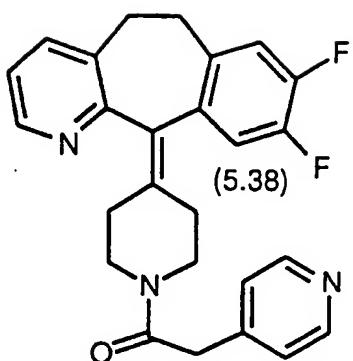
- 38 -



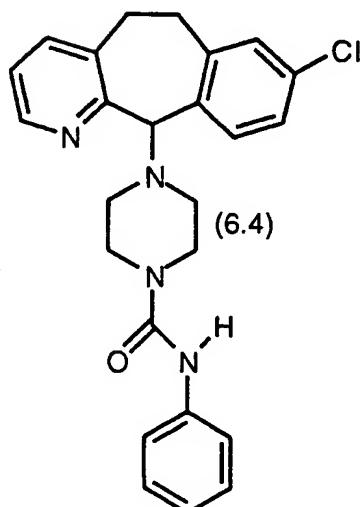
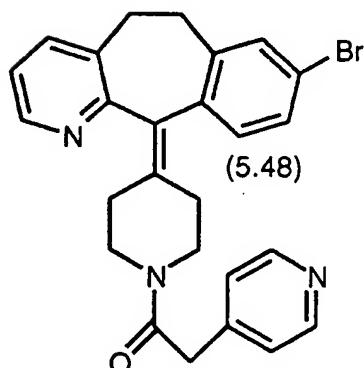
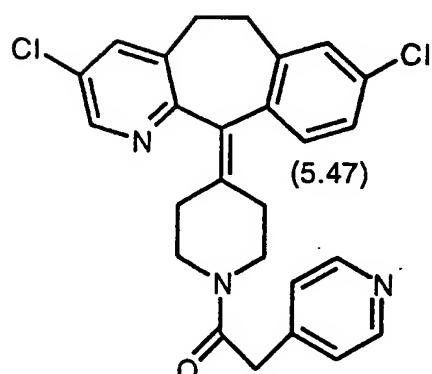
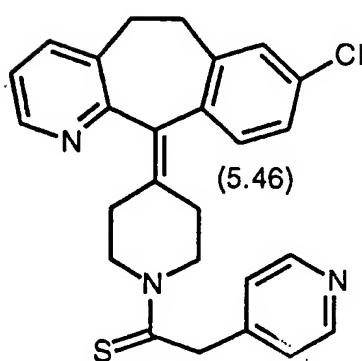
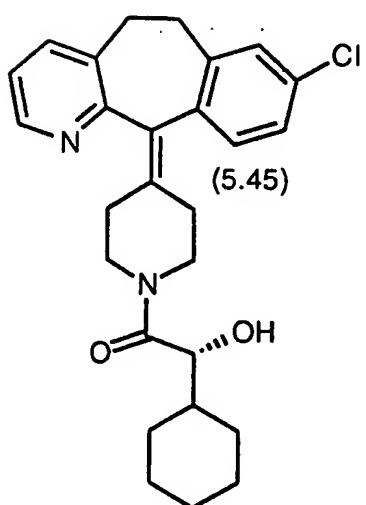
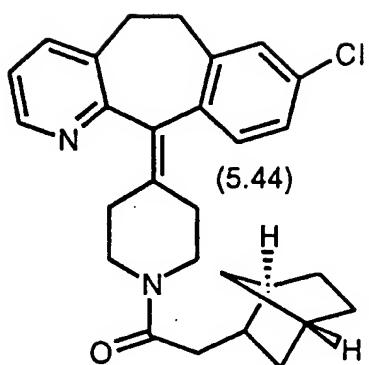
- 39 -



- 40 -

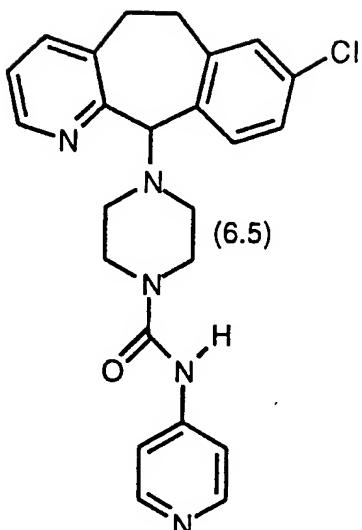


- 41 -



and

- 42 -



Preferred compounds of this invention are selected from the group consisting of compounds of Examples: 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 19, 42, 43, 44, 45, 46, 47, 48, 49, 75, 76, 78, 82, 83, 84, 85, 89, 121, 180, 182, 183, 184, 187

5 (6.7 and 6.8), 192, 196, 197, 198, 200, 201, 206, 222, 223, 224, 225, 226, 227, 233, 234, 236, 239, 246, 247, 248, 249, 250, 251, 261, 262, 266, 267, 269, 273, 276, 283, 285, 286, 287, 288, 289, 291, 292, 293, 299, 300, 301, 303, 307, 309, 311, 312, 313, 314, 316, 350, 351, 352, 354 and 356.

10 More preferred compounds of this invention are selected from the group consisting of compounds of Examples: 1, 2, 42, 43, 75, 78, 82, 180, 183, 187 (6.7 and 6.8), 196, 197, 198, 200, 222, 223, 224, 227, 233, 234, 246, 247, 248, 249, 250, 251, 266, 269, 273, 283, 285, 286, 291, 292, 300, 301, 303, 307, 311, 312, 313, 314, 350, 351, 352, 354 and 356.

15 Even more preferred compounds of this invention are selected from the group consisting of compounds of Examples: 82, 197, 233, 246, 266, 312, 351, 352, 354 and 356.

Lines drawn into the ring systems indicate that the indicated bond may be attached to any of the substitutable ring carbon atoms.

20 Certain compounds of the invention may exist in different isomeric (e.g., enantiomers and diastereoisomers) forms. The invention contemplates all such isomers both in pure form and in admixture, including racemic mixtures. Enol forms are also included.

25 Certain tricyclic compounds will be acidic in nature, e.g. those compounds which possess a carboxyl or phenolic hydroxyl group. These compounds may form pharmaceutically acceptable salts. Examples of

- 43 -

such salts may include sodium, potassium, calcium, aluminum, gold and silver salts. Also contemplated are salts formed with pharmaceutically acceptable amines such as ammonia, alkyl amines, hydroxyalkylamines, N-methylglucamine and the like.

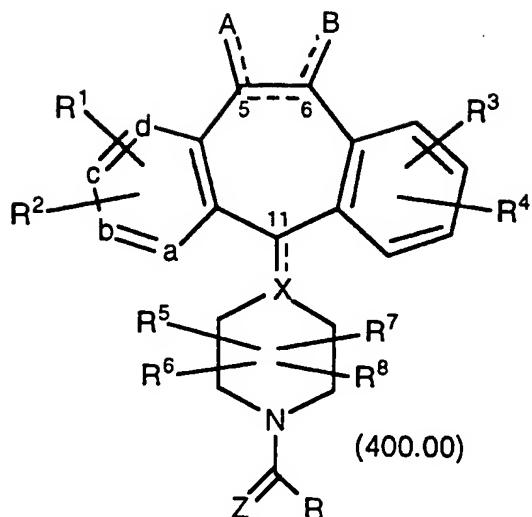
- 5        Certain basic tricyclic compounds also form pharmaceutically acceptable salts, e.g., acid addition salts. For example, the pyrido-nitrogen atoms may form salts with strong acid, while compounds having basic substituents such as amino groups also form salts with weaker acids. Examples of suitable acids for salt formation are hydrochloric, 10 sulfuric, phosphoric, acetic, citric, oxalic, malonic, salicylic, malic, fumaric, succinic, ascorbic, maleic, methanesulfonic and other mineral and carboxylic acids well known to those in the art. The salts are prepared by contacting the free base form with a sufficient amount of the desired acid to produce a salt in the conventional manner. The free base forms may be 15 regenerated by treating the salt with a suitable dilute aqueous base solution such as dilute aqueous sodium hydroxide, potassium carbonate, ammonia and sodium bicarbonate. The free base forms differ from their respective salt forms somewhat in certain physical properties, such as solubility in polar solvents, but the acid and base salts are otherwise 20 equivalent to their respective free base forms for purposes of the invention.

All such acid and base salts are intended to be pharmaceutically acceptable salts within the scope of the invention and all acid and base salts are considered equivalent to the free forms of the corresponding 25 compounds for purposes of the invention.

Compounds of Formula 1.0 wherein R is  $-N(R^{10})_2$ , and compounds of Formulas 5.3, 5.3A and 5.3B can be prepared by reacting compound 405.00 (described below) with an isocyanate ( $R^{10}-N=C=O$ ) in a solvent such as DMF, dichloromethane or THF in accordance with methods 30 known in the art.

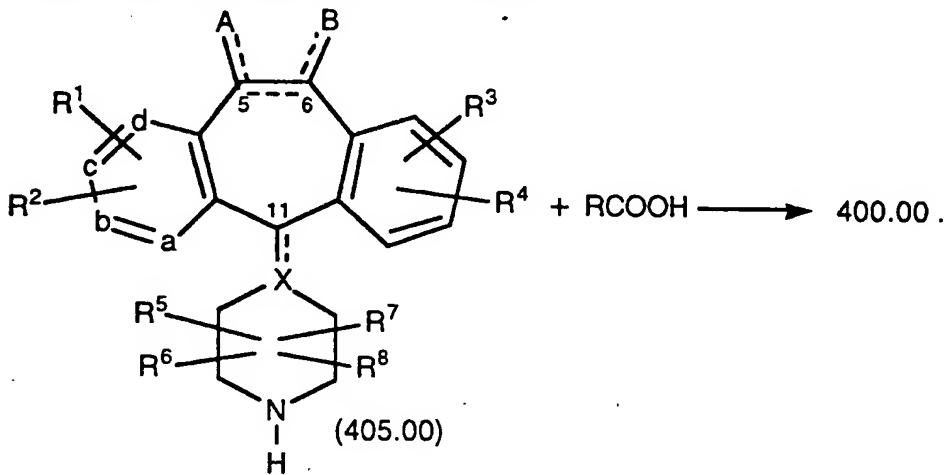
The following processes may be employed to produce compounds of the invention--i.e., compounds of Formula 1.0 represented by compounds of Formulas 5.0, 5.1, 5.2 and 5.3. For purposes of describing the processes, the compounds are represented by Formula 400.00:

- 44 -



wherein R represents R<sup>42</sup> or R<sup>44</sup>, and all other substitutents are as described herein.

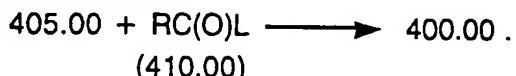
- A. A compound of Formula 405.00 may be coupled with a  
 5 compound of the formula RCOOH in the presence of coupling agent such as 1-(3-dimethylaminopropyl)-3-ethyl carbodiimide hydrochloride (DEC), N,N'-dicyclohexylcarbodiimide (DCC) or N,N'-carbonyl-diimidazole (CDI) to produce compounds of Formula 400.00:



- 10 The reaction is usually conducted in an inert solvent such as tetrahydrofuran, DMF or methylene chloride at a temperature between about 0°C and reflux, preferably at about room temperature. When the coupling agent is DCC or DEC, the reaction is preferably run in the presence of 1-hydroxybenzotriazole (HOBT). Method A is the method of  
 15 choice for preparing compounds of this invention.

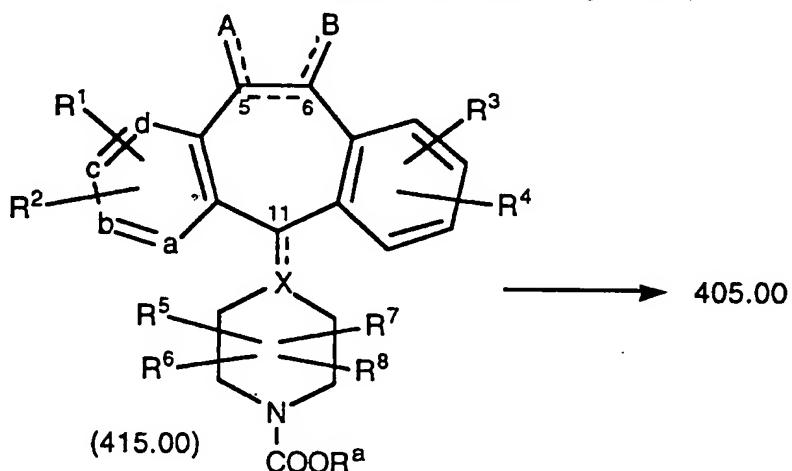
- 45 -

B. A compound of Formula 405.00 may also be reacted with a compound of Formula 410.00 in the presence of base to produce compounds of Formula 400.00:



- 5 Representative examples of appropriate bases are pyridine and triethylamine. L designates a suitable leaving group. For example, a compound of compound 410.00 may be an acyl halide (e.g., L represents halo) or an acyl anhydride, (e.g., L is  $-\text{O}-\text{C}(=\text{O})-\text{R}$ ). The leaving group may also be alkoxy, in which case the compounds of Formula 400.00 may be  
10 produced by refluxing a compound of Formula 405.00 with an excess of a compound of Formula 410.00.

Compounds of Formula 405.00 may be prepared by cleaving the group  $\text{COOR}^a$  from the corresponding carbamates 415.00, for example, via acid hydrolysis (e.g., HCl) or base hydrolysis (e.g., KOH):

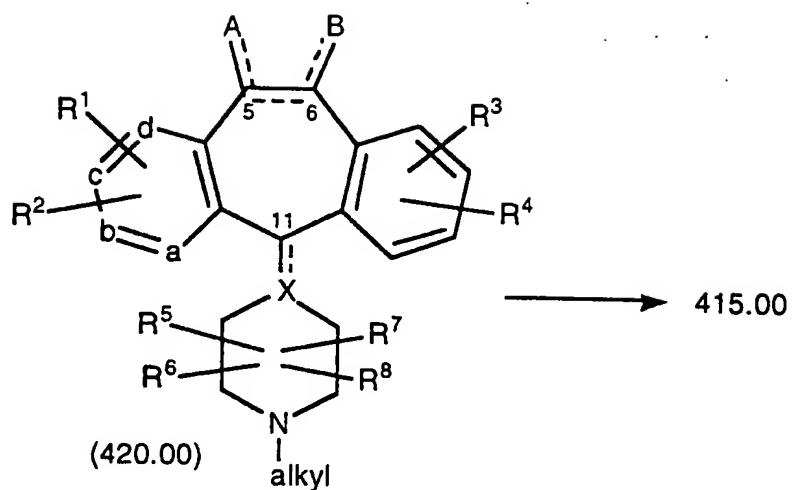


- 15 wherein  $\text{R}^a$  is a group which does not prevent the cleavage reaction, e.g.,  $\text{R}^a$  is an optionally substituted alkyl such as ethyl.

- Alternatively, depending upon the nature of  $\text{R}^a$ , as determined by one skilled in the art, Compound 415.00 may be treated with an  
20 organometallic reagent (e.g.,  $\text{CH}_3\text{Li}$ ), a reductive reagent (e.g., Zn in acid), etc., to form compounds of Formula 405.00.

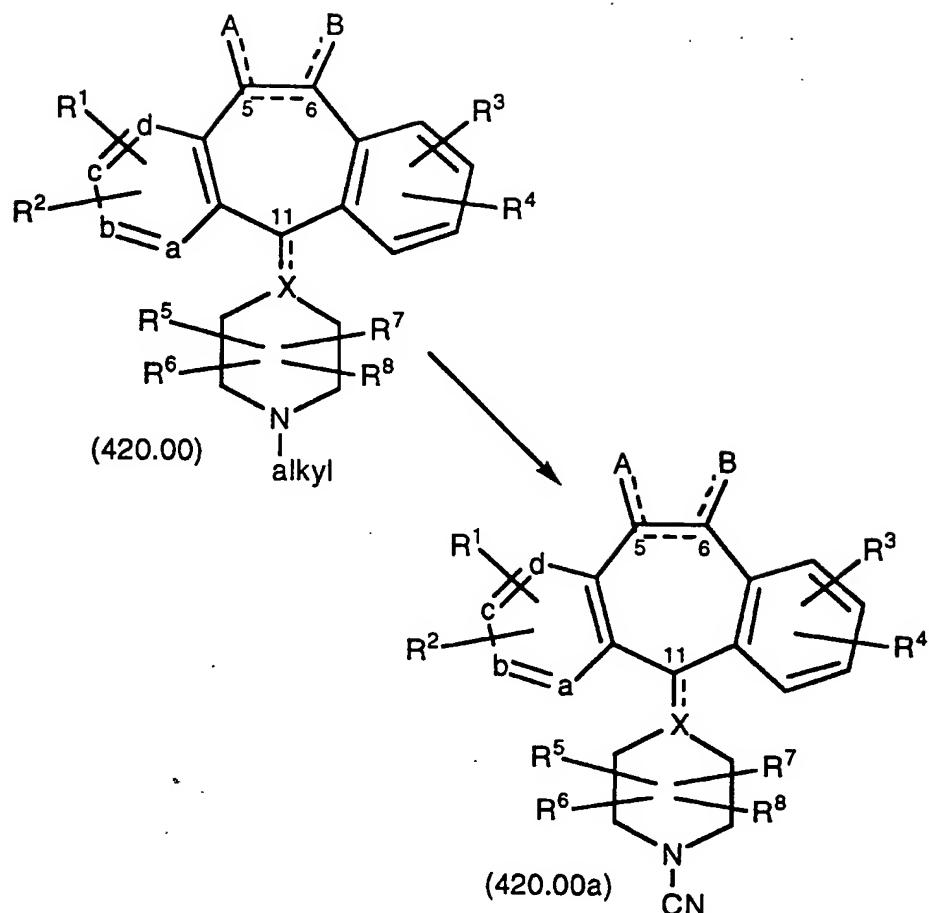
Compound 415.00 may be prepared from the N-alkyl compound shown as Formula 420.00 below, in the manner disclosed in U.S. Patents 4,282,233 and 4,335,036.

- 46 -



It also will be apparent to one skilled in the art that there are other methods for converting Compound 420.00 to Compound 405.00. For example, treatment of Compound 420.00 with BrCN via von Braun reaction conditions would provide nitrile 420.00a. Subsequent hydrolysis of the nitrile under either aqueous basic or acidic conditions would produce Compound 405.00. This method is preferable when there is substitution on the piperidine or piperazine ring.

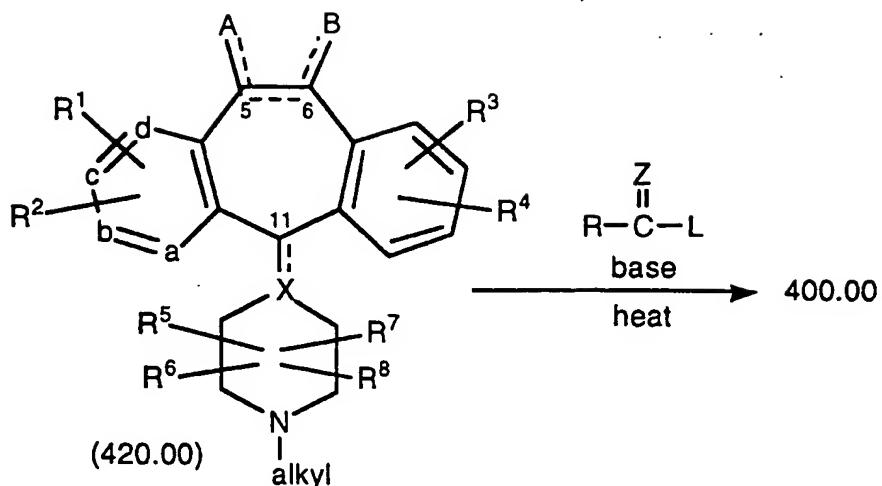
- 47 -



C. The compounds of Formula 400.00 wherein Z is O or S may be made by an alternative process using direct conversion of the N-alkyl compound 420.00 with an appropriate compound of Formula 410.00 such as an acyl halide or acyl anhydride. Preferably the reaction is run in the presence of an appropriate nucleophile (e.g. LiI, etc.) and solvent (e.g., toluene, dioxane or xylenes). An appropriate base, may be added, and heating may be required. Typically, a temperature ranging from 50-150°C (preferably 100-120°C) is utilized.

5

- 48 -



Compound 420.00 is prepared as described in part B above.

#### PREPARATION OF SINGLE BOND COMPOUNDS

- 5 Compounds of Formula 400.00, wherein X is carbon and the bond to carbon 11 (C-11) is a single bond, can be prepared by reducing compounds of Formula 405.00, wherein X is carbon and the bond to C-11 is a double bond, with lithium aluminum hydride in tetrahydrofuran. Conversion to final products can be done following the process described
- 10 10 above for conversion of compounds of Formula 405.00 to compounds of Formula 400.00.

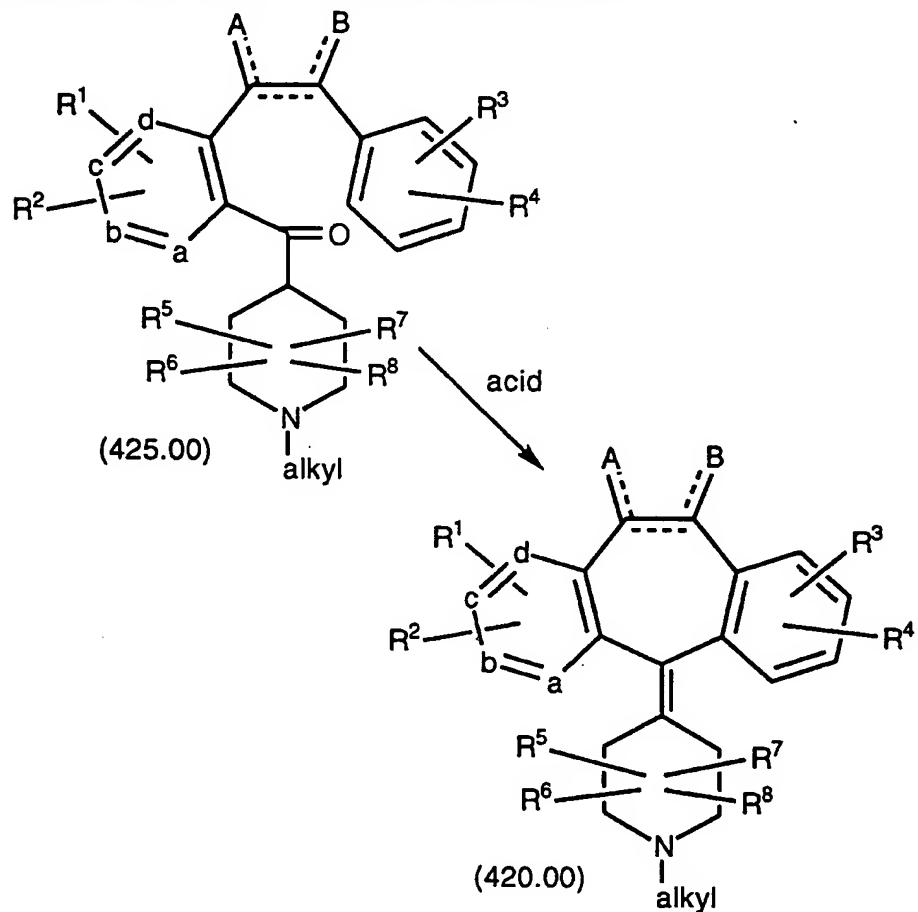
#### PREPARATION OF DOUBLE BOND COMPOUNDS

- Compounds of Formula 400.00, wherein X is a carbon atom having an exocyclic double bond to carbon 11, may be prepared from compound 420.00 as described above. Compounds of Formula 420.00 may be produced by the methods disclosed generally in U.S. Patent 3,326,924 or alternatively may be prepared by a ring closure reaction, wherein the desired cycloheptene ring is formed by treating compound 425.00 with a super acid. Suitable super acids for this purpose include, for example, HF/BF<sub>3</sub>, CF<sub>3</sub>SO<sub>3</sub>H (triflic acid), CH<sub>3</sub>SO<sub>3</sub>H/BF<sub>3</sub>, etc. The reaction can be performed in the absence of, or with, an inert co-solvent such as CH<sub>2</sub>Cl<sub>2</sub>. The temperature and time of the reaction vary with the acid employed. For example, with HF/BF<sub>3</sub> as the super acid system the temperature may be controlled so as to minimize side reactions, such as HF addition to the exocyclic double bond. For this purpose, the temperature is generally in the range of from about +5°C to -50°C. With CF<sub>3</sub>SO<sub>3</sub>H as the super acid

- 49 -

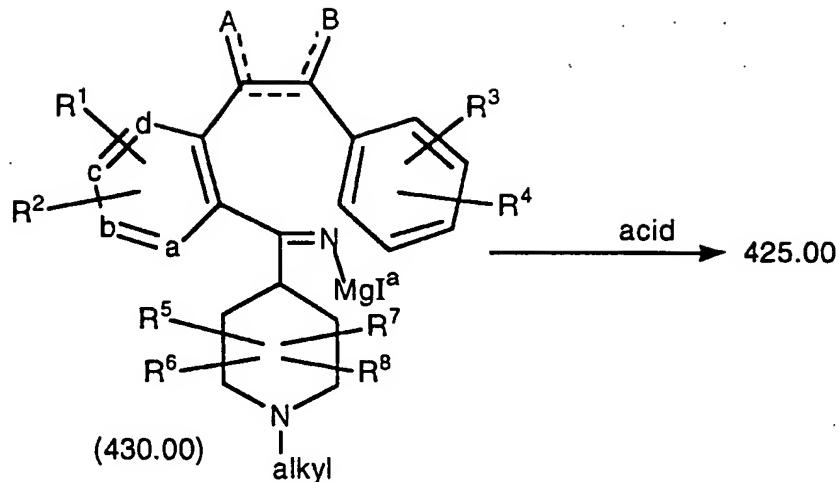
system, the reaction may be run at elevated temperatures, e.g., from about 25°C to about 150°C and at lower temperatures but the reaction then takes longer to complete.

- Generally the super acid is employed in excess, preferably in  
 5 amounts of from about 1.5 to about 30 equivalents.

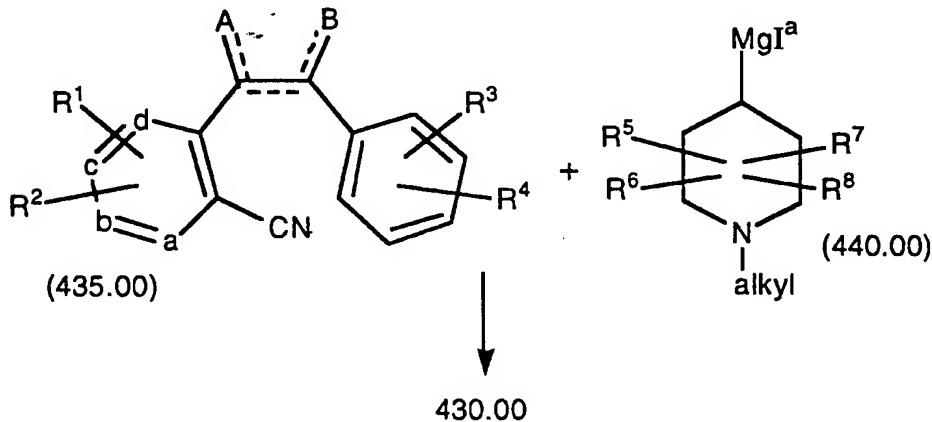


- A ketone compound of Formula 425.00 may be formed by  
 hydrolysis of 430.00, e.g., such as by reacting a Grignard intermediate of  
 Formula 430.00 with an aqueous acid (e.g., aqueous HCl). I<sup>a</sup> in Formula  
 10 430.00 represents chloro, bromo or iodo.

- 50 -



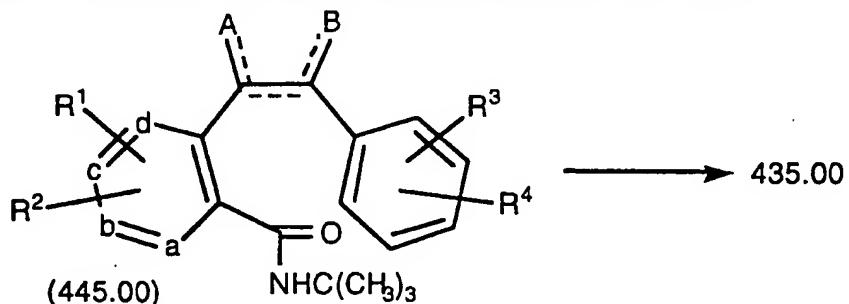
- The Grignard intermediate 430.00 is formed by the reaction of the cyano compound 435.00 with an appropriate Grignard reagent 440.00 prepared from 1-alkyl-4halopiperidine. The reaction is generally performed in an inert solvent, such as ether, toluene, or tetrahydrofuran, under general Grignard conditions e.g., temperature of from about 0°C to about 75°C. Alternatively, other organometallic derivatives of the 1alkyl-4-halo piperidine can be employed.
- 5



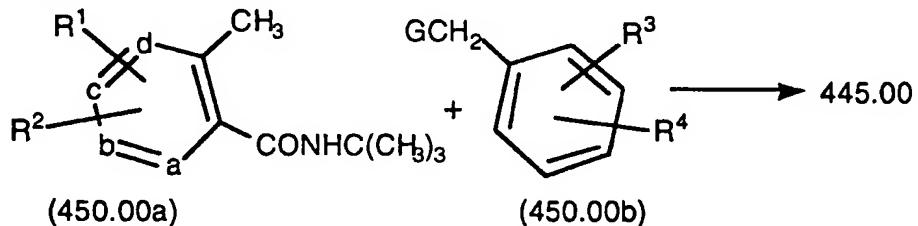
- 10      The cyano compound of Formula 435.00 is produced by converting the tertiary butyl amide of Formula 445.00 with a suitable dehydrating agent, such as  $\text{POCl}_3$ ,  $\text{SOCl}_2$ ,  $\text{P}_2\text{O}_5$ , toluene sulfonyl chloride in pyridine, oxalyl chloride in pyridine, etc. This reaction can be performed in the absence of or with a co-solvent, such as xylene.
- 15      The dehydrating agent such as  $\text{POCl}_3$  is employed in equivalent amounts or greater and preferably in amounts of from about 2 to about 15 equivalents. Any suitable temperature and time can be employed for

- 51 -

performing the reaction, but generally heat is added to accelerate the reaction. Preferably the reaction is performed at or near reflux.

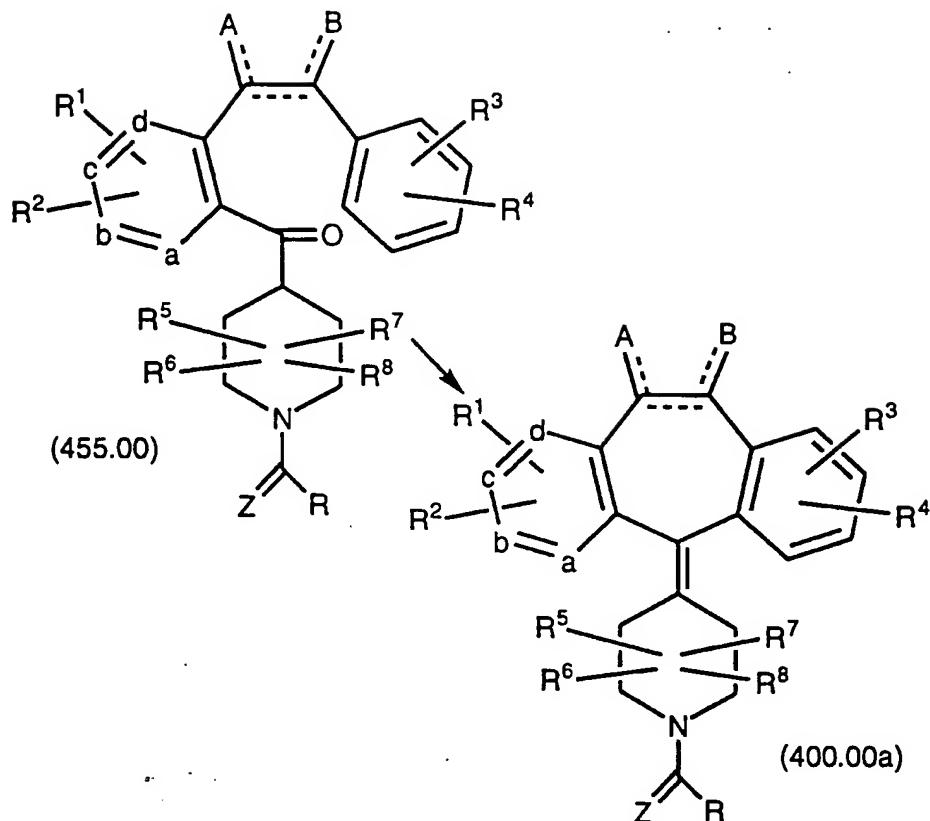


- The tert-butylamide of Formula 445.00 may be produced by  
 5 reaction of a compound of Formula 450.00a and 450.00b, in the presence  
 of base, wherein G is chloro, bromo or iodo.



- The compound of Formula 450.00a may be formed by hydrolysis of  
 10 the corresponding nitrile wherein the appropriate cyanomethyl pyridine,  
 such as 2-cyano-3-pyridine, is reacted with a tertiary butyl compound in  
 acid, such as concentrated sulfuric acid or concentrated sulfuric acid in  
 glacial acetic acid. Suitable tertiary butyl compounds include, but are not  
 limited to, t-butyl alcohol, t-butyl chloride, t-butyl bromide, t-butyl iodide,  
 isobutylene or any other compound which under hydrolytic conditions  
 15 forms t-butyl carboxamides with cyano compounds. The temperature of  
 the reaction will vary depending upon the reactants, but generally the  
 reaction is conducted in the range of from about 50°C to about 100°C with  
 t-butyl alcohol. The reaction may be performed with inert solvents, but is  
 usually run neat.  
 20 An alternative process for the formation of compounds of Formula  
 400.00a may involve direct cyclization of Compound 455.00 as shown  
 below.

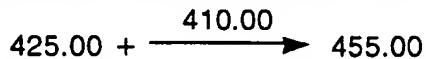
- 52 -



Cyclization to form the cycloheptene ring may be accomplished with a strong acid (e.g., triflic, polyphosphoric, HF/BF<sub>3</sub>), and may be performed in an inert solvent, such as ether, toluene or THF. The

- 5 temperature and time may vary with the acid employed, as described in process A above.

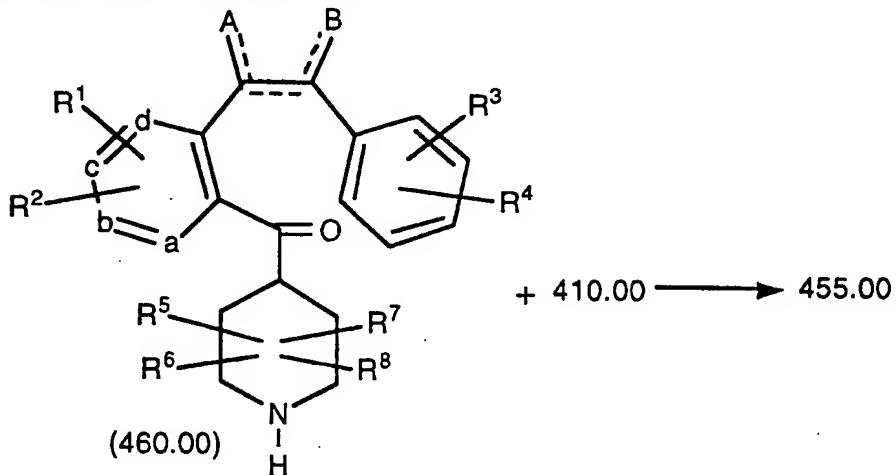
Compounds of Formula 455.00 wherein Z = O or S may be prepared by treating a compound of Formula 425.00 with an appropriate acyl halide or acyl anhydride of formula 410.00. Most preferably this  
10 reaction is run in the presence of a good nucleophile, such as LiI, in the appropriate solvent, such as toluene, dioxane or xylene, and at a temperature ranging from 50-150°C, preferably 100-120°C.



A second method of preparing compounds of Formula 455.00  
15 involves reacting an unsubstituted piperidylidene compound of Formula 460.00 with the appropriate acyl halide or acyl anhydride of Formula 410.00 in the presence of base, such as pyridine or triethylamine. Alternatively, if L = OH in compound 410.00, then coupling of compound

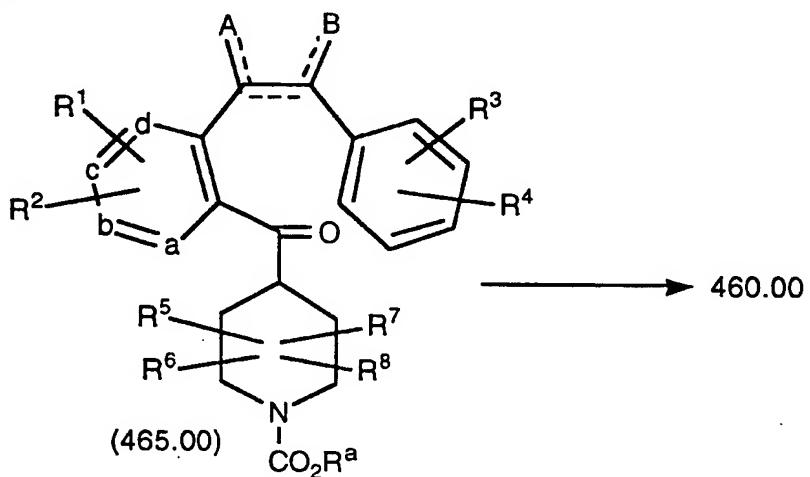
- 53 -

460.00 with compound 410.00 may require use of a conventional coupling reagent, such as DCC or CDI.



Compounds of Formula 460.00 may be produced from the

- 5 corresponding carbamates of Formula 465.00, via acid hydrolysis, using for example, aqueous hydrochloric acid, or base hydrolysis using for example, potassium hydroxide. Alternatively, some compounds can be prepared by treating the carbamate, Formula 465.00, with an organometallic reagent, such as methyl lithium or a reductive reagent,
- 10 such as zinc in acid, etc., depending upon the nature of the R<sup>a</sup> group. For example, if R<sup>a</sup> is a simple alkyl group, CO<sub>2</sub>R<sup>a</sup> may be cleaved by alkaline hydrolysis at 100°C.



The carbamate compounds of Formula 465.00 may be prepared

- 15 from the appropriate alkyl compound of Formula 425.00 by treatment with a chloroformate, preferably in an inert solvent, such as toluene, with warming to approximately 80°C. Other alternative methods are available

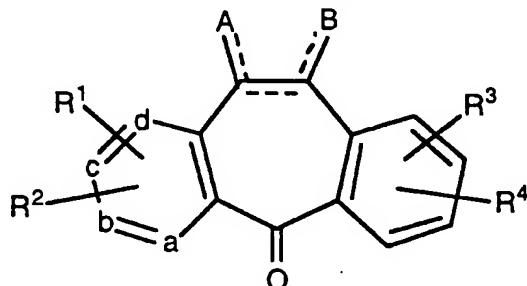
- 54 -

for the conversion of 425.00 to 455.00 as previously described (e.g. Von Braun reaction conditions). Compounds of Formula 425.00 may be prepared as described above.

5

### SUBSTITUTION ON THE PYRIDINE RING

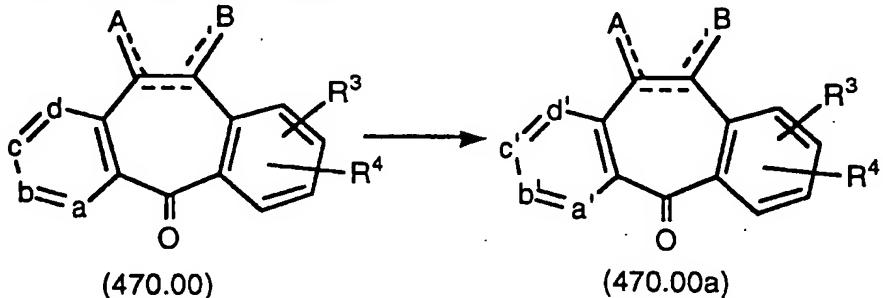
- Various methods can be used as described in WO 88/03138 to provide compounds which are substituted on the pyridine ring, i.e., in positions 2-, 3- and or 4- positions of the tricyclic ring system. For example, the cyclization methods described on pages 20-30 of WO 10 88/03138 can already have the appropriate substituents on the pyridine ring in place. A variety of substituted pyridines are known in the literature and can be employed in these syntheses. Alternatively, the azaketone of Formula XIX (from page 27 of WO 88/03138)



(XIX) p.27 WO88/03138

- 15 wherein R<sup>1</sup> and R<sup>2</sup> are both H can be converted to the appropriately substituted azaketone wherein R<sup>1</sup> and R<sup>2</sup> are non-H substituents. If both R<sup>1</sup> and R<sup>2</sup> are desired to be non-H substituents the procedure would be repeated.

- 20 The azaketone is thus reacted with an oxidizing agent such as meta-chloroperoxybenzoic acid (MCPBA) or hydrogen peroxide to produce the corresponding compound in which the nitrogen of the pyridine ring is as an N-oxide:

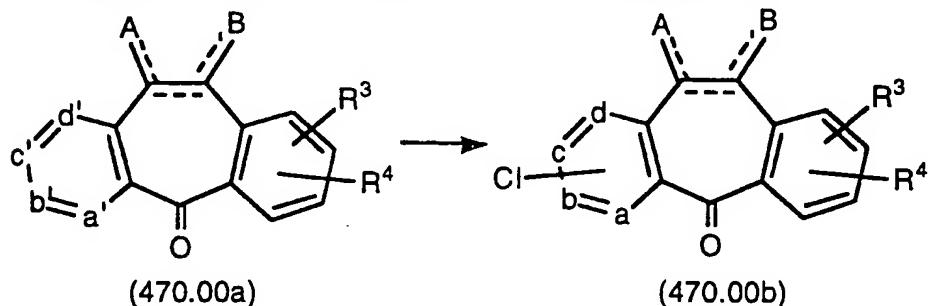


- 25 wherein one of a', b', c' or d' is N→O and the others are CH or CR<sup>1</sup> or CR<sup>2</sup>. This reaction is normally run at temperatures from -15°C to reflux,

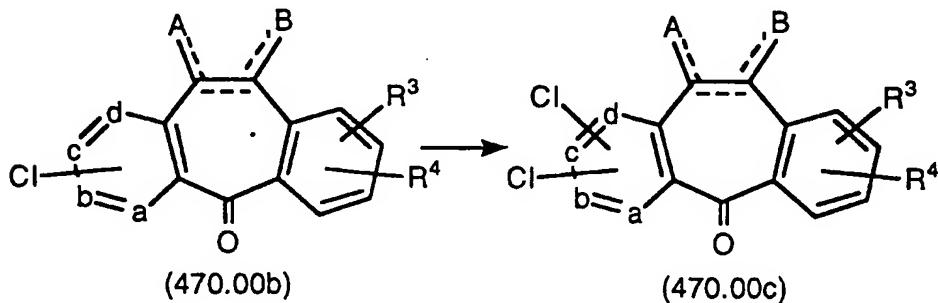
- 55 -

more typically at about 0°C. The reaction is preferably conducted in an inert solvent such as methylene chloride for MCPBA or acetic acid for hydrogen peroxide.

- The azaketone N-oxide of Formula 470.00a can then be reacted with a chlorinating agent such as  $\text{SO}_2\text{Cl}_2$  or  $\text{SOCl}_2$  to form a compound of Formula 470.00b. Typically, this reaction results in monosubstitution of Cl in the ortho or para-position relative to the N atom of the ring.



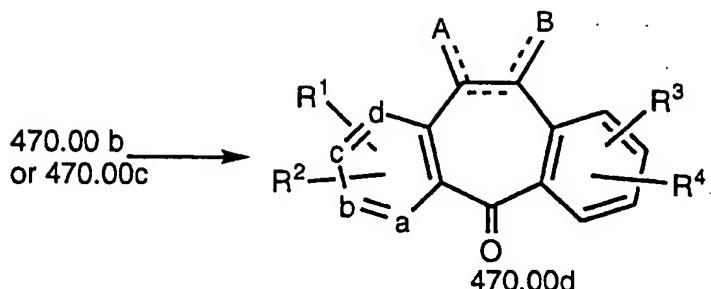
- To provide the disubstituted products, steps 1 and 2 above are  
repeated.



Typically, the resulting disubstituted compounds have Cl ortho and para relative to the N atom of the pyridine ring.

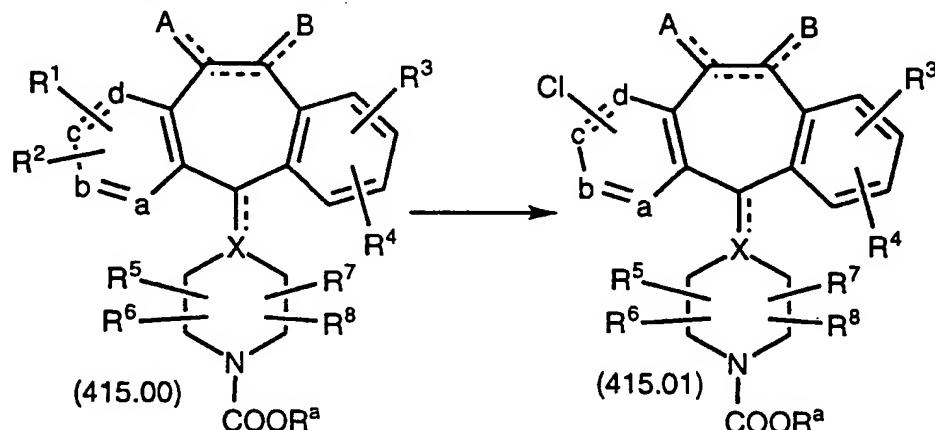
- The mono or disubstituted compounds of Formulas 470.00b and 470.00c above can be reacted with various nucleophiles such as alkoxides, amines, thiols, etc. This will result in compounds where one or both of the Cl substituents are replaced by the nucleophile to provide a compound of Formula 470.00d or a compound easily converted to Formula 470.00d.

- 56 -



The substituted ketone of Formula 470.00 can then be converted to the desired compound by the methods described above and in WO 88/03138 and in U.S. Patent No. 3,326,924.

- 5      Formula 405.00, wherein R<sup>1</sup> or R<sup>2</sup> are chlorine, can be made by the following alternate process.



- 10     The N-oxide of Formula 415.00 can be treated with POCl<sub>3</sub> to form a compound of Formula 415.01. Typically, this reaction results in mono-substitution of Cl in the ortho or para position relative to the N atom of the ring.

Alternatively, the Cl substituted azaketones of Formula 470.00b or 470.00c above can be converted to the corresponding derivatives of Formula 405.00 above wherein R<sup>1</sup> and/or R<sup>2</sup> is Cl by methods analogous to those described above. At this point the Cl substituent(s) can be displaced by an appropriate nucleophile to provide the desired substituent. Suitable nucleophiles include alkoxide, amines, thiols, etc. This reaction usually requires higher temperatures (e.g., from about 100° to about 200°C) than the displacement reaction to produce ketone 470.00d above. It is also usually conducted in a sealed vessel in an inert solvent. The compound of Formula 405.00 is then converted to a compound of Formula 400.00 as described above.

- 57 -

Various electrophilic species can also be added to the pyridine ring from the corresponding halo-substituted pyridine (Formula 405.00 wherein R<sup>1</sup> is halo, preferably bromo or iodo). Transmetallation of the halo derivative using an alkyl lithium (e.g. n-BuLi) provides the lithio derivative, which can then be quenched with the appropriate electrophile (e.g. R<sup>1</sup>L, etc.).

An alternative process for introducing substituents at the C-3 position of pyridine Ring I of Formula 1.0, involves nitrating a compound of Formula 415.00 (except wherein X is nitrogen) or a compound of

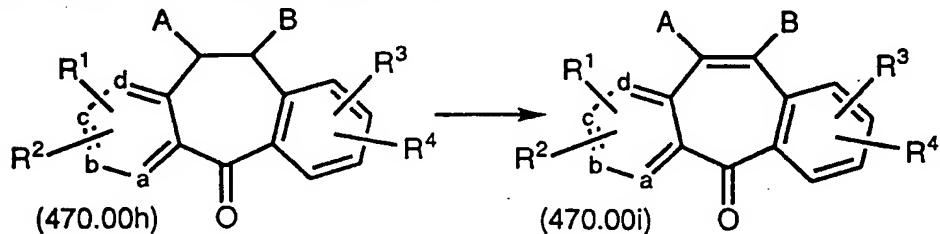
10 Formula 470.00d with tetrbutylammonium nitrate - trifluoroacetic anhydride in methylene chloride at a temperature of 0°C to room temperature (about 25°C). The nitro group may then be reduced to the corresponding amine using iron filings in ethanol, or powdered zinc - acetic acid in aqueous THF. By methods known to those skilled in the art,

15 the amine group can be converted to a variety of substituents, such as, halo, cyano, thio, hydroxyl, alkyl, alkenyl, alkynyl and haloalkyl.

Wherein Z represents sulfur, a compound of Formula 400.00 wherein Z is oxygen is reacted with  $P_2S_5$ , Lawesson's reagent, or another reagent capable of introducing sulfur in place of oxygen. The reaction may take place at elevated temperature in pyridine, toluene or other suitable solvents. In this and other reactions, numerous conversions of a compound of Formula 400.00 ( $Z = 0$ ) to another compound of Formula 400.00 ( $Z = S$ ) are possible.

## PREPARATION OF C5-C6-ENE DERIVATIVES

Compounds of formula 400.00 with a double bond between C-5 and C-6 can be prepared by heating a compound of Formula 470.00h in acetic acid with  $\text{SeO}_2$  to produce a compound of Formula 470.00i. Compounds of Formula 470.00i can be converted to final products according to methods already described.

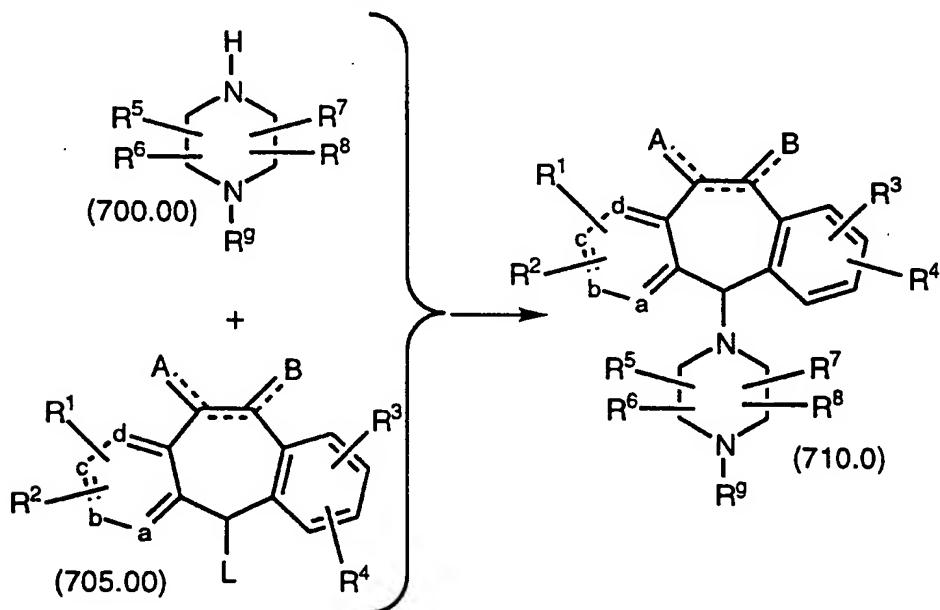


- 58 -

### PREPARATION OF PIPERAZINE ANALOGS

Compounds having a piperazine ring bound to the C-11 of the tricyclic nucleus, i.e., Formula 1.0 wherein X is N, are best prepared via alkylation of the appropriately substituted piperazine compound of

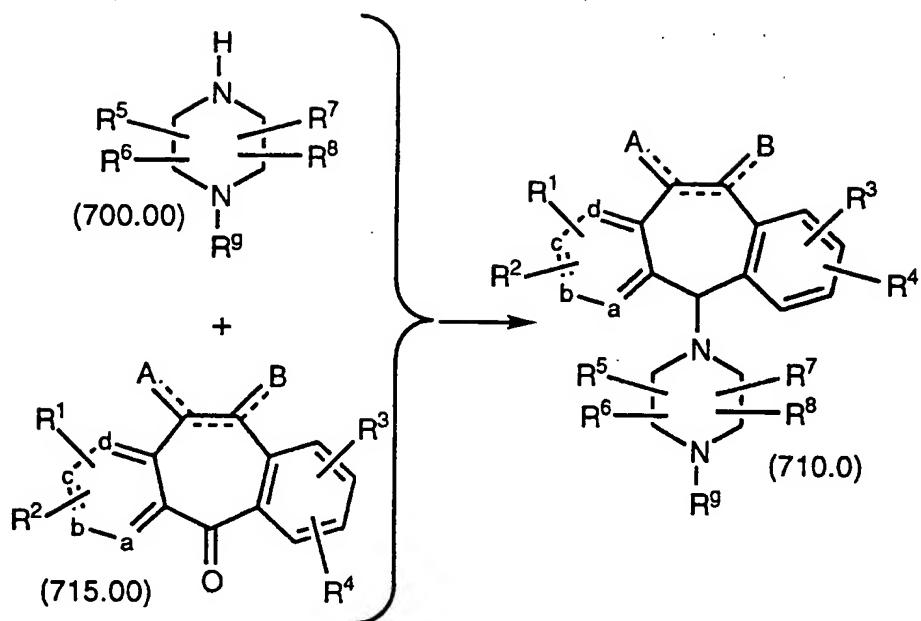
- 5      Formula 700.00 with a compound of Formula 705.00. Compounds of Formula 705.00 contain the appropriately substituted halide (such as Cl, Br, or I) or other similar leaving group (e.g., tosyloxy or mesyloxy). The reaction is usually conducted in an inert solvent, such as THF or toluene, optionally with a base such as triethylamine or potassium carbonate, and
- 10     typically at a temperature range of ambient to reflux to produce a compound of Formula 710.00.



- In this reaction R<sup>9</sup> is H, CO<sub>2</sub>R<sup>a</sup> (wherein R<sup>a</sup> is a C<sub>1</sub> to C<sub>4</sub> alkyl group) or C(Z)R. The preparation of compound 705.00 wherein L is Cl is analogous  
 15      to the procedure described in U.S. 3, 409,621. One skilled in the art can prepare other derivatives of 705.00 (e.g., L is Br, I, mesyloxy, or tosyloxy). When R<sup>9</sup> is H, C(Z)R or CO<sub>2</sub>R<sup>a</sup>, these are converted to compounds of the invention by processes known in the art.

- An alternate route for generating the compound of Formula 710.00  
 20      is by reductive amination of the aza ketone 715.00 with the piperazine 700.00

- 59 -



The reaction is typically carried out in a polar solvent, such as methanol or ethanol, optionally in the presence of a dehydrating agent, such as 3Å molecular sieves. The intermediate Schiff base can be

- 5 reduced to the compound of Formula 710.00 by employing a variety of reducing agents, such as NaCNBH<sub>3</sub>, or catalytic hydrogenation, for example, hydrogen over Pd/C.

When R<sup>9</sup> is C(Z)R, these are the compounds of the invention.

- When R<sup>9</sup> is H or CO<sub>2</sub>R<sup>a</sup>, these are converted to compounds of the  
10 invention as described herein.

Compounds of Formulas 5.3A and 5.3B, wherein R<sup>25</sup> represents a pyridyl N-oxide, can be produced by reacting compounds of Formulas 5.3A and 5.3B, wherein R<sup>25</sup> is pyridyl, with a one molar equivalent of an oxidizing agent (such as oxone).

- 15 Compounds of Formulas 5.3, 5.3A and 5.3B, wherein R<sup>25</sup> represents a pyridyl N-oxide, can be produced by reacting the product of Preparative Example 12 with a peroxyacid (such as m-chloroperbenzoic acid) to give the corresponding N-oxide intermediate. The desired N-oxide product may be obtained from the N-oxide intermediate by following  
20 the procedure of Example 183.

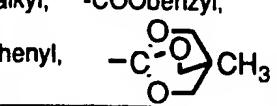
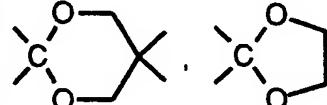
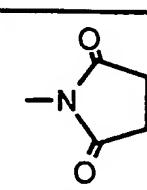
In the above processes, it is sometimes desirable and/or necessary to protect certain R<sup>1</sup>, R<sup>2</sup>, R<sup>3</sup> and R<sup>4</sup> etc., groups during the reactions. Conventional protecting groups are operable as described in Greene, T.W., "Protective Groups In Organic Synthesis," John Wiley & Sons, New

- 60 -

York, 1981. For example, the groups listed in column 1 of Table 1 may be protected as indicated in column 2 of the table:

5

TABLE 1  
PROTECTED GROUPS

1. GROUP TO BE PROTECTED	2. PROTECTED GROUP
-COOH	-COOalkyl, -COObenzyl, -COOphenyl, 
>NH	>NCOalkyl, >NCObenzyl, >NCOPhenyl
>CO	
-OH	-O-Cyclohexyl, -OCH <sub>2</sub> phenyl, -OCH <sub>3</sub> , OSi(CH <sub>3</sub> ) <sub>2</sub> (t-Bu),
-NHR, wherein R is any substituent on an amino group within the scope of the claims	-NR-Cyclohexyl, -NR-CO-CF <sub>3</sub> , -NRCOCH <sub>3</sub> , -NRCH <sub>2</sub> 
-NH <sub>2</sub>	 -NH-C(O)-O(t-Bu)

- 61 -

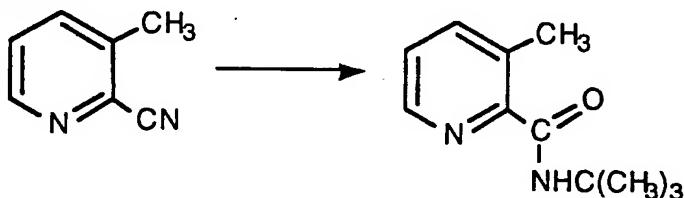
Other protecting groups well known in the art also may be used. After the reaction or reactions, the protecting groups may be removed by standard procedures.

- Compounds useful in this invention are exemplified by the  
 5 following preparative examples, which should not be construed to limit the scope of the disclosure. Alternative mechanistic pathways and analogous structures within the scope of the invention may be apparent to those skilled in the art.

10

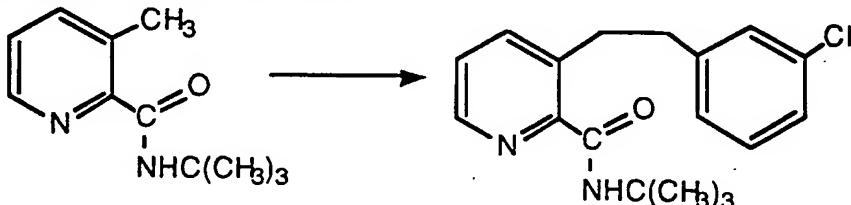
PREPARATIVE EXAMPLE 1

**A. N-(1,1-DIMETHYLETHYL)-3-METHYL-2-PYRIDINE CARBOXAMIDE**



- Suspend 2-cyano-3-methyl pyridine (400 g) in t-butanol (800 mL)  
 15 and heat to 70°C. Add concentrated sulphuric acid (400 mL) dropwise over 45 minutes. Maintain the temperature at 75°C, until the reaction is complete, and for an additional 30 minutes. Dilute the mixture with water (400 mL), charge with toluene (600 mL) and bring to pH 10 with concentrated aqueous ammonia. Maintain the temperature at 50-55°C  
 20 during the work up. Separate the toluene phase, and reextract the aqueous layer. Combine toluene phases and wash with water. Remove the toluene to yield the title compound N-(1,1-dimethylethyl)-3-methyl-2-pyridine carboxamide, as an oil, from which solid product is crystallized. (Yield 97%, as determined by an internal standard assay with gas chromatography).

**B. 3-[2-(3-CHLOROPHENYL)ETHYL]-N-(1,1-DIMETHYL-ETHYL)-2-PYRIDINE CARBOXAMIDE**

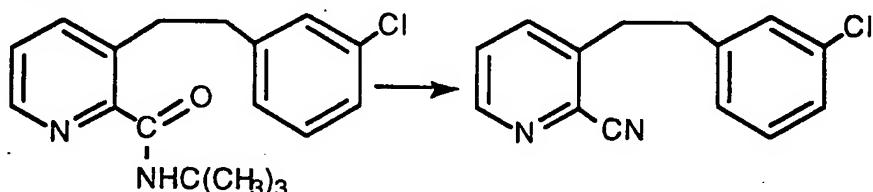


- Dissolve the title compound of Preparative Example 1A, N-(1,1-dimethylethyl)-3-methyl-2-pyridine carboxamide (31.5 g.) in  
 30

- 62 -

- tetrahydrofuran (600 mL) and cool the resulting solution to -40°C. Add n-butyllithium (2 eq.) in hexane while maintaining the temperature at -40°C. The solution turns deep purple-red. Add sodium bromide (1.6 g) and stir the mixture. Add solution of m-chlorobenzylchloride (26.5 g., 0.174 mole)
- 5      in tetrahydrofuran (125 mL) while maintaining the temperature at -40°C. Stir the reaction mixture until the reaction is complete as determined by thin layer chromatography. Add water to the reaction until the color is dissipated. Extract the reaction mixture with ethyl acetate, wash with water, and concentrate to a residue which is the title compound. (Yield
- 10     92% as shown by chromatography).

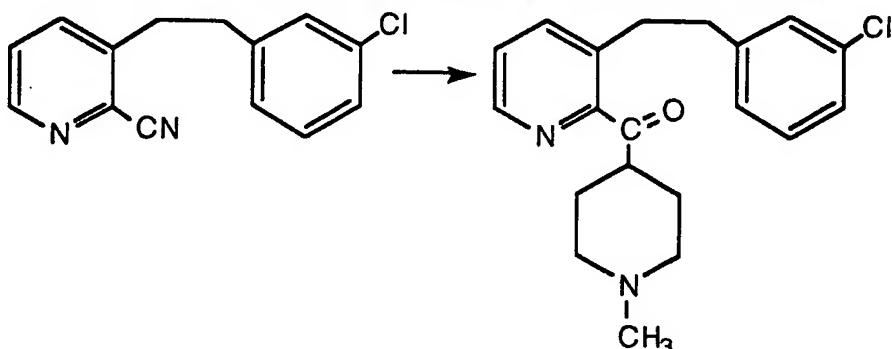
C. 3-[2-(3-CHLOROPHENYL)ETHYL]-2-PYRIDINE-CARBO-NITRILE



- Heat a solution of the title compound of Preparative Example 1B, 3-
- 15     [2-(3-chlorophenyl)ethyl]-N-(1,1-dimethylethyl)-2-pyridine carboxamide (175 g, 0.554 mole) in phosphorous oxychloride (525 mL, 863 g, 5.63 mole) and reflux for 3 hours. Determine completion of the reaction by thin layer chromatography. Remove any excess phosphorous oxychloride by distillation at reduced pressure and quench the reaction in a mixture of
- 20     water and isopropanol. Bring to pH 5-7 by adding 50% aqueous sodium hydroxide solution while maintaining the temperature below 30°C. Filter the crystalline slurry of crude product and wash with water. Purify the crude product by slurrying the wet cake in hot isopropanol, and cool to 0-5°C. Filter the product, wash with hexane and dry at a temperature below
- 25     50°C to yield the title compound. (Yield: 118g (HPLC purity 95.7%), m.p. 72°C-73°C, 89.4% of theory).

- 63 -

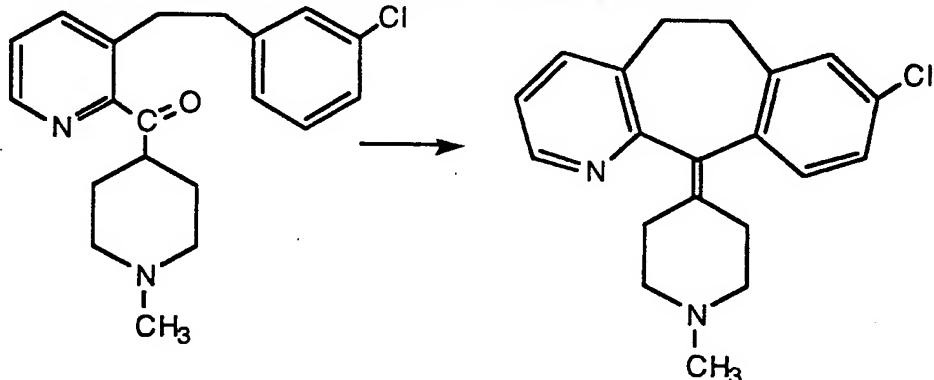
D. 1-(METHYL-4-PIPERIDINYL)[3-(2-(3-CHLOROPHENYL)ETHYL)-2-PYRIDINYL]METHANONE HYDROCHLORIDE



Dissolve the title compound of Preparative Example 1C, (118 g,

- 5 0.487 mole) in dry tetrahydrofuran (1.2L) and add N-methyl-piperidyl magnesium chloride (395 mL, 2.48 mole/liter, 0.585 mole, 1.2 eq.) over 15 minutes. Maintain the temperature at 40°C-50°C by cooling with water as necessary, for 30 minutes. Determine completion of the reaction by thin layer chromatography. Quench the reaction by reducing the pH to below
- 10 2 with 2N HCl and stir the resulting solution at 25°C for 1 hour. Remove the bulk of the tetrahydrofuran by distillation and adjust the resulting solution to pH 3.5 by addition of aqueous sodium hydroxide. Cool to 0 to 5°C and filter off the crystalline hydrochloride salt product. Wash with ice cold water and dry to constant weight at 60°C to yield the title compound.
- 15 (Yield: 168.2 g (HPLC purity 94%), m.p. 183°-185°C, 89% of theory).

E. 8-CHLORO-11-(1-METHYL-4-PIPERIDYLIDENE)-6,11-DIHYDRO-5H-BENZO[5,6]CYCLOHEPTA[1,2-b]PYRIDINE



Dissolve the title compound of Preparative Example 1D above (59

- 20 g, 0.15 mole) in hydrofluoric acid (120 mL, 120 g, 6.0 mole) at -35°C and add boron trifluoride (44.3 g, 0.66 mole) over 1 hour. Determine completeness of the reaction by thin layer chromatography. Quench the

- 64 -

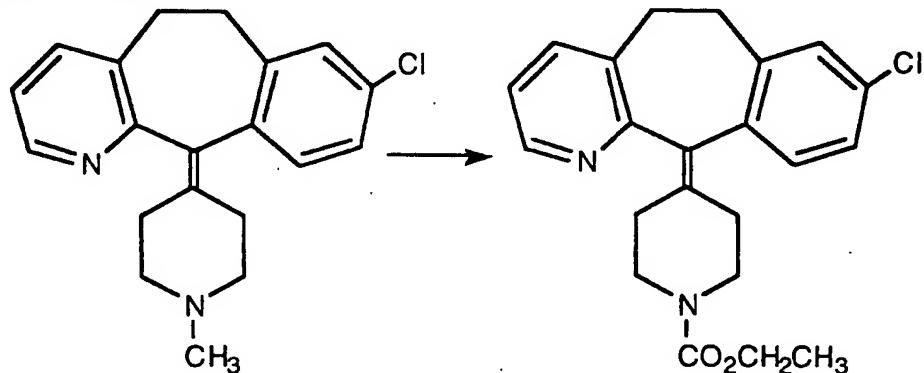
- reaction using ice, water and potassium hydroxide bringing the solution to a final pH of 10. Extract the product with toluene and wash with water and brine. Concentrate the toluene solution to a residue, and dissolve in hot hexane. Remove the insolubles by filtration and concentrate the filtrate to
- 5 yield the title compound as an off-white powder. (Yield: 45.7 g (HPLC purity: 95%), 92% of theory).

**Alternative Step E:** 8-CHLORO-11-(1-METHYL-4-PIPERIDYLIDENE)-6,11-DIHYDRO-5H-BENZO[5,6]CYCLOHEPTA[1,2-b]PYRIDINE

- 10 React the title compound of Preparative Example 1D above (177 g, 0.49 mole) in trifluoromethanesulfonic acid (480 ml, 814.1 g, 5.31 mole) at 90-95°C for 18 hours under nitrogen. Determine the completeness of the reaction by thin layer chromatography. Cool the reaction and quench the reaction with ice-water and adjust the pH to 6 with barium carbonate.
- 15 Extract the product with methylene chloride, and concentrate under reduced pressure to about 1 liter. Wash with water, and extract the product into 1 N HCl which is treated with 30 g of activated charcoal, and filter through celite. Adjust the pH of the filtrate to 10 with aqueous sodium hydroxide (50%), extract the product into methylene chloride, and remove
- 20 under reduced pressure to form a residue. Dissolve the residue in hot hexane, and filter to remove insolubles. Concentrate the filtrate to yield the title compound as a beige powder. (Yield: 126 g (HPLC purity 80%), 65% of theory).

**F.** 8-CHLORO-11-(1-ETHOXYSUBONYL-4-

- 25 PIPERIDYLIDENE)-6,11-DIHYDRO-5H-BENZO[5,6]CYCLOHEPTA[1,2-b]PYRIDINE



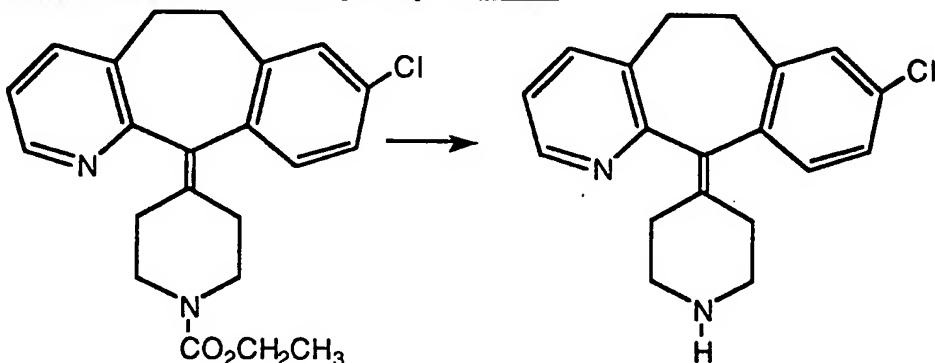
- Dissolve the title compound of Preparative Example 1E above (45.6 g, 0.141 mole) in toluene (320 mL) at 80°C and to it gradually add
- 30 ethyl chloroformate (40.4 mL, 45.9 g, 0.423 mole). Following complete

- 65 -

- addition, maintain the temperature at 80°C for 1 hour, then add diisopropylethylamine (2.7 mL, 2.00 g, 0.016 mole) and additional ethyl chloroformate (4.1 mL, 4.65 g, 0.0429 mole). Monitor completeness of the reaction by thin layer chromatography. Upon completion, cool the
- 5 reaction mixture to ambient temperature, and wash the toluene solution with water. Concentrate the organic layer to a residue and dissolve in hot acetonitrile (320 mL). Decolorize the solution with 14 g of activated charcoal. Remove the activated charcoal by filtration and concentrate the filtrate to a crystalline slurry. Cool the mixture to 0-5°C, and isolate the
- 10 product by filtration. Wash with cold acetonitrile and dry the product at below 70°C to yield the title compound. (Yield: 42.4 g (HPLC purity 97.4%), 80% of theory).

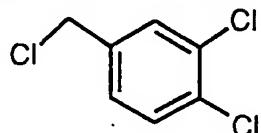
G. 8-CHLORO-11-(4-PIPERIDYLIDENE)-6,11-DIHYDRO-5H-BENZO[5,6]CYCLOHEPTA[1,2-b]PYRIDINE

15



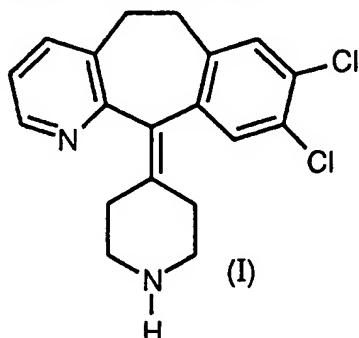
- Hydrolyze the title compound of Preparative Example 1F, 8-chloro-11-(1-ethoxycarbonyl-4-piperidylidene)-6,11-dihydro-5H-benzo[5,6]cyclohepta[1,2-b]pyridine (39 g, 0.101 mole) with KOH (50 g) in ethanol (305 mL) and water (270 mL) at reflux under an argon
- 20 atmosphere for 64 hours. Partially distill off the ethanol and dilute the residue with brine, and extract with ethyl acetate (3x). Wash the combined organic phases with water and dry with Na<sub>2</sub>SO<sub>4</sub>. Remove the solvent to give a solid which can be recrystallized from toluene to give the title compound as a white solid. (Yield: 24.5 g, 77%, melting point 154-
- 25 155°C).

H. By substituting in step 1B above, the benzylic halide:



- 66 -

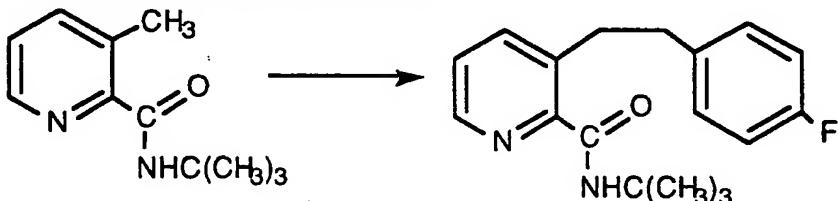
for meta-chlorobenzylchloride, and employing basically the same methods as steps C through G, the compound



is prepared. Dichloro compound (I) is recrystallized from toluene and has  
5 a melting point of 150-152°C. Reaction times are determined by TLC or HPLC. In some instances purification of the product by chromatography is necessary.

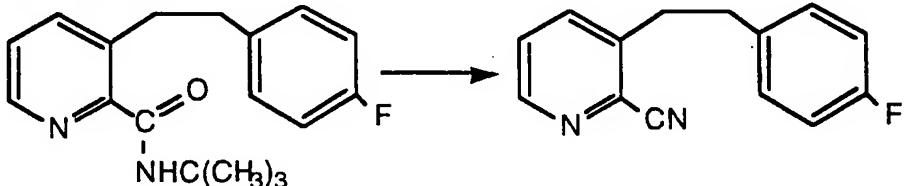
#### PREPARATIVE EXAMPLE 2

10      A. N-(1,1-DIMETHYLETHYL)-3-[2-(4-FLUOROPHENYL)-ETHYL]2-PYRIDINE CARBOXAMIDE



Cool a solution of N-(1,1-dimethylethyl)-3-methyl-2-pyridine-carboxamide (38.4 g, 0.2 mole) in dry THF (250 mL) to -40°C and add n-butyl lithium (185 mL, 0.44 mole). Add sodium bromide (1.9 g, 18 mmol.) and stir for 15 minutes. Add 4-fluorobenzylchloride (31.8 g, 0.22 mole) and stir for 2.5 hours while warming to -5°C. Quench the reaction with water and extract the product twice with ethyl acetate, then wash with brine (2X). Dry the organic phase over Na<sub>2</sub>SO<sub>4</sub>, filter and remove the solvent to give the title compound. (60.0 g, Yield 99%, m.p. 59-61°C.)

15      B. 3-[2-(4-FLUOROPHENYL)ETHYL]2-PYRIDINE CARBONITRILE

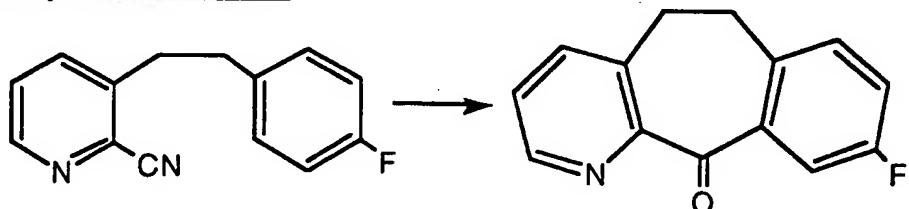


- 67 -

Heat the title compound of Preparative Example 2A above (60.0 g, 0.2 mole) in  $\text{POCl}_3$  (200 mL) to 110°C under an argon atmosphere for 3.5 hours. Pour the reaction mixture onto ice and basify with NaOH (50%) solution. Extract the mixture with ethyl acetate (3x) and wash with water. Wash with brine and dry over  $\text{Na}_2\text{SO}_4$ . Remove the solvent and pass the residue through a coarse  $\text{SiO}_2$  (60-200 mesh) column to give the title compound as a white solid (40 g, Yield 88%, m.p. 48- 49°C.).

**C. 9-FLUORO-5,6-DIHYDRO-11H-BENZO[5,6]CYCLOHEPTA-[1,2-b]PYRIDIN-11-ONE**

10



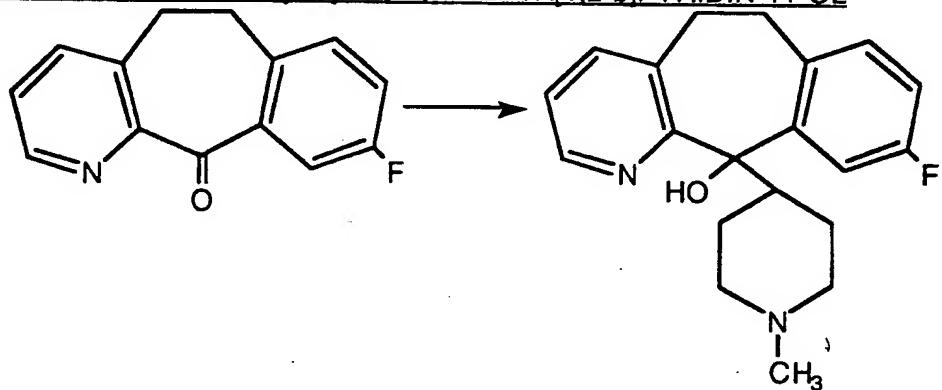
15

Cyclize the title compound of Preparative Example 2B above (31.5 g, 139 mmol) in polyphosphoric acid (1.24 kg) at 200°C for 5.5 hours. Pour onto ice and basify with NaOH solution (50%). Extract the product with chloroform (3x) and wash with brine. Dry the organic phase with  $\text{Na}_2\text{SO}_4$ , filter and remove the solvent to give the title compound (20.4 g, yield 64%, m.p. 78-81°C after recrystallization from diisopropyl ether).

**D. 9-FLUORO-11-(1-METHYL-4-PIPERIDINYL)-6,11-DIHYDRO-5H-BENZO[5,6]CYCLOHEPTA[1,2-b]PYRIDIN-11-OL**

20

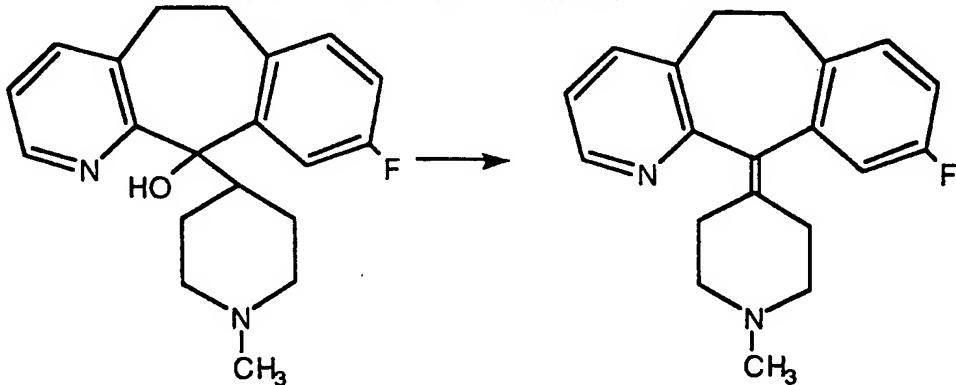
Dissolve the title compound of Preparative Example 2C above (10.0 g, 44 mmol) in THF (100 mL) and add slowly to a cooled (-40°C) solution of the Grignard reagent prepared from N-methyl-4-chloropiperidine (57.9 mL, 88 mmol) and magnesium in THF (70 mL). Stir the mixture for about 1 hour while warming up to 0°C. Quench the reaction with  $\text{NH}_4\text{Cl}$  solution and extract with ethyl acetate (2X). Wash the organic phase with brine and dry over  $\text{Na}_2\text{SO}_4$ , filter and remove the solvent.



- 68 -

Purify the residue with flash chromatography and elute with methanol (5%) in  $\text{CHCl}_3$  to give the title compound as white granular crystals. (10.1 g, Yield 70%, m.p. 126-127°C after recrystallization from diisopropyl ether.)

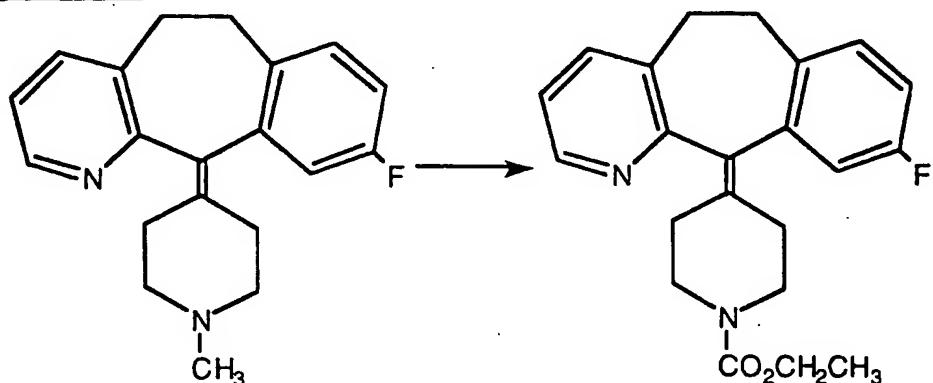
5        E. 9-FLUORO-11-(1-METHYL-4-PIPERIDYLENE)-6,11-DIHYDRO-5H-BENZO[5,6]CYCLOHEPTA[1,2-b]PYRIDINE



Add the title compound of Preparative Example 2D above (7.3 g, 22.3 mmol) to a mixture of cooled  $\text{H}_2\text{SO}_4$  and  $\text{CF}_3\text{SO}_3\text{H}$  (1:1), (146 mL).

- 10 Stir the reaction mixture for 0.5 hours at ice bath temperature and then at room temperature for 1.5 hours. Pour the reaction mixture onto ice and basify with NaOH (50%) solution. Extract the product with ethyl acetate (3X) and wash with brine. Dry the organic phase over  $\text{Na}_2\text{SO}_4$ , filter and remove the solvent to give a crude oil. Charcoal the oil and recrystallize  
15 from ethyl acetate and isopropyl ether to give the title compound. (5.6 g, Yield 82%, m.p. 134.5-135.5°C.).

F. 9-FLUORO-11-(1-ETHOXYSUBSTITUTED-4-PIPERIDYLIDENE)-6,11-DIHYDRO-5H-BENZO[5,6]CYCLOHEPTA[1,2-b]PYRIDINE



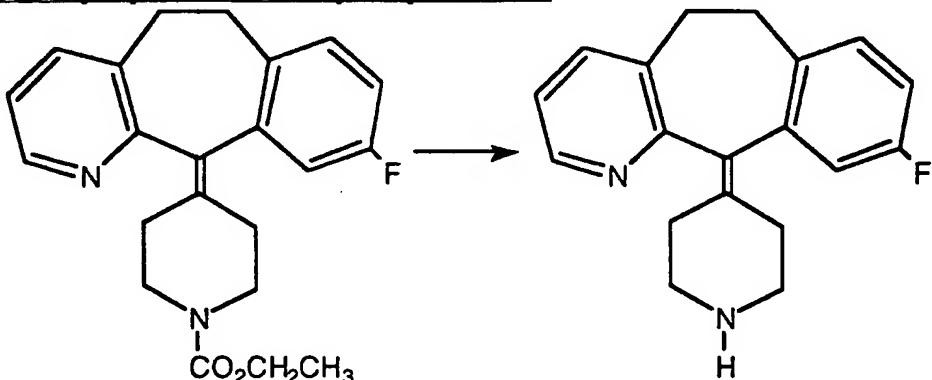
20

Stir a solution of the title compound of Preparative Example 2E above (5.0 g, 16.2 mmol) and triethylamine (2.6 g, 26 mmol) in dry toluene

- 69 -

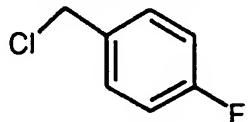
- (60 mL) at 80°C under an argon atmosphere, and add ethyl chloroformate (9.8 g, 90 mmol) via a syringe. Stir the reaction at this temperature for 30 minutes and at room temperature for one hour. Filter the reaction and remove the solvent. Pass the residue through a coarse SiO<sub>2</sub> column (60-200 mesh), and elute with CHCl<sub>3</sub> to yield the title compound as a white solid. (4.5 g, Yield 76%, m.p. 112-114°C after trituration with pentane).

**G. 9-FLUORO-11-(4-PIPERIDYLIDENE)-6,11-DIHYDRO-5H-BENZO[5,6]CYCLOHEPTA[1,2-b]PYRIDINE**

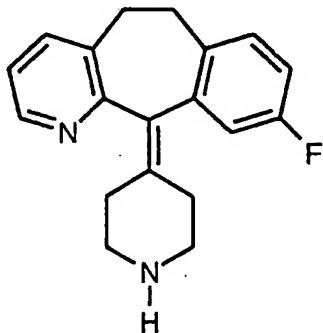


- 10 Reflux the title compound of Preparative Example 2F above (3.83 g, 10.4 mmol) with KOH (4.6 g) in 50 mL of ethanol/H<sub>2</sub>O (1:1) for 4 hours under an argon atmosphere. Pour the reaction mixture into a brine solution and extract with ethyl acetate (2X), dry over Na<sub>2</sub>SO<sub>4</sub> and filter. Remove the solvent to give the title compound (2.86 g, Yield 90%, m.p.
- 15 138-140°C.).

**H. By employing the benzyl halide**



in place of 4-fluorobenzyl chloride in step 2A above, the product



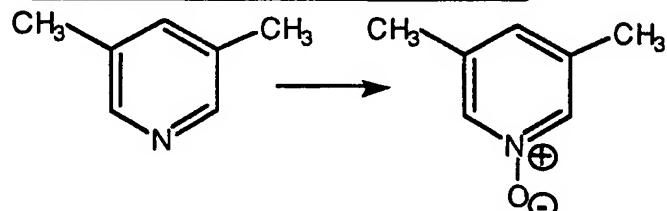
- 20 is prepared (m.p. 138-140°C, triturated with pentane) by employing basically the same process as described in steps 2A-2G. Workup time is

- 70 -

determined by either TLC or HPLC. In some instances purification of the product by chromatography is necessary.

PREPARATIVE EXAMPLE 3

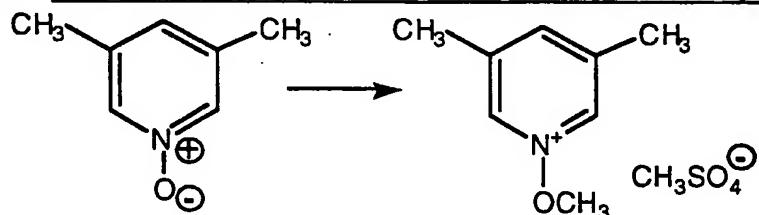
5      A. 3,5-DIMETHYLPYRIDINIUM N-OXIDE



A solution of 285 mL (1.31 mol) of 35% peracetic acid was slowly added to a stirred solution of 149 g (1.39 mol) of 3,5-dimethylpyridine during which the temperature rose to 85°C and was maintained at this  
10 temperature during addition. After the temperature of the mixture dropped to about 35°C the reaction was stored at 5°C overnight.

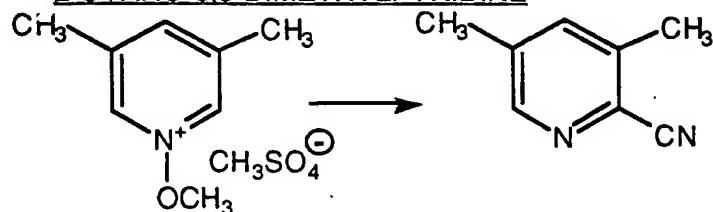
After partial removal of 185 ml of acetic acid via distillation under vacuum, the reaction was washed with NaHSO<sub>4</sub> solution and then  
15 neutralized with 10% NaOH solution to pH of about 7. The product was extracted with CH<sub>2</sub>Cl<sub>2</sub> to give the title compound as a white solid (yield  
142 g, 83%).

B. 1-METHOXY-3,5-DIMETHYLPYRIDINIUM METHYL SULFATE



Dimethylsulfate (42.0 g, 0.33 mol) was slowly added to 41.0 g (0.33  
20 mol) of 3,5-dimethylpyridinium N-oxide with mechanical stirring. The mixture was then heated on a steam bath for 1 hr. Then vacuum was applied while cooling to give a brownish solid of the title compound in quantitative yield.

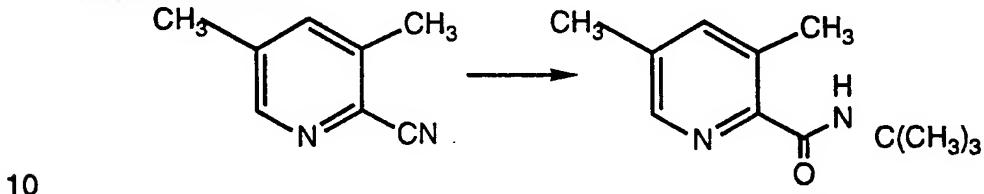
C. 2-CYANO-3,5-DIMETHYLPYRIDINE



- 71 -

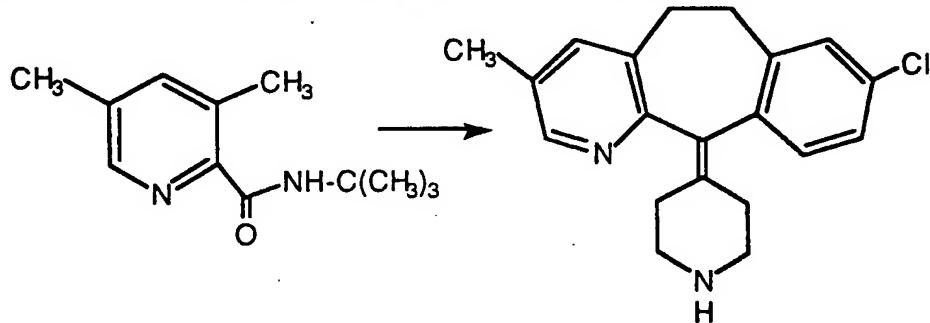
To a cooled (0°C) solution of sodium cyanide (49.0 g, 0.999 mol, 3.0 eq.) in 135 mL of water (air free) was dripped 1-methoxy-3,5-dimethyl pyridinium methyl sulfate (83.0g, 0.33 mol) in 100 mL water (air free) in 1.25 hr., keeping the temperature below 3°C. The reaction mixture was stored at about 3°C overnight. The mixture was filtered and washed with water to give 40g of the title compound. An analytical sample was recrystallized from isopropyl ether and pentane (4:1) (m.p.: 61-62°C).

5      D. N-(1,1-DIMETHYLETHYL)-3,5-DIMETHYL-2-PYRIDINE CARBOXAMIDE



To a stirred solution of 20.3 g (0.153 mol) of 2-cyano-3,5-dimethylpyridine in 100 mL of 20 mL of conc. sulfuric acid within 10 minutes, followed by 20 mL of t-butanol over an additional 15 minutes. The solution was warmed at 75°C for 30 minutes after which it was cooled 15 to room temperature and basified with 25% NaOH. The product was extracted 3X with EtOAc (600 mL), which was combined and washed 1X with brine, dried ( $\text{Na}_2\text{SO}_4$ ), filtered and concentrated in vacuo to give the title compound (31.26 g) as a yellowish oil.

20      E. 8-CHLORO-3-METHYL-11-(4-PIPERIDYLIDENE)-6,11-DIHYDRO-5H-BENZO[5,6]CYCLOHEPTA[1,2-b]PYRIDINE

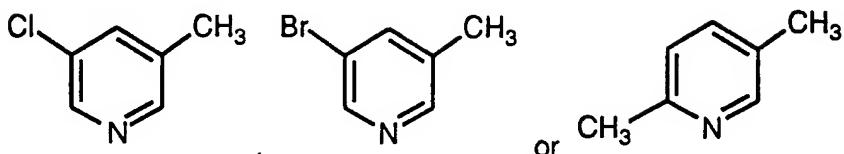


By substituting in step 1B above N-(1,1-dimethylethyl)-3,5-dimethyl-2-pyridine carboxamide for N-(1,1-dimethylethyl)-3-methyl-2-pyridine carboxamide and employing basically the same methods as steps B through G of Preparative Example 1, one obtains 8-chloro-3-methyl-11-(4-piperidylidene)-6,11-dihydro-5H-benzo[5,6]cyclohepta[1,2-b]pyridine. Reaction times are determined by TLC or HPLC.

- 72 -

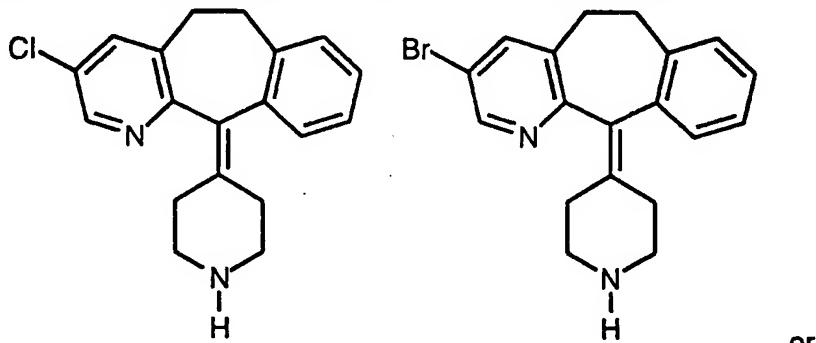
PREPARATIVE EXAMPLE 4

By substituting

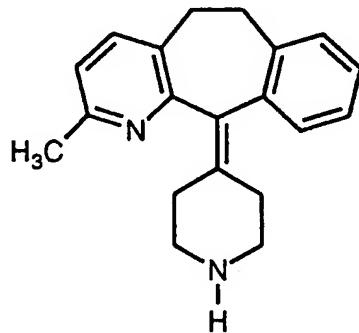


for 3,5-dimethylpyridine in Preparative Example 3 above and following

5 basically the same procedure (steps A-E), the compounds



, or



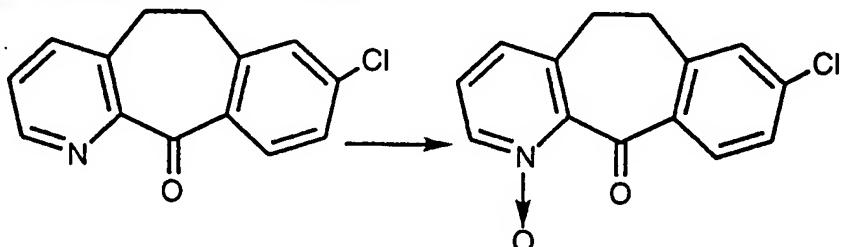
respectively, can be prepared. Note that the addition of the nitrile group  
to the pyridine in Step C of Preparative Example 3 can result in the

10 formation of other undesirable isomers which can be removed via flash chromatography.

- 73 -

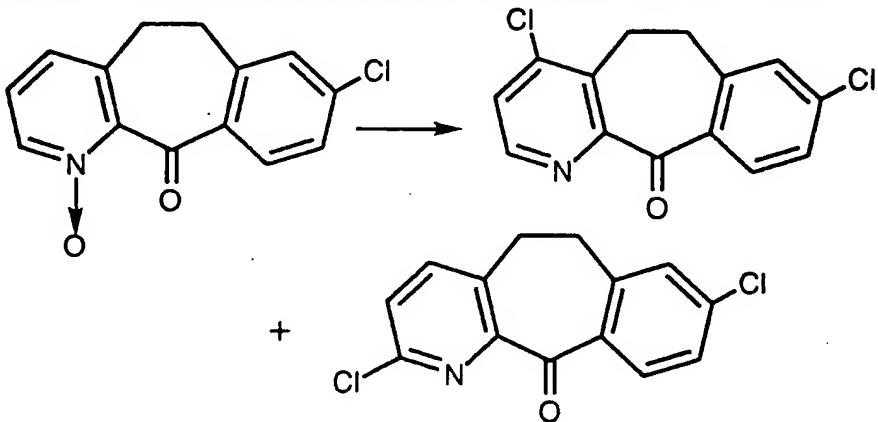
PREPARATIVE EXAMPLE 5

A. 8-CHLORO-5,6-DIHYDRO-11H-BENZO[5,6]CYCLOHEPTA-[1,2-b]PYRIDIN-11-ONE N-OXIDE



5 To a mixture of 25.1 grams (0.103 mole) of 8-chloro-5,6-dihydro-11H-benzo[5,6]cyclohepta[1,2-b]pyridin-11-one in 175 ml of dry methylene chloride at 0°C under an argon atmosphere was added dropwise over 70 minutes a solution of 24.12 grams of 3-chloroperoxybenzoic acid in 150 ml of methylene chloride. After the addition the  
10 solution was stirred for 1/2 hour after which the ice bath was removed. After two days the reaction was poured into 1.0 N aqueous sodium hydroxide and extracted with methylene chloride. The organic portions were combined, washed once with water, dried over magnesium sulfate, filtered and concentrated in vacuo. The resultant product was triturated  
15 with isopropyl ether and filtered to provide 25.8 grams (96%) yield of the title compound.

B. 2,8-DICHLORO-5,6-DIHYDRO-11H-BENZO[5,6]-CYCLOHEPTA[1,2-b]PYRIDIN-11-ONE AND 4,8-DICHLORO-5,6-DIHYDRO-11H-BENZO[5,6]CYCLOHEPTA[1,2-b]PYRIDIN-11-ONE



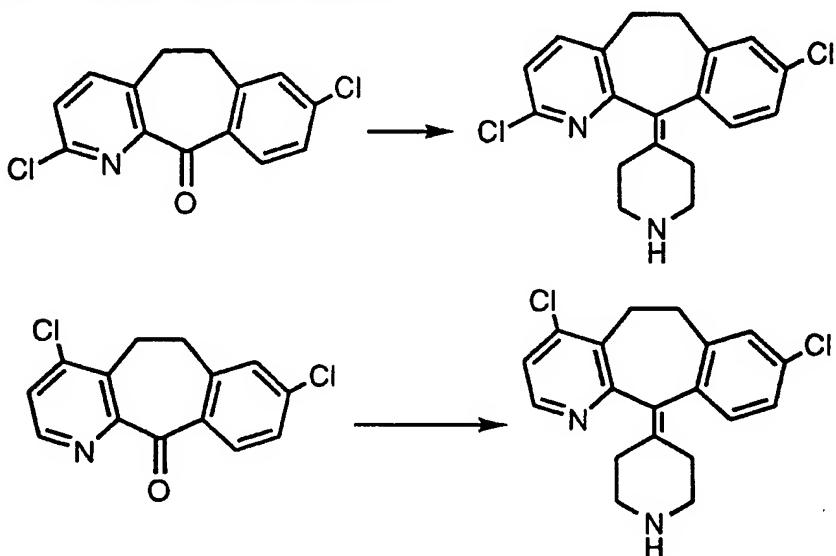
20

To a mixture of 29.13 grams (112.2 mmol) of the title compound from Preparative Example 5A above, in 40 ml of dry methylene chloride at 0°C and under argon atmosphere was added 500 ml of 1.0 M SO<sub>2</sub>Cl<sub>2</sub> dropwise over 1 hour. The ice bath was then removed and the reaction

- 74 -

- stirred at room temperature for 1 hr and then refluxed for seven hours. The mixture was poured into 1.0 N aqueous NaOH and extracted three times with  $\text{CH}_2\text{Cl}_2$ . The organic portions were combined, dried over  $\text{MgSO}_4$ , filtered and concentrated in vacuo to yield a product which was 5 purified and separated via flash chromatography to yield the two title compounds.

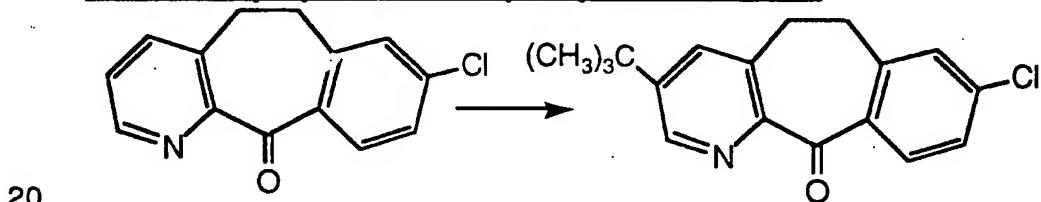
C. 4-(2,8-DICHLORO-5,6-DIHYDRO-11H-BENZO[5,6]-CYCLOHEPTA[1,2-b]PYRIDIN-11-YLIDENE)PIPERIDINE AND 4-(4,8-DICHLORO-5,6-DIHYDRO-11H-BENZO[5,6]CYCLOHEPTA[1,2-b]-  
10 PYRIDIN-11-YLIDENE)PIPERIDINE



- By following essentially the same procedure as that described in parts D-G of Preparative Example 2 above, the 2,8-dichloro and 4,8-dichloro products of Preparative Example 5B above were converted to the 15 corresponding title compounds.

PREPARATIVE EXAMPLE 6

A. 3-(1,1-DIMETHYL-1-ETHYL)-8-CHLORO-5,6-DIHYDRO-11H-BENZO[5,6]CYCLOHEPTA[1,2-b]PYRIDIN-11-ONE

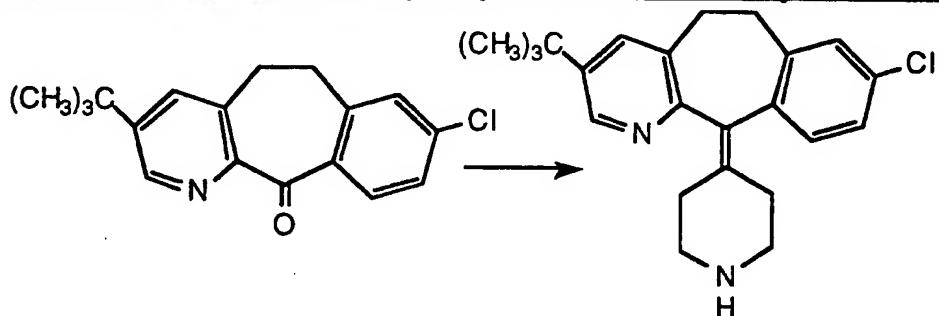


To a mixture of 20.05 grams (82.28 mmol) of 8-chloro-5,6-dihydro-11H-benzo[5,6]-cyclohepta[1,2-b]pyridin-11-one in 400 ml of dry

- 75 -

tetrahydrofuran at -72°C and under an atmosphere of nitrogen was added dropwise over 40 minutes 66.0 ml of 2.7 M t-butyl magnesium chloride in tetrahydrofuran. The reaction mixture was slowly warmed to room temperature and stirred overnight. The mixture was then poured into 10% aqueous ammonium chloride and extracted four times with methylene chloride. The combined organic portions were dried over magnesium sulfate, filtered, and concentrated in vacuo to give the title compound, along with 8-chloro-11-(1,1-dimethyl-1-ethyl)-6,11-dihydro-5H-benzo[5,6]cyclohepta[1,2-b]pyridin-11-ol. These compounds were separated via flash chromatography to give the title compound, which was recrystallized from isopropyl ether to give 4.37 grams (18%) of the title compound as a white solid.

B. 4-[3-(1,1-DIMETHYL-1-ETHYL)-8-CHLORO-5,6-DIHYDRO-11H-BENZO[5,6]CYCLOHEPTA[1,2-b]PYRIDIN-11-YLIDENE]PIPERIDINE



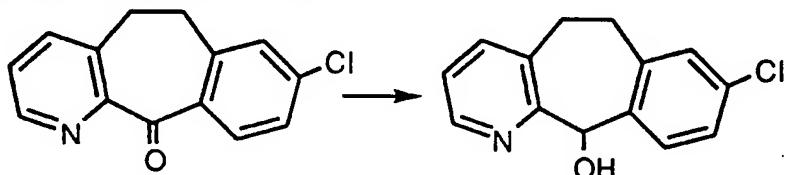
15

By using the title compound of Part A above and applying essentially the same procedure described in parts D-G of Preparative Example 2 above, one can obtain the title compound.

20

PREPARATIVE EXAMPLE 7

A. 8-CHLORO-6,11-DIHYDRO-11-HYDROXY-5H-BENZO[5,6]-CYCLOHEPTA[1,2-b]PYRIDINE



25

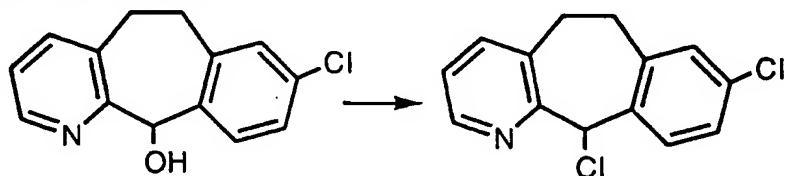
To a mixture of 25.03 g (103 mmol) of 8-chloro-5,6-dihydro-11H-benzo[5,6]cyclohepta[1,2-b]pyridin-11-one in 200 mL of methanol at room temperature and under a nitrogen atmosphere was added portionwise over a period of about 1 hour 4.82 g (124 mmol) of sodium borohydride. Occasional cooling with an ice bath was necessary at times during the

- 76 -

addition in order to avoid excessive reflux. After 1.6 hours the mixture was poured into ice cold water and then extracted with ethyl acetate (3X). The combined organic portions were washed with brine, dried over magnesium sulfate, filtered, and concentrated in vacuo. The residue was

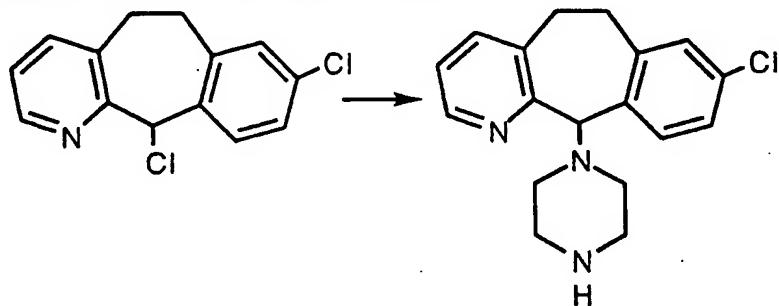
- 5 recrystallized from hot isopropyl ether. The remaining filtrate was purified via flash chromatography (20% ethyl acetate in hexanes) to yield more product which solidified on standing. Both batches were combined to yield 20.41 g of the title compound as a white solid.

B. 8,11-DICHLORO-6,11-DIHYDRO-5H-BENZO[5,6]CYCLO-  
10 HEPTA[1,2-b]PYRIDINE



- To a mixture of 13.3 g (54 mmol) of 8-chloro-6,11-dihydro-11-hydroxy-5H-benzo[5,6]cyclohepta[1,2-b]pyridine in 290 mL of toluene at -15°C and under an atmosphere of nitrogen was added via syringe pump 15 over a period of 1 hour 6.20 mL (85.7 mmol) of thionyl chloride. The extent of reaction was monitored by TLC (50% ethyl acetate in hexanes). When completed the mixture was poured into 300 mL of 1.0 N aqueous sodium hydroxide and extracted with ethyl acetate (5X). The combined organic portions were washed with brine, dried over sodium sulfate, filtered, and 20 concentrated in vacuo. The residue was taken up in ethyl acetate, quickly filtered through basic alumina, and concentrated again to yield a product which was triturated with pentane to yield 10.22 g of the title compound as a tan solid.

C. 8-CHLORO-11-(1-PIPERAZINYL)-6,11-DIHYDRO-5H-  
25 BENZO[5,6]CYCLOHEPTA[1,2-b]PYRIDINE



- To a mixture of 10.0 g (37.9 mmol) of 8,11-dichloro-6,11-dihydro-5H-benzo[5,6]cyclohepta[1,2-b]pyridine and 1.0 mL of triethylamine in 200

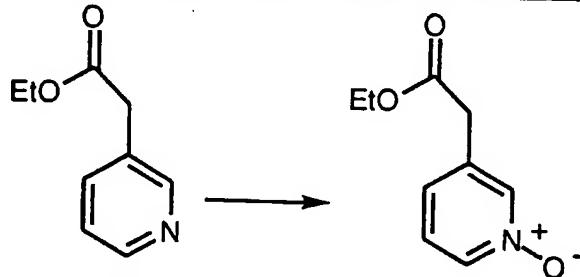
- 77 -

mL of dry tetrahydrofuran at room temperature and under a nitrogen atmosphere was added 33.0 g of piperazine. The mixture was stirred at room temperature for 22.5 hours and then refluxed for 5.5 hours. It was then cooled to room temperature, poured into 250 mL of 5% aqueous sodium hydroxide, and extracted with methylene chloride (3X). The combined organic portions were washed with brine, dried over magnesium sulfate, filtered, and concentrated in vacuo. The residue was purified via flash chromatography (2→5% methanol saturated with ammonia in methylene chloride) to yield the title compound as a glass.

10

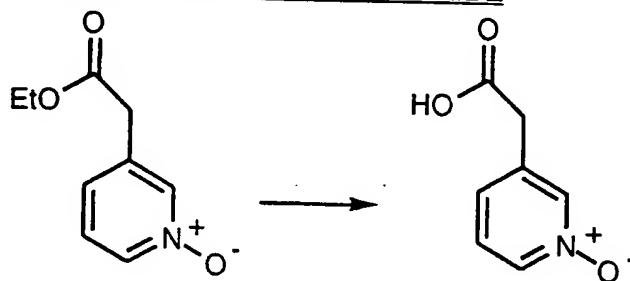
PREPARATIVE EXAMPLE 8

A. ETHYL 3-PYRIDYLACETIC ACID 1-N-OXIDE



15 Ethyl 3-pyridylacetic acid (10grams) (60.6 mmoles) was dissolved in dry dichloromethane (120ml) and the solution was stirred at -18°C for 30 minutes. 3-Chloroperbenzoic acid (31.34 grams) (181.6 mmoles) was added and the mixture was stirred at -18°C for 1 hour and then at 25°C for 87 hours. The reaction mixture was diluted with dichloromethane and washed with saturated aqueous sodium bicarbonate and then water. The dichloromethane was then dried (magnesium sulphate), filtered and evaporated to dryness. The residue was chromatographed on silica gel using 3% (10% concentrated ammonium hydroxide in methanol)-dichloromethane as the eluant to give the title compound (Yield: 8.45 grams, 77%,  $MH^+$  182).

20 25 B. 3-PYRIDYLACETIC ACID 1-N-OXIDE



**THIS PAGE BLANK (USPTO)**

**THIS PAGE BLANK (USPTO)**

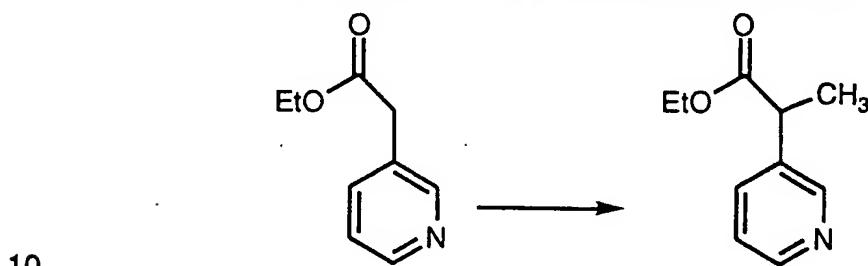
**THIS PAGE BLANK (USPTO)**

- 78 -

- 3-Pyridylacetic acid (0.2747 grams) (1.5 mmoles) was dissolved in ethanol (200 proof) (1.22 ml.) and a 1M solution of lithium hydroxide in water (3.64 ml.) (3.0 mmoles) was added and the mixture was stirred at 25°C for 4 hours. 1N Hydrochloric acid (4.28 ml.) was added and the mixture was pumped down to dryness on a rotary evaporator to give the title compound (Yield: 0.2931 grams, 100%).

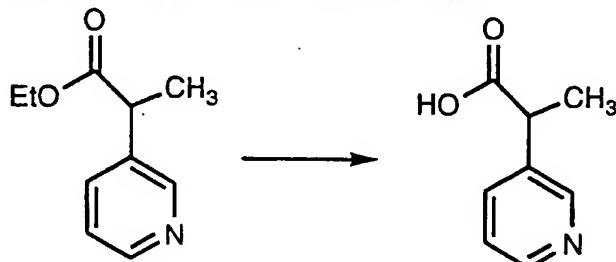
PREPARATIVE EXAMPLE 9

A. ETHYL  $\alpha$ -METHYL-3-PYRIDYLACETIC ACID.



- To ethyl 3-pyridylacetic acid (10.86 grams) (65.7 mmoles) was added a 2.0M solution of lithium diisopropylamide in THF / heptane / ethyl benzene (32.87 ml.) (65.8 mmoles) at -30°C. The semi-solid mixture was agitated and sonicated for 1 hour. The mixture was allowed to remain at 15 25°C for 1 hour, whereupon methyl iodide (4.09 ml.) (65.7 mmoles) was added. After 1 hour at 25°C the mixture was taken up in dichloromethane and washed with saturated aqueous sodium bicarbonate and water. The dichloromethane was dried (magnesium sulphate), filtered and evaporated to dryness. The residue was chromatographed on silica gel 20 using 10% ethyl acetate in hexane as the eluant to give the title compound (Yield: 3.48 grams, 30%, M<sup>H+</sup> 180).

B.  $\alpha$ -METHYL-3-PYRIDYLACETIC ACID.



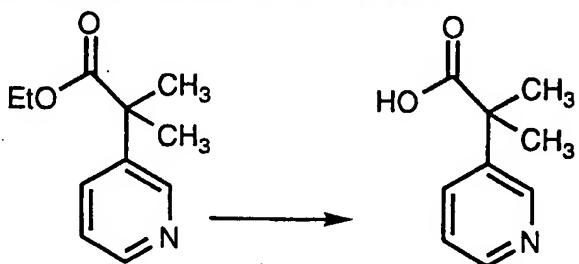
- The title compound from Preparative Example 9A above (2.16 25 grams) (12.05 mmoles) was dissolved in ethanol (10 ml.) and 1.0M lithium hydroxide in water (29.15 ml.) (29.2 mmoles) was added. The mixture was stirred at 25°C for 4 hours, whereupon 1N hydrochloric acid (34.27

- 79 -

ml.) (34.2 mmoles) was added and the solution was evaporated to dryness to give the title compound (Yield 2.33 grams, 100%).

PREPARATIVE EXAMPLE 10

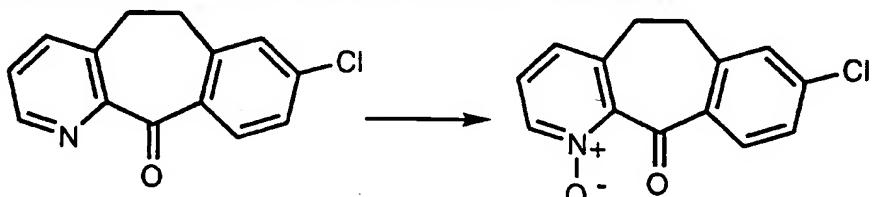
**5       $\alpha,\alpha$ -DIMETHYL-3-PYRIDYLACETIC ACID.**



Ethyl  $\alpha,\alpha$ -dimethyl -3-pyridylacetate (disclosed in EP Application 0 288 279, published October 26, 1988) (2.67 grams, 13.8 mmoles) was dissolved in ethanol (11.1 ml.) and a 1.0M lithium hydroxide in water (33.3 ml.) (33.4 mmoles) was added. The mixture was stirred at 25°C for 4 hours. 1N Hydrochloric acid (38.73 ml.) was added and after 5 minutes the mixture was evaporated to dryness to give the title compound (Yield: 100%).

**15      PREPARATIVE EXAMPLE 11**

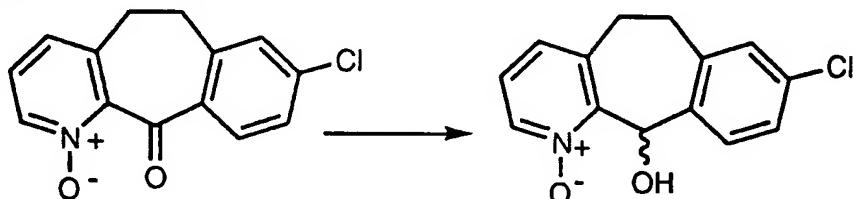
**A. 8-CHLORO-6,11-DIHYDRO-11-(1-PIPERAZINYLYL)-5H-BENZO[5,6]CYCLOHEPTA[1,2-b]PYRIDINE 1-N-OXIDE**



To a mixture of 8-chloro-5,6-dihydro-11H-benzo[5,6]cyclohepta-[1,2-b]pyridin-11-one (5 grams) (20.6 mmoles) in dry dichloromethane (35 ml) was added dropwise 3-chloroperbenzoic acid (4.7 grams) (27.3 mmoles) in dry dichloromethane (75 ml) at 0-25°C over 1 hour. The mixture was diluted with dichloromethane and washed with saturated aqueous sodium bicarbonate and water. The dichloromethane was dried (magnesium sulphate), filtered and evaporated to dryness. The residue was chromatographed on silica gel using 1% (10% saturated ammonium hydroxide in methanol)-dichloromethane as the eluant to give the title compound (Yield: 2.81 grams, 53%,  $\text{MH}^+ 260$ ).

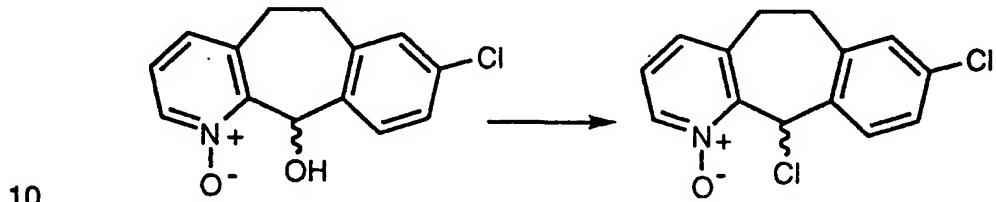
- 80 -

B. 8-CHLORO-6,11-DIHYDRO-5H-BENZO[5,6]CYCLOHEPTA-[1,2-b]PYRIDIN-11-OL 1-N-OXIDE



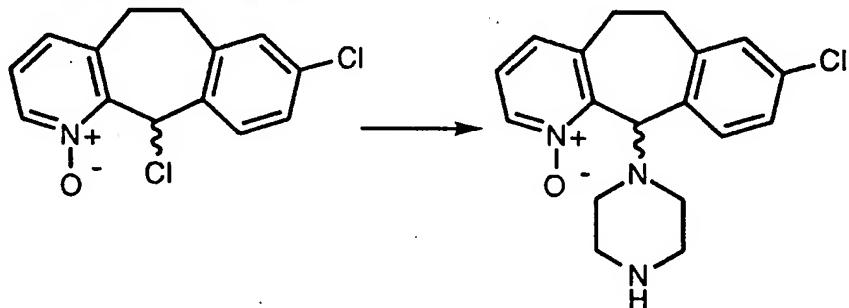
- By using the title compound (8.6 grams) from Preparative Example  
 5 11A and reducing it by the procedure described in Preparative Example  
 7A above the title alcohol was obtained (Yield: 7.03 grams, 81%,  $MH^+$   
 262).

C. 8,11-DICHLORO-6,11-DIHYDRO-5H-BENZO[5,6]CYCLO-  
 HEPTA[1,2-b]PYRIDINE 1-N-OXIDE



- 10 The title compound from Preparative Example 11B (6.2 grams)  
 (23.7 mmoles) was reacted with thionyl chloride as described in  
 Preparative Example 7B to give the title compound.

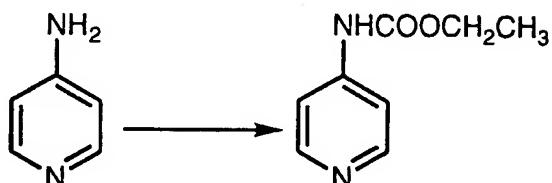
D. 8-CHLORO-6,11-DIHYDRO-11-(1-PIPERAZINYL)-5H-  
 15 BENZO[5,6]CYCLOHEPTA[1,2-b]PYRIDINE 1-N-OXIDE



- 20 The title compound from Preparative Example 11C above was  
 reacted with piperazine (9.9 grams) (115.0 mmoles) as described in  
 Preparative Example 7C to give the title compound (Yield: 6.78 grams,  
 87%,  $MH^+$  330).

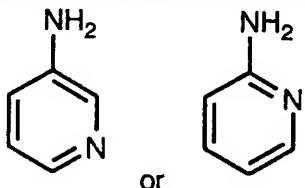
- 81 -

PREPARATIVE EXAMPLE 12  
4-ETHOXYCARBOXYLAMINOPYRIDINE

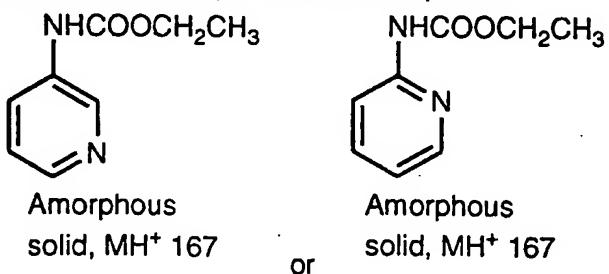


- 4-Aminopyridine (17.34 grams) (184.3) was dissolved in dry  
 5 pyridine (217 ml.) and cooled to 0°C over 30 minutes. Ethyl chloroformate  
 (17.2 ml.) (180.7 mmoles) was added and the solution was stirred at 0°C  
 for 1 hour and then at 25°C for 40 hours. The mixture was diluted with  
 dichloromethane and washed with saturated aqueous sodium  
 bicarbonate and water. The dichloromethane was dried (magnesium  
 10 sulphate), filtered and evaporated to dryness. The residue was  
 chromatographed on silica gel using 2%(10% saturated ammonium  
 hydroxide in methanol)-dichloromethane to give the title compound (Yield:  
 10 grams, 33%, M<sup>+</sup> 166).

By using essentially the same procedure, with the exception that



- 15 was used instead of 4-aminopyridine, the compound

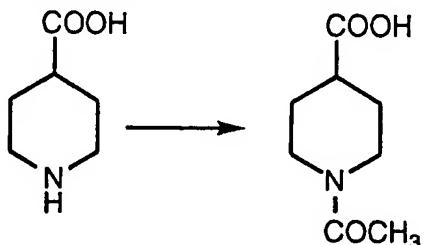


was obtained, respectively.

- 82 -

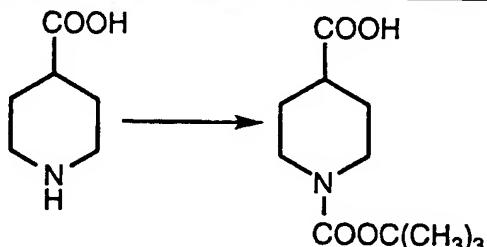
PREPARATIVE EXAMPLE 13

A. N-ACETYLISONIPECOTIC ACID



Isonipecotic acid (10 grams) (77.5 mmoles) and acetic anhydride  
 5 (23.7 grams) (232.5 mmoles) were dissolved in methanol (100 ml.) and  
 the mixture was stirred at 25°C for 24 hours. The mixture was evaporated  
 to dryness and the residue was azeotroped with toluene to give the title  
 compound (Yield: 12.8 grams, 97%, MH<sup>+</sup> 172).

B. 1-N-tert-BUTOXYCARBONYLISONIPECOTIC ACID



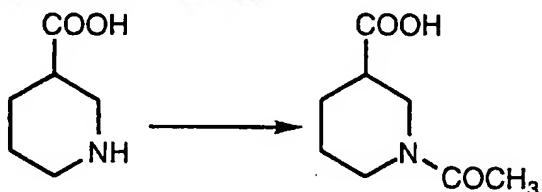
10

Isonipecotic acid (20 grams) (155.0 mmoles) was dissolved in THF-water (1:1) (400 ml) and sodium hydroxide (6.2 grams) (155.0 mmoles) and di-tert-butyl dicarbonate (37.2 grams) (170.5 mmoles) were added.  
 The mixture was stirred at 25°C for 72 hours. The solution was then  
 15 eluted through a bed of washed BioRad 50WX4 (RSO<sub>3</sub>H resin) (150 ml bed) and the resin was eluted with a 1:1 mixture of THF and water. The eluate was evaporated to dryness to give the title compound (Yield: 33.78 grams, 90%).

20

PREPARATIVE EXAMPLE 14

1-N-ACETYLNIPECOTIC ACID

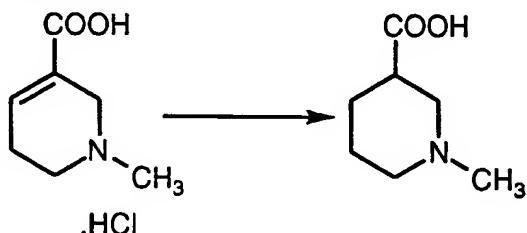


- 83 -

Nipecotic acid (3.87 grams) (30.0 mmoles) was reacted with acetic anhydride (9.17 grams) (90 mmoles) as described in Preparative Example 13A to give the title compound (Yield: 5.0 grams, 97%,  $MH^+$  172).

5

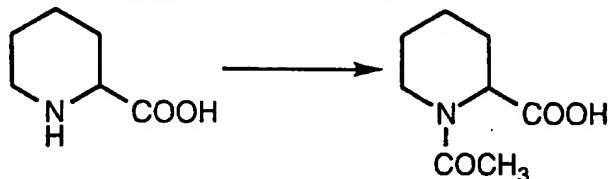
PREPARATIVE EXAMPLE 15  
1-N-METHYLNIPPECOTIC ACID



Arecaidine hydrochloride (4 grams) (22.6 mmoles) was hydrogenated in water (100 ml) using 10% Pd-C at 40 psi at 25°C for 24 hours. The catalyst was filtered off and washed with water. The aqueous solution was shaken with BioRad AG1X8 resin ( $OH^-$  form) (23 ml bed) and after 5 minutes the resin was filtered off and washed with water. The aqueous solution was evaporated to give the title compound (Yield: 2.95 grams, 92%).

15

PREPARATIVE EXAMPLE 16  
1-N-ACETYL D,L-PIPECOLINIC ACID

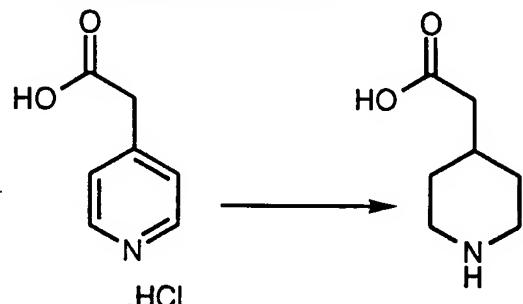


D,L-Pipecolinic acid (10 grams) (77.5 mmoles) and acetic anhydride (23.7 grams) (232.5 mmoles) were reacted as described in Preparative Example 13A above to give the title compound (Yield: 12.94 grams, 98%,  $MH^+$  172).

- 84 -

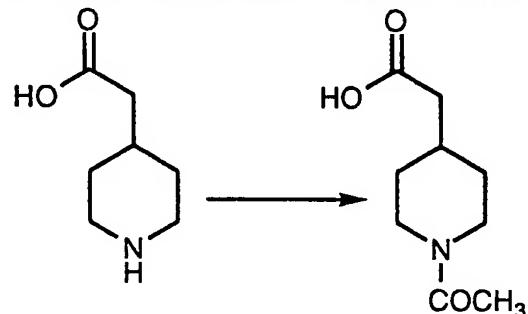
PREPARATIVE EXAMPLE 17

A. PIPERIDINE-4-ACETIC ACID



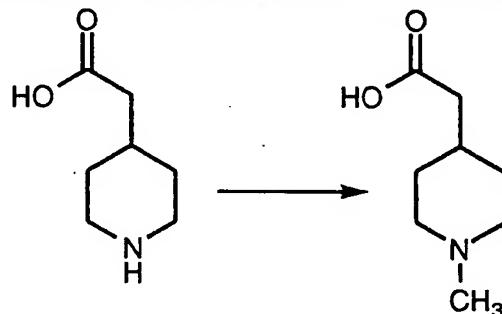
4-Pyridylacetic acid (7 grams) (40.4 mmoles) was hydrogenated as  
5 described in Preparative Example 15 to give the title compound (Yield: 5.2  
grams, 90%, M<sup>H+</sup> 144).

B. 1-N-ACETYL-4-PIPERIDINYLACETIC ACID



4-Piperidinylacetic acid (5 grams) (35.0 mmoles) was reacted with  
10 acetic anhydride (10.7 grams) (105.0 mmoles) as described in  
Preparative Example 13A to give the title compound (Yield: 6.4 grams,  
99%, M<sup>H+</sup> 185).

C. 1-N-METHYL-4-PIPERIDINYLACETIC ACID

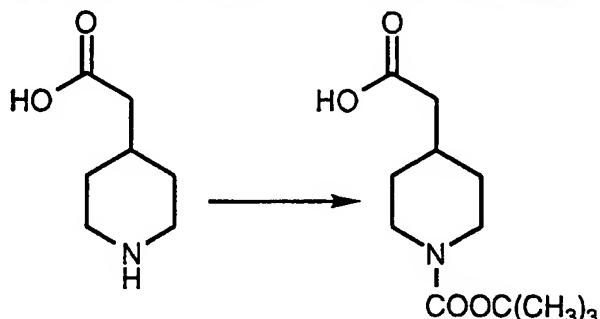


15 4-Piperidinylacetic acid (4 grams) (28.0 mmoles) from Preparative Example 17A was dissolved in water (50 ml) and 37% formalin (2.72 ml) (33.6 mmoles) was added. The mixture was hydrogenated over 10% Pd-C at 55psi at 25°C for 68 hours. The catalyst was filtered off and washed

- 85 -

with water. The combined filtrates were evaporated to dryness to give the title compound (MH<sup>+</sup>158).

D. 1-N-tert-BUTOXYCARBONYLPIPERIDINYL-4-ACETIC ACID

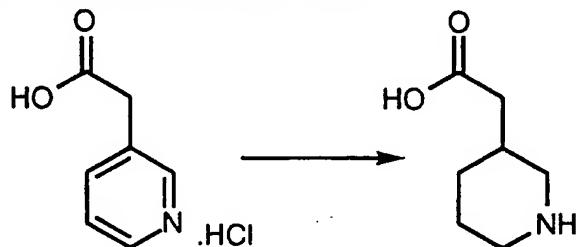


5        4-Piperidinylacetic acid (41.24 grams) (288.4 mmoles) from Preparative Example 17A was reacted with di-tert-butyl dicarbonate (69.14 grams) (317.3 mmoles) and sodium hydroxide (11.52 grams) (288.4 mmoles) as described in Preparative Example 13B above to give the title compound (Yield: 53.0 grams, 76%).

10

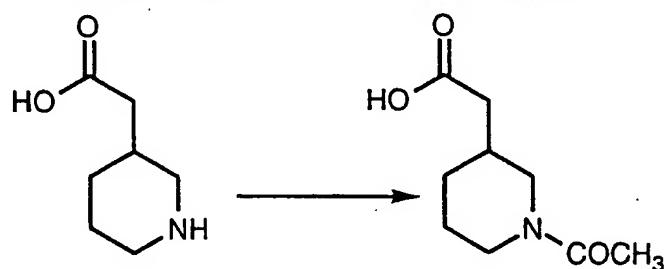
PREPARATIVE EXAMPLE 18

A. 3-PIPERIDINYLACETIC ACID



15        3-Pyridylacetic acid hydrochloride (13 grams) (74.9 mmoles) was hydrogenated as described in Preparative Example 15 to give a mixture of unreacted 3-pyridylacetic acid and the title compound (76:24) (8.63 grams, MH<sup>+</sup> 144).

B. 1-N-ACETYL-3-PIPERIDINYLACETIC ACID

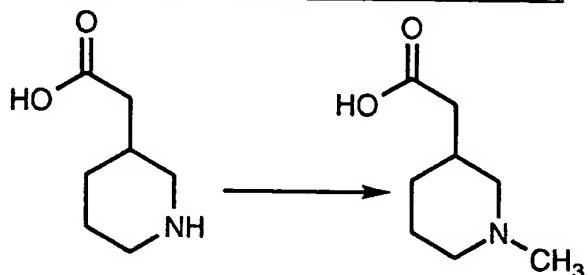


20        The mixture of compounds from Preparative Example 18A (8.56 grams) were reacted with acetic anhydride (8.56 grams) as described in

- 86 -

Preparative Example 13A and the crude mixture of products was taken up in methanol (60 ml) and passed over a bed of BioRad AG50WX4 resin (RSO<sub>3</sub>H) and the latter was eluted with methanol. The eluates were evaporated to dryness to give the title compound (Yield: 1.23 grams, MH<sup>+</sup> 186).

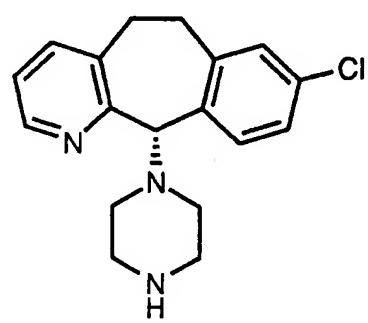
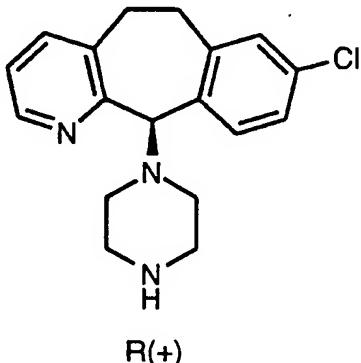
**C. 1-N-METHYL-3-PIPERIDINYLAETIC ACID**



The mixture of compounds from Preparative Example 18A (4 grams) and 37% formalin (2.72 ml.) were hydrogenated as described in  
10 Preparative Example 17C to give the title compound (MH<sup>+</sup> 158).

**PREPARATIVE EXAMPLE 19**  
**PREPARATION OF THE R(+) AND S(-) DIASTEREOISOMERS**

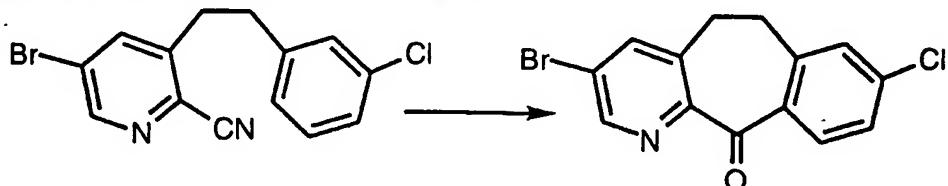
The racemic 8-chloro-11-(1-piperazinyl)-6,11-dihydro-5H-benzo-  
15 [5,6]cyclohepta[1,2-b]pyridine prepared in Preparative Example 7C above  
was resolved by the method described in Preparative Example 15 A-C,  
pages 116-118, of WO 92/00293, published January 9, 1992, to give the  
R(+) and S(-) diastereoisomers:



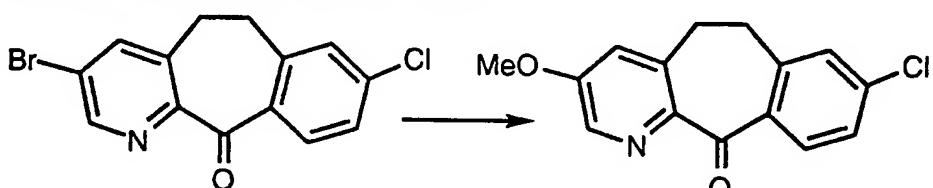
- 87 -

PREPARATIVE EXAMPLE 20

A. 3-BROMO-8-CHLORO-5,6-DIHYDRO-11H-BENZO[5,6]-CYCLOHEPTA[1,2-b]PYRIDIN-11-ONE



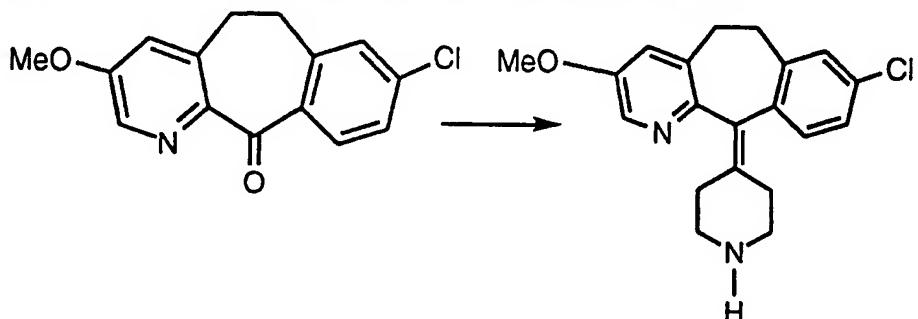
- 5      Cyclize 3-[2-(3-chlorophenyl)ethyl]-4-bromo-2-pyridine carbonitrile (10.7g, 32.8 mmol) in triflic acid (82 mL) at 60°C for 2 hours and then at room temperature for 2 hours. Add 80 mL of 5N HCl carefully, then reflux in an oil bath (120°C) for 30 minutes. Cool the solution and pour into ice and basify with 25% NaOH solution. Extract the product with CH<sub>2</sub>Cl<sub>2</sub> and wash with brine. Dry the organic layer with Na<sub>2</sub>SO<sub>4</sub>, filter and remove the solvent to give crude product (10.4g). Purify the crude product with flash chromatography on silica gel and elute with 15% ethyl acetate-hexane to give the title compound as a white solid (9g, 27.95 mmol, Yield 85.2% M<sup>H+</sup> 322).
- 10     15     B. 8-CHLORO-3-METHOXY-5,6-DIHYDRO-11H-BENZO[5,6]-CYCLOHEPTA[1,2-b]PYRIDIN-11-ONE



- 20     Dissolve the title compound of Preparative Example 20A (2.37g, 7.4 mmol) in dry methanol and add sodium metal (3.37g, 180 mmol). the reaction is stirred overnight at room temperature. Reflux the reaction for 3 hours, cool to room temperature and extract with dichloromethane-water. Dry the CH<sub>2</sub>Cl<sub>2</sub> fraction and chromatograph on silica gel eluting with 50% EtOAc-hexanes to give the title compound as a light yellow solid(1.5g, Yield 72% M<sup>H+</sup> 274).

- 88 -

C. 8-CHLORO-3-METHOXY- 11-(4-PIPERIDYLIDENE)-6,11-DIHYDRO-5H-BENZO[5,6]-CYCLOHEPTA[1,2-b]PYRIDINE

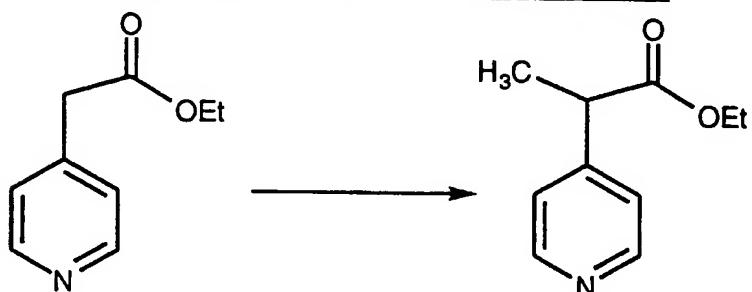


By substituting in Preparative Example 2 step D, 8-chloro-3-

- 5 methoxy-5,6-dihydro-11H-benzo[5,6]-cyclohepta[1,2-b]pyridin-11-one for  
9-fluoro-5,6-dihydro-11H-benzo[5,6]-cyclohepta[1,2-b]pyridin-11-one and  
employing basically the same methods as steps D through H of  
Preparative Example 2, one obtains 8-chloro-3-methoxy- 11-(4-  
piperidylidene)-6,11-dihydro-5H-benzo[5,6]-cyclohepta[1,2-b]pyridine as
- 10 a white solid (  $MH^+$  340).

PREPARATIVE EXAMPLE 25

A. ETHYL  $\alpha$ -METHYL-4-PYRIDYL ACETIC ACID

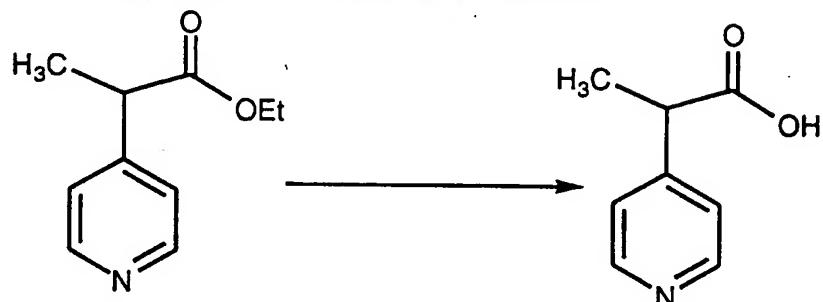


- 15 To dry THF at -78°C was added diisopropylamine(5.05g 48 mmol,  
7mL) and then n-butyl lithium. The reaction mixture was stirred for 0.5 h  
and then ethyl 4-pyridyl acetic acid (7.85g, 46 mmol) was added, and after  
sifting for 0.5 h at that -78°C the reaction temperature was raised to room  
temperature. DMF (20 mL was added and the reaction mixture cooled to
- 20 -78°C again. Methyl iodide(7.07g, 50.2 mmol, 3.15 mL) was added and  
the reaction mixture stirred at that temperature for 1h and then at room  
temperature overnight. All the volatiles were then stripped off and the  
reaction mixture was partitioned between water- $CH_2Cl_2$ . The aqueous  
phase was washed twice with  $CH_2Cl_2$ . The combined  $CH_2Cl_2$  phases
- 25 were dried and evaporated. The crude product was chromatographed on

- 89 -

silica gel eluting with 80% ethyl acetate hexane to give the title compound (7.88g,  $MH^+$  179).

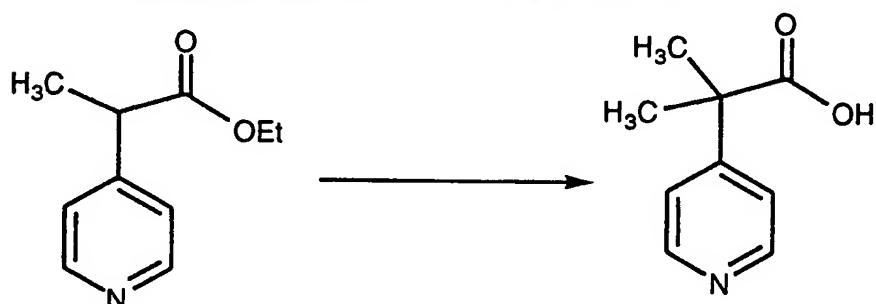
B.  $\alpha$ -METHYL-4-PYRIDYL ACETIC ACID



5 The compound from Preparative Example 25A was hydrolysed in a similar manner to Preparative Example 9B to give the title compound ( $MH^+$  152).

PREPARATIVE EXAMPLE 26

10 A.  $\alpha,\alpha$ -DIMETHYL-4-PYRIDYL ACETIC ACID

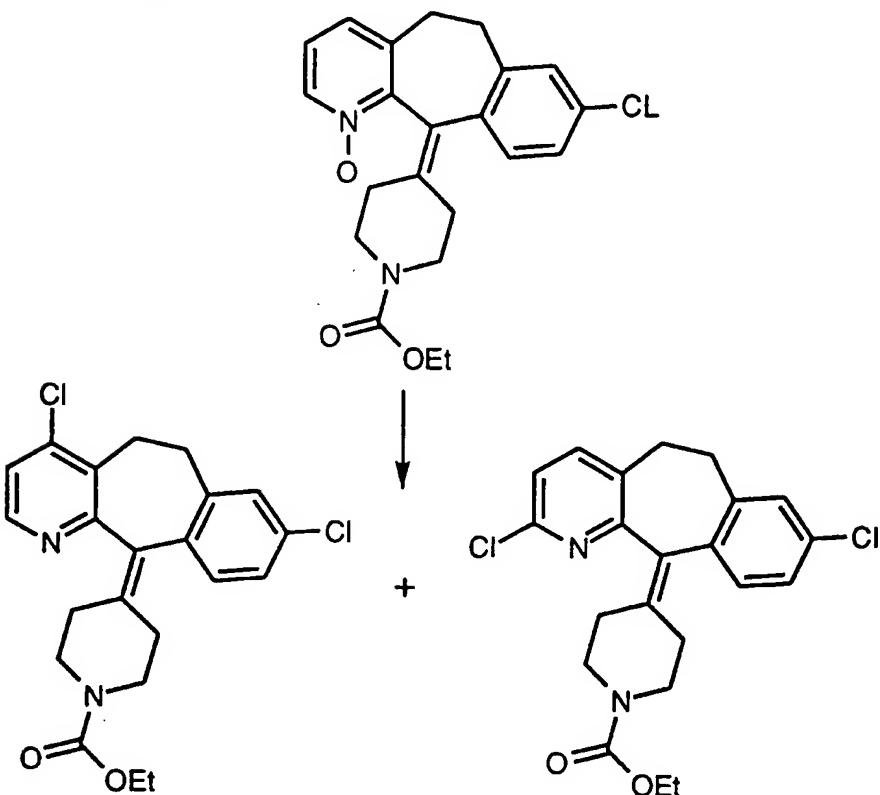


By essentially the same procedure as set forth in Preparative Example 10A-B, but using ethyl  $\alpha$ -methyl-4-pyridylacetic acid (from Preparative Example 25) instead of ethyl pyridyl acetic acid the title compound was obtained as an oil (  $MH^+$  166).

- 90 -

PREPARATIVE EXAMPLE 27

- ETHYL 4-[4,8-DICHLORO-5,6-DIHYDRO-11H-BENZO[5,6]CYCLOHEPTA[1,2-b]PYRIDIN-11-YLIDENE]-1-PIPERIDINECARBOXYLATE and  
ETHYL 4-[2,8-DICHLORO-5,6-DIHYDRO-11H-  
5 BENZO[5,6]CYCLOHEPTA[1,2-b]PYRIDIN-11-YLIDENE]-1-PIPERIDINE-  
CARBOXYLATE



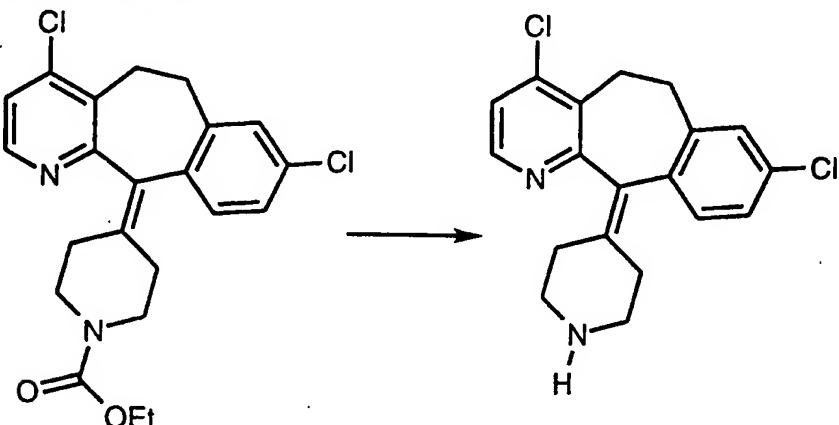
To phosphorous oxychloride (256 mL) stirring at reflux was added dropwise a solution of the title compound (109 grams) from Example 231A

- 10 dissolved in chloroform (850 mL). After stirring the resulting solution for an additional 20 minutes at reflux, the reaction mixture was cooled to room temperature and the chloroform removed *in vacuo*. The resulting solution was cooled in an ice-water bath and to it was slowly added 1*N* aqueous sodium hydroxide (850 mL) followed by 50% aqueous sodium hydroxide until the resulting mixture was slightly basic. Extraction with ethyl acetate, drying of the organic phase over anhydrous magnesium sulfate, concentration *in vacuo*, and purification by flash column chromatography provided the 4,8-dichloro product (27 grams, 23% yield, mp 141.6-145.6 °C) and the 2,8-dichloro product (9 grams, 8% yield, 20 176.5-177.9 °C).

- 91 -

PREPARATIVE EXAMPLE 28

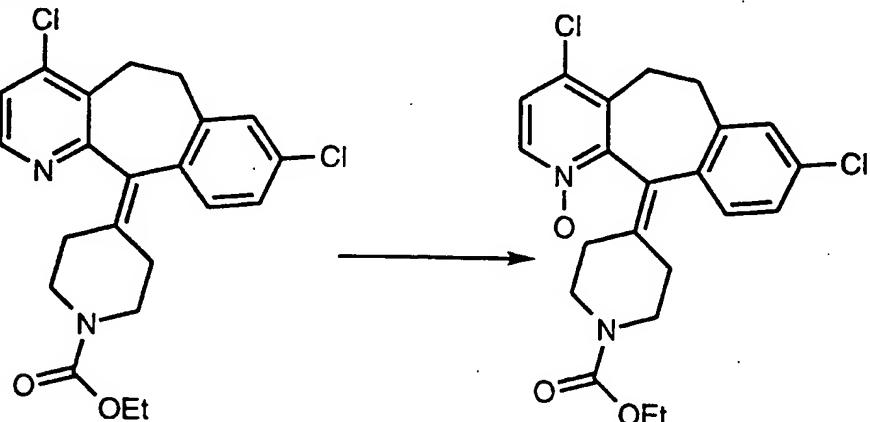
4,8-DICHLORO-11-(4-PIPERIDYLIDENE)-6,11-5H-BENZO[5,6]-CYCLOHEPTA[1,2-b]PYRIDINE



- 5      A solution of the 4,8-dichloro compound from Preparative Example 27 (2.6 grams) dissolved in absolute ethanol (50 mL) and concentrated hydrochloric acid (100 mL) was stirred at reflux for 48 hours. The reaction mixture was cooled in an ice-water bath and was made basic by addition of solid potassium hydroxide. Concentration *in vacuo* afforded a solid  
10     which was diluted with dichloromethane and water. The organic phase was dried over anhydrous magnesium sulfate and concentrated *in vacuo* to provide the title compound (2.0 grams, 93% yield, mp = 181.1-183.2°C).

PREPARATIVE EXAMPLE 29

ETHYL 4-[4,8-DICHLORO-5,6-DIHYDRO-11H-BENZO[5,6]CYCLO-HEPTA[1,2-b]PYRIDIN-11-YLIDENE]-1-PIPERIDINE CARBOXYLATE, N-OXIDE



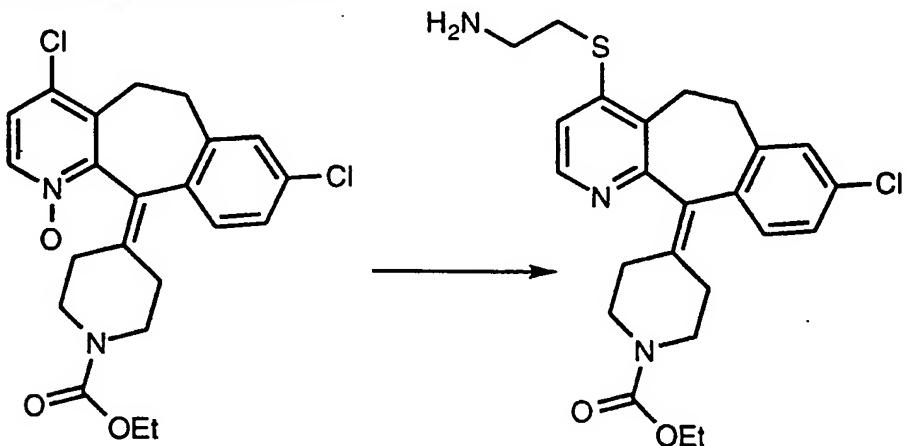
- 20     To a cooled (0°C) solution of the 4,8-dichloro compound from Preparative Example 27 (9.5 grams) dissolved in dichloromethane (300

- 92 -

mL) under N<sub>2</sub> was added dropwise a solution of *meta*-chloroperoxybenzoic acid (6.8 grams) dissolved in ethyl acetate (200 mL). The resulting mixture was washed with 1*N* aqueous sodium hydroxide, dried over anhydrous magnesium sulfate and concentrated *in vacuo*. The residue was purified by flash column chromatography (silica gel) using 100% ethyl acetate then 10% methanol-dichloromethane to afford the title compound (4.9 grams, 50%, M<sup>H+</sup> 433).

PREPARATIVE EXAMPLE 30

10      ETHYL 4-[4-(2-AMINOETHYLTHIO)-8-CHLORO-5,6-DIHYDRO-11H-BENZO[5,6]CYCLOHEPTA[1,2-b]PYRIDIN-11-YLIDENE]-1-PIPERIDINE CARBOXYLATE

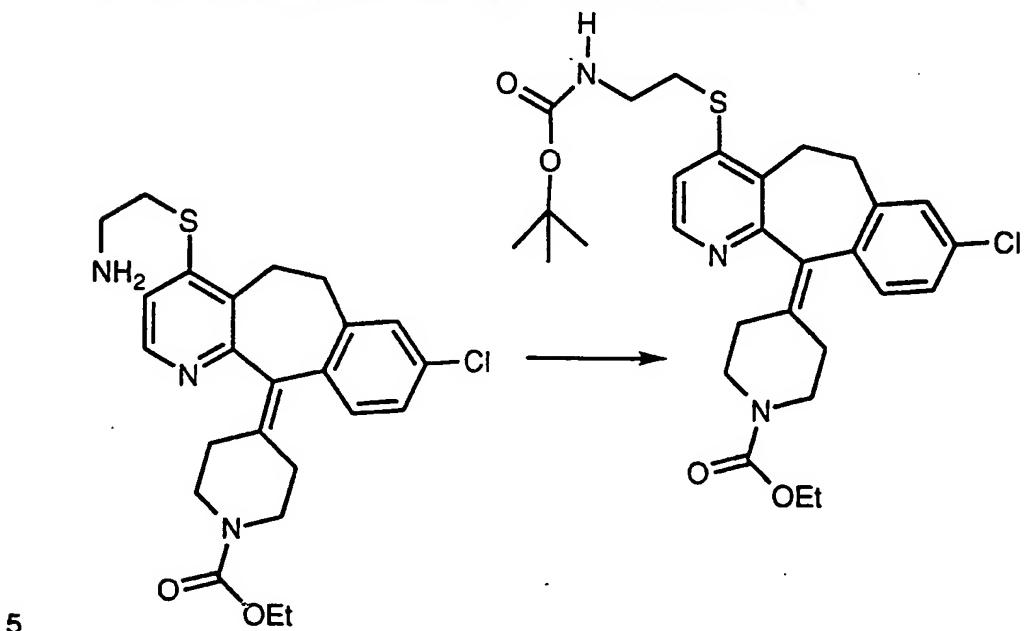


A mixture of the title compound from Preparative Example 29 (0.53 grams), 2-aminoethanethiol hydrochloride (0.74 grams) and absolute ethanol (15 mL) was stirred at reflux for 48 hours. The mixture was cooled to 25°C, diluted with dichloromethane and washed with 1*N* aqueous sodium hydroxide. The organic phase was dried over anhydrous magnesium sulfate and concentrated *in vacuo* to provide the title compound (0.5 grams, 88%, M<sup>H+</sup> 458).

- 93 -

PREPARATIVE EXAMPLE 31

1,1-DIMETHYLETHYL [2-[(8-CHLORO-6,11-DIHYDRO-11-(1-ETHOXYSYCARBONYL)-4-PIPERIDINYLIDENE]-5H-BENZO[5,6]CYCLOHEPTA[1,2-b]PYRIDIN-4-YL]THIO]ETHYL]CARBAMATE

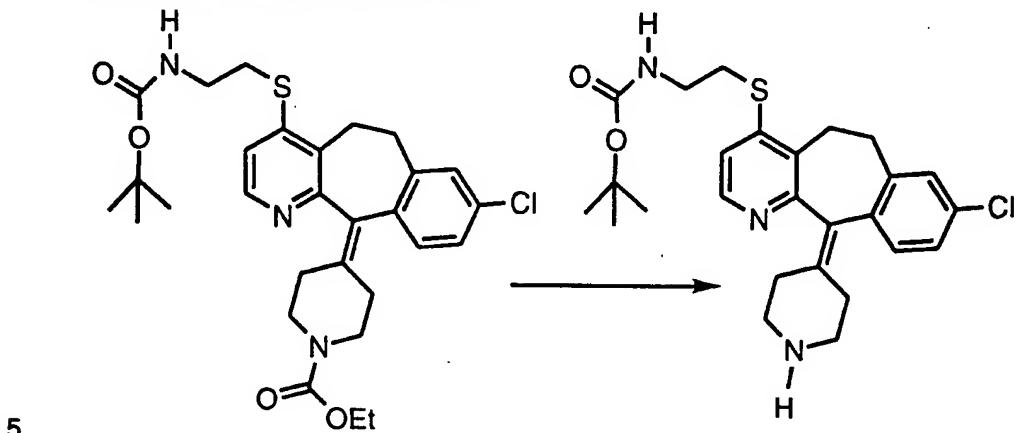


To the title compound from Preparative Example 30 (0.33 grams) dissolved in dichloromethane (60 mL) was added di-*tert*-butyldicarbonate (0.17 grams). The solution was stirred at 25°C under N<sub>2</sub> overnight. An additional 0.1 grams of di-*tert*-butyldicarbonate was added and after 4 hours the reaction mixture was diluted with dichloromethane, washed with 1*N* aqueous sodium hydroxide and concentrated *in vacuo* to afford the title compound (0.5 grams, 100%, M<sup>H+</sup> 558).

- 94 -

PREPARATIVE EXAMPLE 32

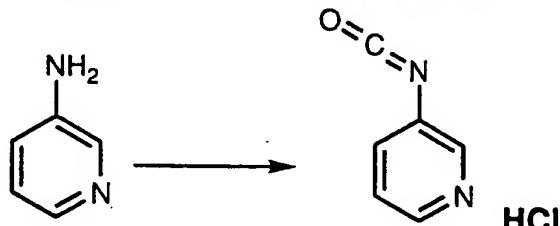
1,1-DIMETHYLETHYL [2-[[8-CHLORO-6,11-DIHYDRO-11-[4-PIPERIDINYLIDENE]-5H-BENZO[5,6]CYCLOHEPTA[1,2-b]PYRIDIN-4-YL]THIO]ETHYL]CARBAMATE



To the title compound from Preparative Example 31 (0.22 grams) dissolved in absolute ethanol (5 mL) was added water (5 mL) and solid potassium hydroxide (0.33 grams). The solution was stirred at reflux for 4 days, then cooled to 25°C, diluted with dichloromethane and washed with water. The organic phase was concentrated *in vacuo* and the residue purified by flash column chromatography (silica gel) using 5% methanol-dichloromethane saturated with ammonium hydroxide to afford the title compound (0.04 grams, 19%, MH<sup>+</sup> 486).

15

PREPARATIVE EXAMPLE 33  
3-PYRIDYLISOCYANATE, HYDROCHLORIDE



A 1.93 solution of phosgene in toluene (20%) (584 mL) was diluted with dry dichloromethane (1 L) and the mixture was stirred at 0°C under nitrogen atmosphere. A solution of 3-aminopyridine (21.1 grams) and dry pyridine (19 mL) dissolved in dry dichloromethane (600 mL) was added dropwise to the stirred solution at 0°C over a period of 5.5 hours. The mixture was stirred at 0-25°C for an additional 48 hours. A stream of nitrogen was passed through the solution to remove most of the phosgene

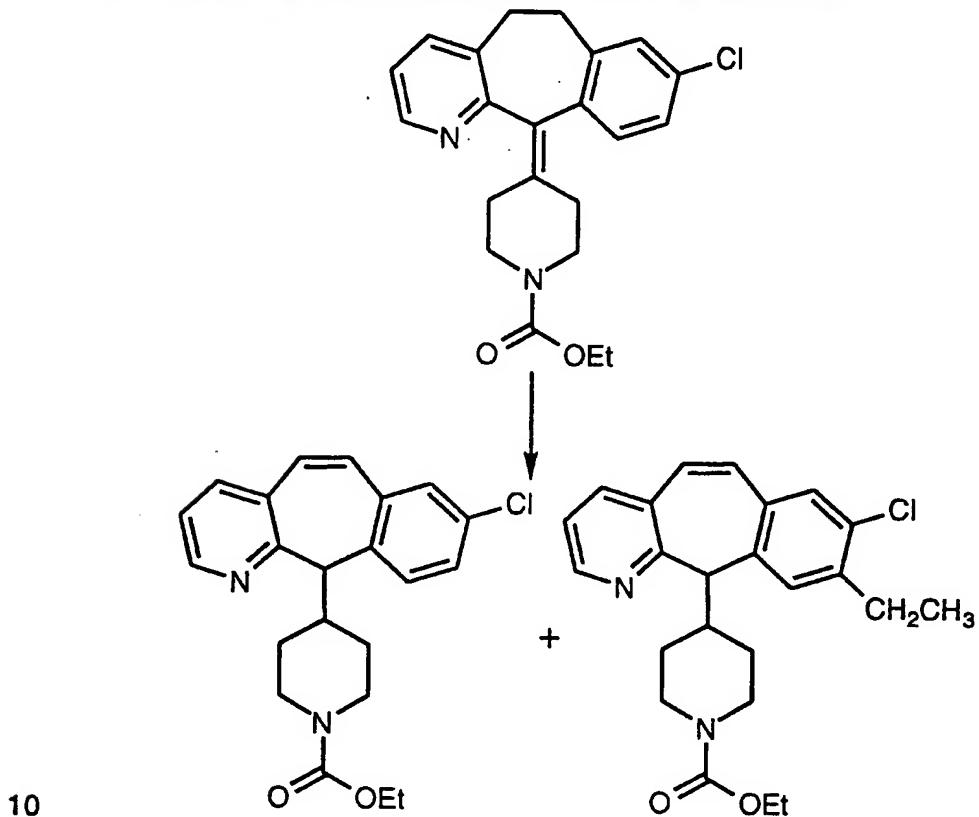
- 95 -

and the solution was then evaporated until almost all of the solvent was removed to give the title compound which was then taken up in dry pyridine (850 mL) to give a stock solution of the title compound.

5

PREPARATIVE EXAMPLE 34

- A. 8-CHLORO-11-(1-ETHOXYSUBSTITUTED-4-PIPERIDINYL)-11H-BENZO[5,6]CYCLOHEPTA(1,2-b)PYRIDINE  
 B. 8-CHLORO-11-(1-ETHOXYSUBSTITUTED-4-PIPERIDINYL)-9-ETHYL-11H-BENZO[5,6]CYCLOHEPTA(1,2-b)PYRIDINE

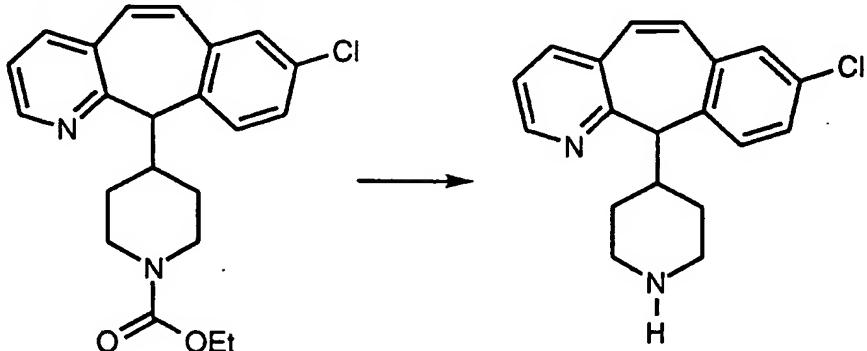


The title compound of Preparative Example 1F above (51.15 grams, 0.1336 mole) was dissolved in trifluoromethanesulfonic acid (170 mL). The dark mixture was heated to reflux for 70h. The solution was cooled to room temperature and was then poured into 800 mL of an ice/water slurry and the resulting mixture stirred. Concentrated ammonium hydroxide solution (175 mL) was added to the mixture in small portions so that the temperature of the mixture was below 20°C. The resulting basic mixture was extracted with dichloromethane. The dichloromethane extract was washed with brine and was then evaporated to give a brown residue. This residue was dissolved in dichloromethane

- 96 -

- (750 mL) and the solution cooled to 0°C. Ethyl chloroformate (14.8 grams, 0.136 mole) was added over 5 minutes and the resulting mixture stirred at 0° C for 15 minutes. Saturated sodium bicarbonate solution (150 mL) was added and the cooling bath was removed. The resulting biphasic  
 5 mixture was stirred rapidly for 3h. The layers were separated and the dichloromethane layer was filtered through silica gel. The filtrate was evaporated to dryness and the residue chromatographed on silica gel using a gradient of hexane-dichloromethane-acetone 16:2.5:1.5 to hexane-dichloromethane-acetone 28:7.5:4.5 as eluent to give title  
 10 compound A (25.02g 49% MH<sup>+</sup> 383) and title compound B (4.85g, 9%, MH<sup>+</sup> 411).

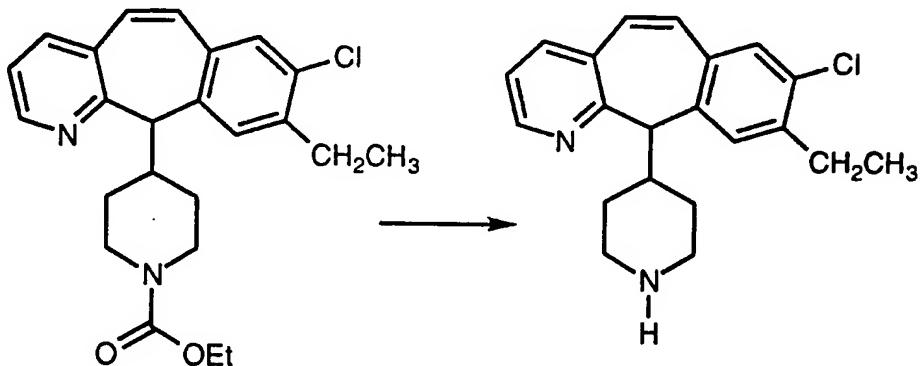
C. 8-CHLORO-11-(4-PIPERIDINYL)-11H-BENZO[5,6]CYCLO-HEPTA(1,2-b)PYRIDINE



- 15 Hydrolyze the title compound of Preparative Example 34A by dissolving in 50% aqueous sulfuric acid (v/v) and heating to 90° to 100°C for 16 h. The cooled acidic mixture was neutralized with 25% sodium hydroxide solution (w/v). The resulting mixture was extracted with ethyl acetate and the ethyl acetate extract was dried with sodium sulfate.  
 20 Filtration and evaporation of the ethyl acetate afforded the title compound(MH<sup>+</sup> 311).

- 97 -

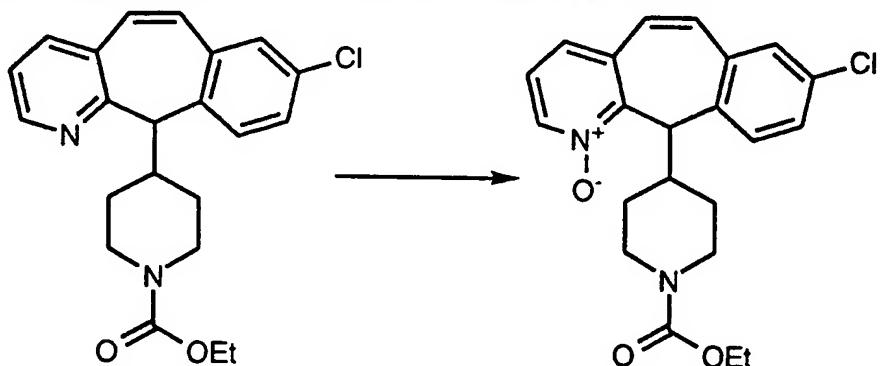
PREPARATIVE EXAMPLE 35  
8-CHLORO-9-ETHYL-11-(4-PIPERIDINYL)-11H-BENZO-  
[5.6]CYCLOHEPTA[1,2-b]PYRIDINE



- 5        Hydrolyze the title compound of Preparative Example 34B following the procedure described in Preparative Example 34C to provide the title compound. 9Decomposes between 205.7-215.4°C, heating 2-3°C per minute.

10      PREPARATIVE EXAMPLE 36

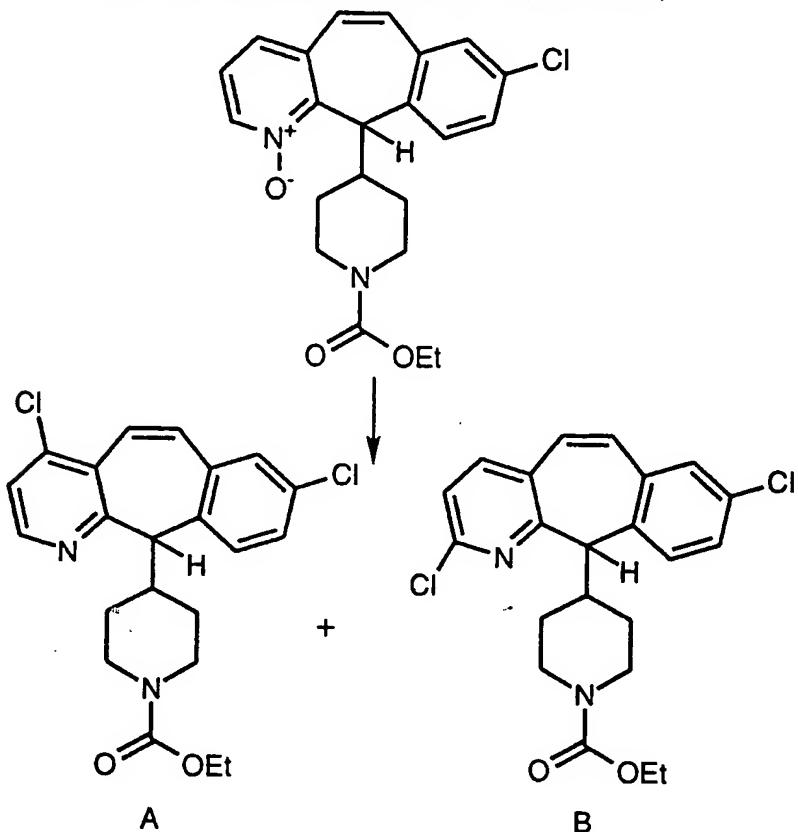
A.      8-CHLORO-11-(1-ETHOXYSYCARBONYL-4-PIPERIDINYL)-  
11H-BENZO[5.6]CYCLOHEPTA[1,2-b]PYRIDINE-1-OXIDE



- 15      The title compound from Preparative Example 34A above (20.23 grams, 52.84 mmoles) was dissolved in dichloromethane (250 mL). 3-Chloroperoxybenzoic acid (1.25 equivalents) was added in one portion and this solution was stirred for 45 minutes. Sodium bisulfite solution (20% w/v) was added and the biphasic mixture rapidly stirred for 30 minutes. The layers were separated and the organic layer was washed with saturated sodium carbonate solution and dried with sodium sulfate. Filtration and evaporation afforded the title compound (21g, 99%, mp 78.6-89.4°C, MH+ 399).

- 98 -

B. 4,8-DICHLORO-11-(1-ETHOXYSUBSTITUTED-4-PIPERIDINYL)-11H-BENZO[5,6]CYCLOHEPTA[1,2-b]PYRIDINE (A) and  
2,8-DICHLORO-11-(1-ETHOXYSUBSTITUTED-4-PIPERIDINYL)-11H-BENZO[5,6]CYCLOHEPTA[1,2-b]PYRIDINE (B)



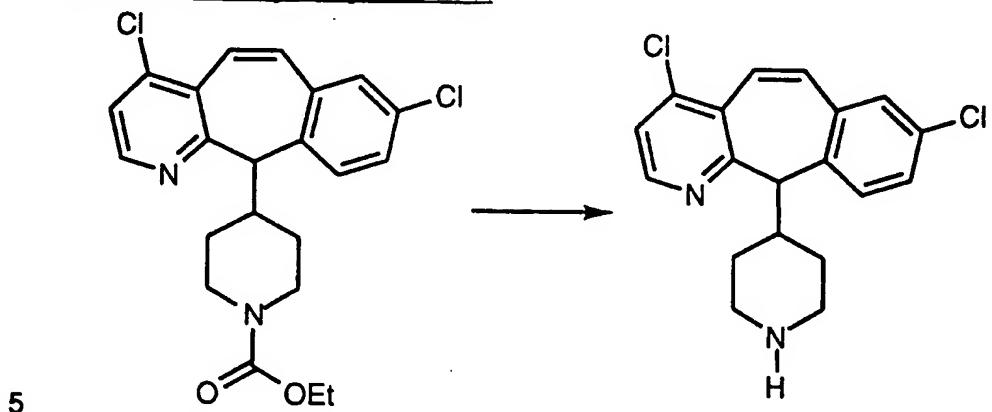
2

The title compound from Preparative Example 36A (21 grams, 53 mmoles) above was dissolved in anhydrous dichloroethane (250 mL) and the solution cooled to 0°C. POCl<sub>3</sub> (49.4 grams, 0.322 mole) was added dropwise to the dichloroethane solution over 15 minutes. After the POCl<sub>3</sub> was added the reaction mixture was warmed to 45 - 50°C and stirred for 18h. Additional POCl<sub>3</sub> (8.2 grams) was added and the mixture heated to reflux for 9h. The mixture was cooled and added to an ice cooled, stirred solution of sodium hydroxide (15% w/v). The resulting biphasic mixture was stirred rapidly for 18h. The layers were separated and the aqueous layer was extracted with dichloromethane. The combined organic layers were washed with water followed by brine and dried (sodium sulfate). The mixture was filtered and evaporated, and the residue chromatographed on silica gel using a gradient of 25% ethyl acetate in hexane to 45% ethyl acetate in hexane as eluent. The title compound A

- 99 -

was obtained as a yellow solid (5.98 g M<sup>+</sup> 417), and title compound B was obtained as a yellow solid (1.0 g, mp 84.4-90.6°C).

C. 4,8-DICHLORO-11-(4-PIPERIDINYL)-11H-BENZO[5,6]-CYCLOHEPTA[1,2-b]PYRIDINE

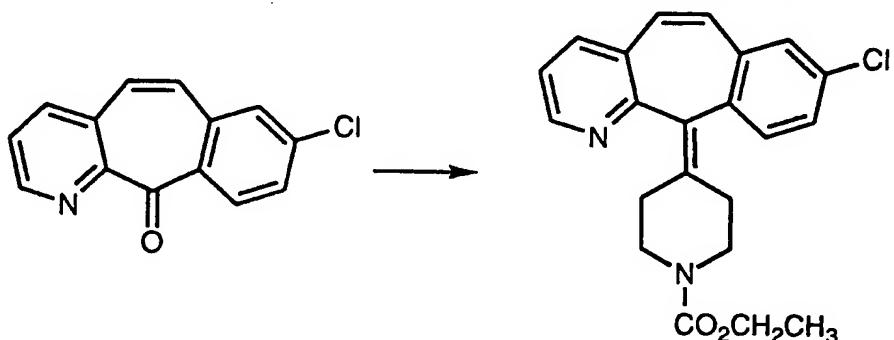


The title compound A from Preparative Example 36B was hydrolyzed under the conditions described in Preparative Example 34C to give the title compound (M<sup>+</sup> 345).

10

PREPARATIVE EXAMPLE 37

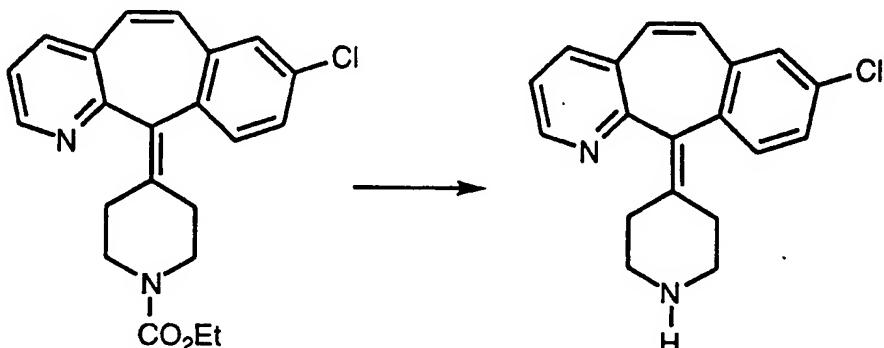
A. 4-(8-CHLORO-11H-BENZO[5,6]CYCLOHEPTA[1,2-b]PYRIDIN-11-YLIDENE)-1-(ETHOXYSARBONYL)-PIPERIDINE



The preparation of the starting material for this reaction was  
 15 described in *The Journal of Organic Chemistry*, 1990, 55, pp. 3341-3350 by Piwinski, J.J.; Wong, J.K.; Chan, T.-M.; Green, M.J.; and Ganguly, A.K. By substituting in Preparative Example 2, 8-chloro-11H-benzo[5,6]-cyclohepta[1,2-b]pyridin-11-one for 9-fluoro-5,6-dihydro-11H-benzo[5,6]-cyclohepta[1,2-b]pyridin-11-one and employing basically the same  
 20 methods as steps D through F of Preparative Example 2, one obtains the title compound (mp 154.7 - 155.5°C).

- 100 -

B. 8-CHLORO-11-(4-PIPERIDINYL)-BENZO[5,6]CYCLO-HEPTA[1,2-b]PYRIDINE

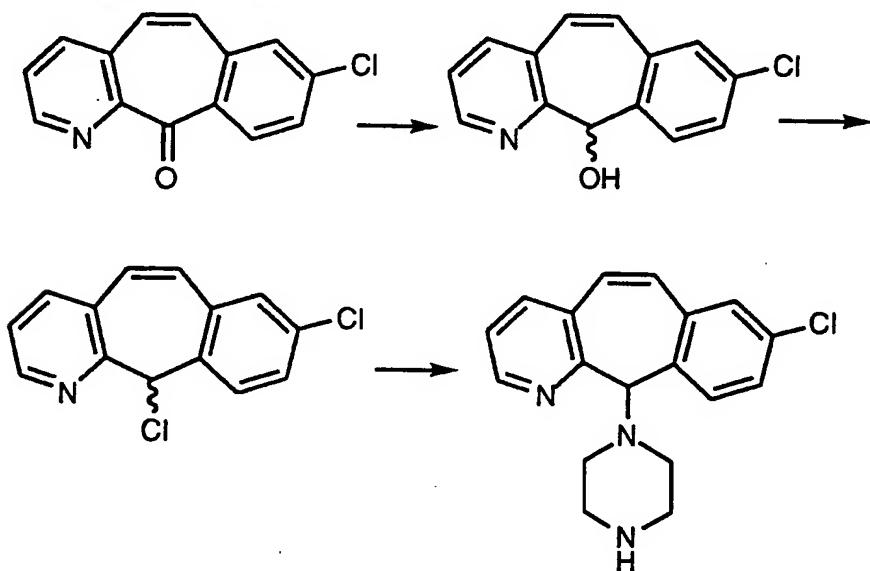


Hydrolyze the title compound of Preparative Example 37A following

- 5 the procedure described in Preparative Example 334C (mp 168.5 - 171.2°C, decomposition).

PREPARATIVE EXAMPLE 38

8-CHLORO-11-(1-PIPERAZINYLYL)-11H-BENZO[5,6]CYCLO-HEPTA[1,2b]PYRIDINE



The preparation of the starting material for this reaction was described in *The Journal of Organic Chemistry*, 1990, 55, pp. 3341-3350 by Piwinski, J.J.; Wong, J.K.; Chan, T.-M.; Green, M.J.; and Ganguly, A.K.

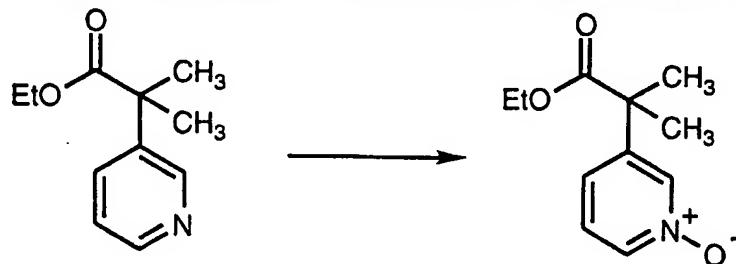
- 15 By substituting in Preparative Example 7A, 8-chloro-11H-benzo[5,6]cyclohepta[1,2-b]pyridin-11-one (11.53g) (47.71mmoles) for 8-chloro-5,6-dihydro-11H-benzo[5,6]cyclohepta[1,2-b]pyridin-11-one and employing

- 101 -

basically the same methods as steps A through C of Preparative Example 7, one obtains 11.53g (36%) of the title compound ( $MH^+$  312).

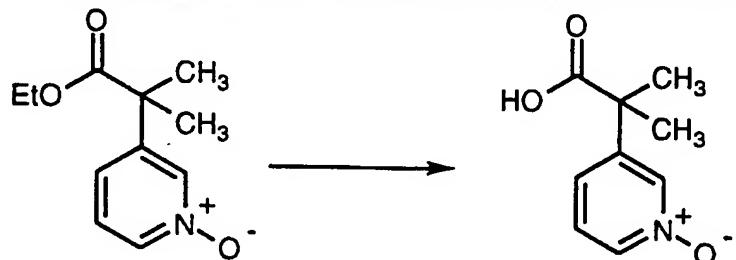
PREPARATIVE EXAMPLE 39

5      A. ETHYL  $\alpha,\alpha$ -DIMETHYL-3-PYRIDYLACETIC ACID N-OXIDE



By substituting in Preparative Example 8A, ethyl  $\alpha,\alpha$ -dimethyl-3-pyridylacetic acid (4.0g, 20.7mmoles) for ethyl 3-pyridylacetic acid and using the same method as described in Preparative Example 8A, one 10 obtains the title compound (3.2g, 74%,  $MH^+$  210).

B.  $\alpha,\alpha$ -DIMETHYL-3-PYRIDYLACETIC ACID N-OXIDE

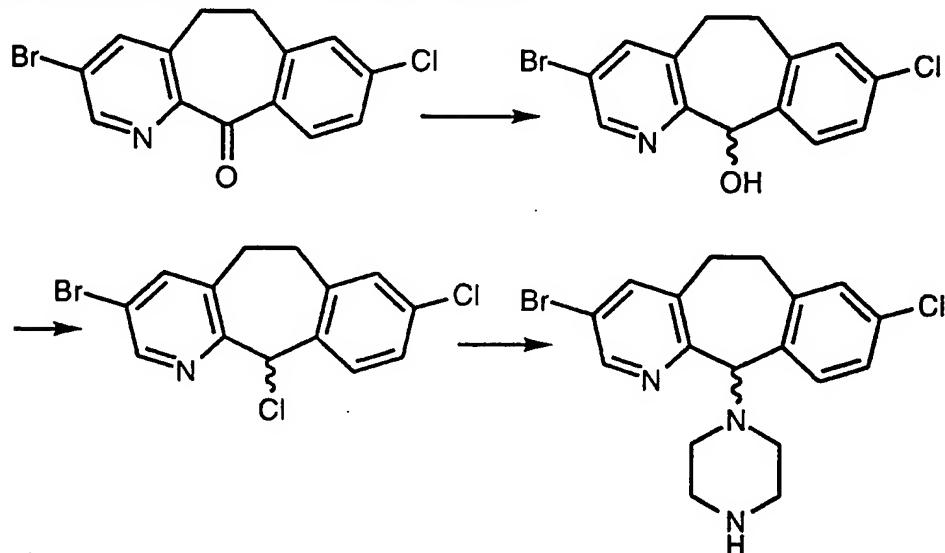


By substituting in Preparative Example 8B, ethyl  $\alpha,\alpha$ -dimethyl-3-pyridylacetic acid N-oxide (0.142g, 0.68mmoles) (Preparative Example 15 39A) for ethyl 3-pyridylacetic acid N-oxide and using the same method as described in Preparative Example 8B, one obtains the title compound.

- 102 -

PREPARATIVE EXAMPLE 40

4-BROMO-8-CHLORO-11-(1-PIPERAZINYLM)-6,11-DIHYDRO-5H-BENZO[5,6]CYCLOHEPTA[1,2-b]PYRIDINE

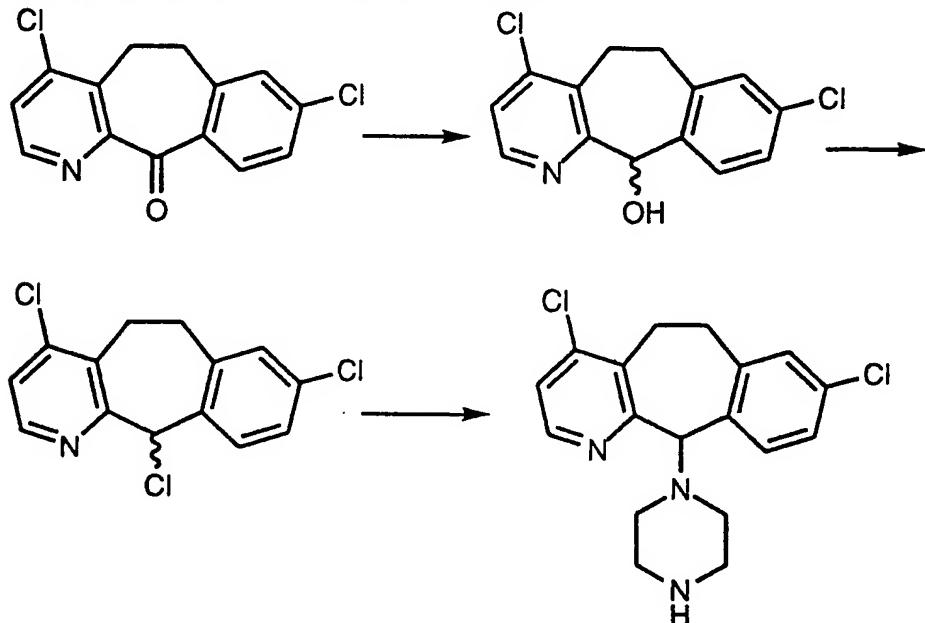


- 5 By substituting in Preparative Example 7A, 4-bromo-8-chloro-11-(1-piperazinyl)-5,6-dihydro-11H-benzo[5,6]cyclohepta[1,2-b]pyridin-11-one (1.5g, 4.65mmoles) (Preparative Example 20A) for 8-chloro-5,6-dihydro-11H-benzo[5,6]cyclohepta[1,2-b]pyridin-11-one and using the same methods as described in steps A through C of Preparative Example 7, one  
10 obtains the title compound (1.31g, 72%,  $MH^+$  392).

- 103 -

PREPARATIVE EXAMPLE 41

4,8-DICHLORO-11-(1-PIPERAZINYL)-6,11-DIHYDRO-5H-BENZO[5,6]CYCLOHEPTA[1,2-b]PYRIDINE

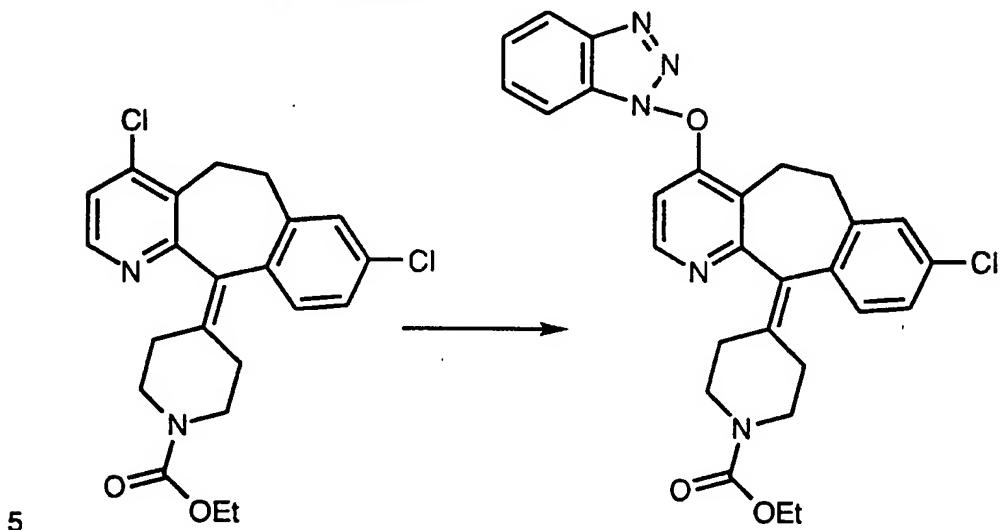


- 5 By substituting in Preparative Example 7A 4,8-Dichloro-5,6-dihydro-11H-benzo[5,6]cyclohepta[1,2-b]pyridin-11-one (6.64g, 28.37mmoles) (Preparative Example 5B) for 8-chloro-5,6-dihydro-11H-benzo[5,6] cyclohepta [1,2-b]pyridin-11-one and using the same methods as described in steps A through C of Preparative Example 7, one obtains  
10 the title compound (2.59g, 26%,  $MH^+$  348).

- 104 -

PREPARATIVE EXAMPLE 42

ETHYL 4-[4-[(1H-BENZOTRIAZOL-1-YL)OXY]-8-CHLORO-5,6-DIHYDRO-11H-BENZO[5,6]CYCLOHEPTA[1,2-b]PYRIDIN-11-YLIDENE]-1-PIPERIDINE CARBOXYLATE

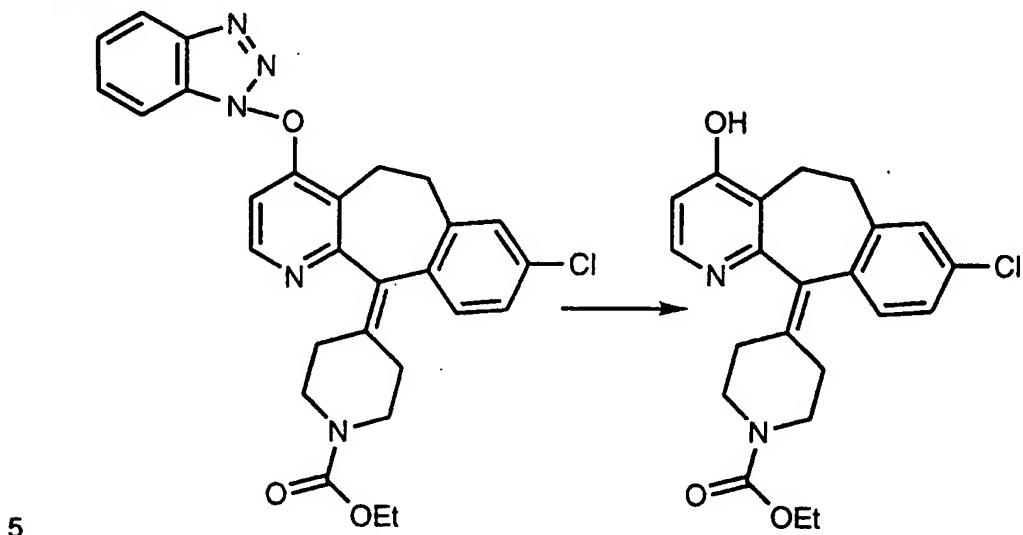


To a solution of the 4,8-dichloro compound from Preparative Example 27 (1.5 grams) in dry dimethylformamide (20 mL) was added 1-hydroxybenzotriazole (1.5 grams). After stirring for 14 days at 25°C, sodium hydride (0.84 grams, 60% in mineral oil) was added and after an additional 24 hours, the mixture was poured into water. Filtration provided the title compound (Yield: 1.7 grams, 89%, mp = 181.5 - 183.9 °C, MH<sup>+</sup> 516).

- 105 -

PREPARATIVE EXAMPLE 43

ETHYL 4-[4-HYDROXY-8-CHLORO-5,6-DIHYDRO-11H-  
BENZO[5,6]CYCLOHEPTA[1,2-b]PYRIDIN-11-YLIDENE]-1-PIPERIDINE  
CARBOXYLATE

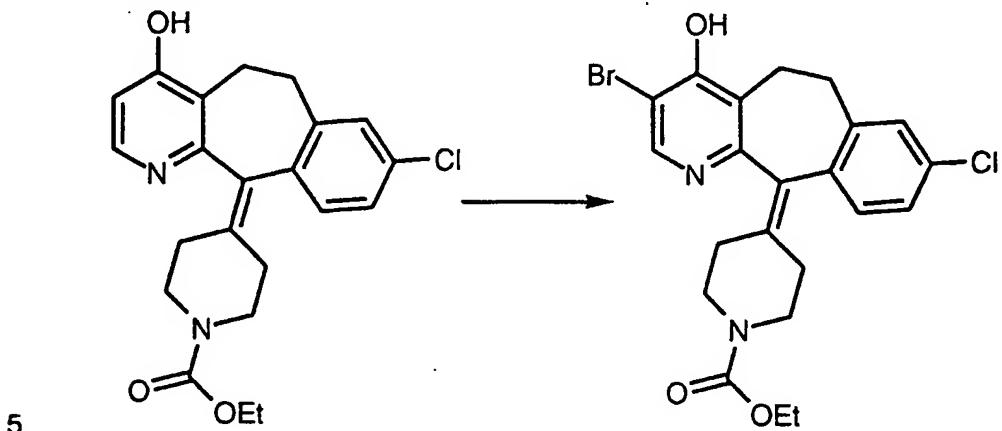


To a solution of the title compound from Preparative Example 42 (0.15 grams) and glacial acetic acid (5 mL) was added zinc dust (0.2 grams). After stirring at 25°C for 1 hour, the mixture was filtered through celite and the filtrate concentrated *in vacuo*. The residue was diluted with 10 ethyl acetate, washed with saturated aqueous sodium bicarbonate and brine. The organic layer was separated, dried over magnesium sulfate and concentrated *in vacuo* to give the title compound (Yield: 0.11 grams, 95%, MH<sup>+</sup> 399).

- 106 -

PREPARATIVE EXAMPLE 44

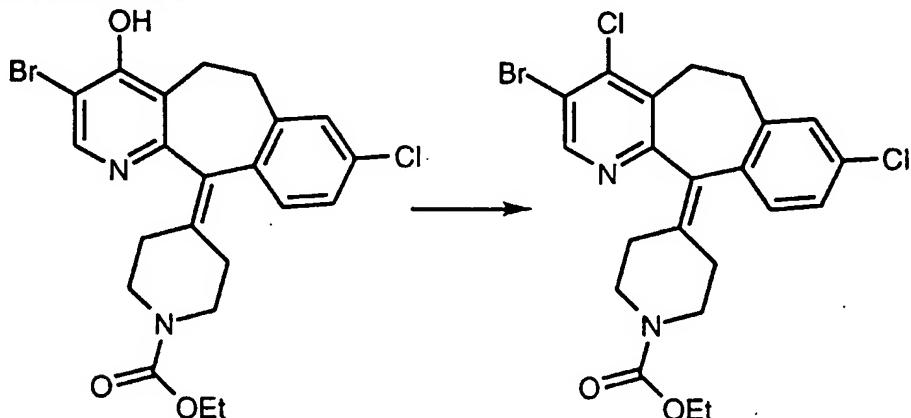
ETHYL 4-[3-BROMO-4-HYDROXY-8-CHLORO-5,6-DIHYDRO-11H-BENZO[5,6]CYCLOHEPTA[1,2-b]PYRIDIN-11-YLIDENE]-1-PIPERIDINE CARBOXYLATE



To a solution of the title compound from Preparative Example 43 (1.3 grams) and glacial acetic acid (5 mL) was added a 0.7 M bromine-acetic acid solution (4 mL) at 25°C under N<sub>2</sub>. The solution was poured into 200 mL of water and the resulting solid was filtered, then washed with water. The solid was dried under vacuum overnight to provide the title compound (Yield: 1.2 grams, 81%, MH<sup>+</sup> 477).

PREPARATIVE EXAMPLE 45

ETHYL 4-[3-BROMO-4,8-DICHLORO-5,6-DIHYDRO-11H-BENZO[5,6]CYCLOHEPTA[1,2-b]PYRIDIN-11-YLIDENE]-1-PIPERIDINE CARBOXYLATE



A mixture of the title compound from Preparative Example 44 (5.1 grams), phosphorous oxychloride (20 mL) and chloroform (40 mL) was stirred at reflux over night. The reaction mixture was made basic by the

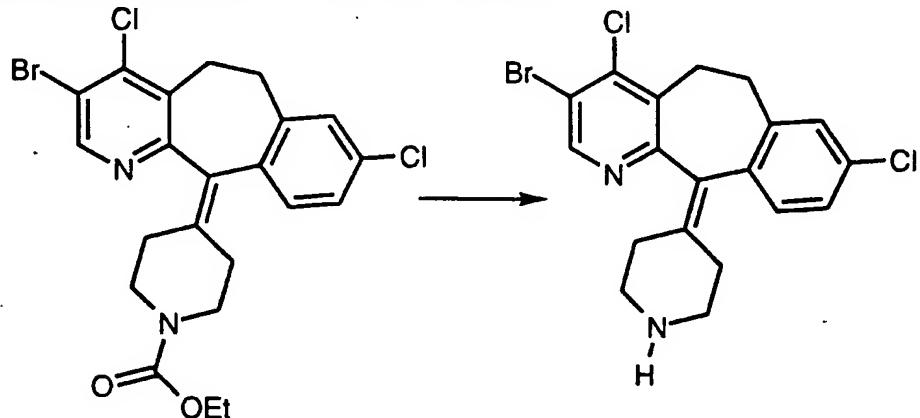
- 107 -

slow addition of 1*N* aqueous sodium hydroxide, and the resultant mixture was diluted with dichloromethane. The mixture was shaken well and after separation of the phases, the organic phase was washed with 1 *N* aqueous sodium hydroxide. The organic phase was dried over  
 5 anhydrous magnesium sulfate, filtered and concentrated *in vacuo* to provide a solid which was mixed with methanol and filtered. Concentration of the filtrate provided the title compound as a solid (Yield: 5.7 grams,  $MH^+$  497).

10

PREPARATIVE EXAMPLE 46

3-BROMO-4,8-DICHLORO-11-(4-PIPERIDYLIDENE)-6,11-5H-BENZO[5,6]CYCLOHEPTA[1,2-b]PYRIDINE

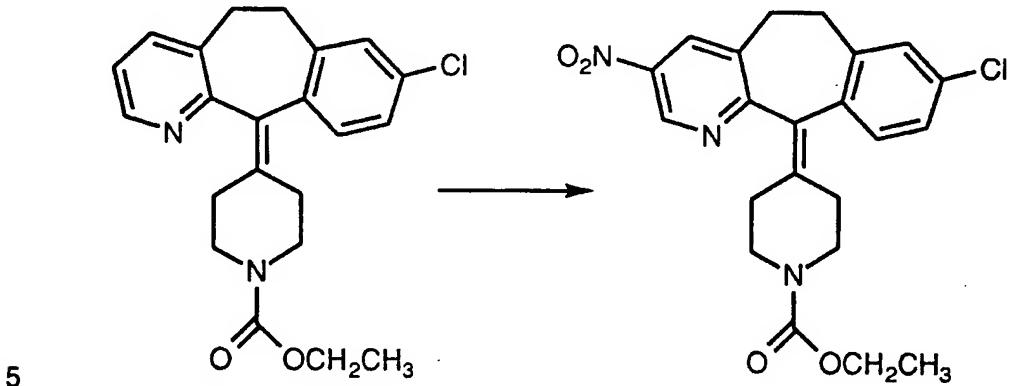


A solution of the title compound from Preparative Example  
 15 45 (5.7 grams) dissolved in absolute ethanol (100 mL) and concentrated hydrochloric acid (200 mL) was stirred at reflux for 24 hours. The reaction mixture was cooled in an ice-water bath and was made basic by the addition of solid potassium hydroxide. Extraction with dichloromethane and concentration of the organic phase *in vacuo* afforded the title  
 20 compound as a solid (1.7 grams, 35% yield,  $MH^+$  425).

- 108 -

PREPARATIVE EXAMPLE 47

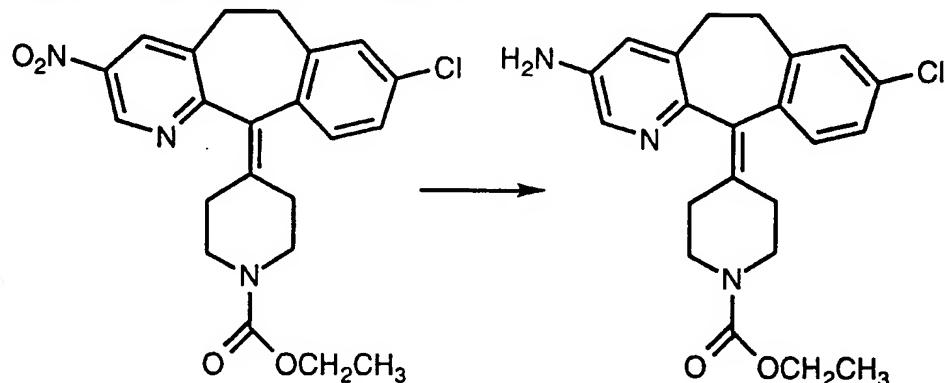
A. 4-(8-CHLORO-3-NITRO-5,6-DIHYDRO-11H-BENZO[5,6]-CYCLOHEPTA[1,2-b]PYRIDIN-11-YLIDENE)-1-PIPERIDINE-1-CARBOXYLIC ACID ETHYL ESTER



- Tetrabutyl ammonium nitrate(4.98g, 16.3 mmol) was dissolved in dichloromethane(20 mL) and trifluoroacetic anhydride(3.12g, 14.9 mmol, 2.1 mL) was then added. The solution was cooled to 0°C and then added (by cannulation) to a solution of 4-(8-chloro-5,6-dihydro-11H-benzo[5,6]-cyclohepta[1,2-b]pyridin-11-ylidene)-1-piperidine-1-carboxylic acid ethyl ester (5.69g, 14.9 mmol) in methylene chloride (35 mL) also cooled to 0°C. The reaction mixture was stirred at 0°C for 3h and then allowed to go to room temperature (25°C) overnight. The reaction mixture was then extracted with saturated sodium bicarbonate (60 mL) dried over magnesium sulfate and concentrated to give a semi-solid material that was chromatographed on silica gel eluting first with 10% and then 20% ethyl acetate -hexane. Removal of the organic solvents gave the title compound in 44% yield as a light yellow solid. MP = 90.4-91.0°C, MH<sup>+</sup> 428.

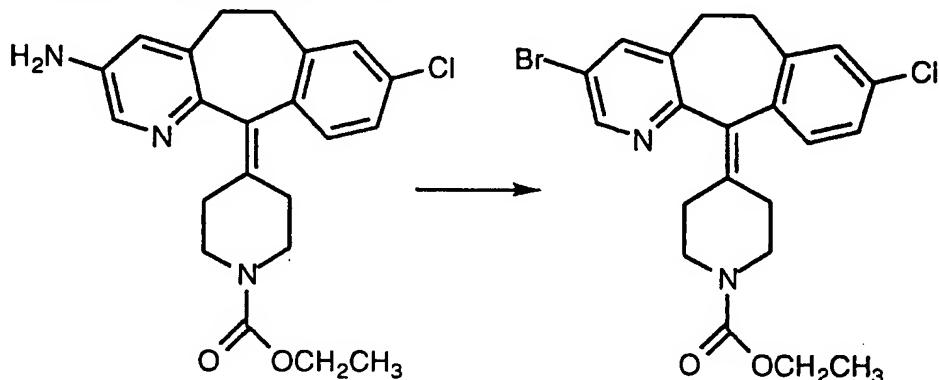
- 109 -

B. 4-(8-CHLORO-3-AMINO-5,6-DIHYDRO-11H-BENZO[5,6]-CYCLOHEPTA[1,2-b]PYRIDIN-11-YLIDENE)-1-PIPERIDINE-1-CARBOXYLIC ACID ETHYL ESTER



5 The title compound from Preparative Example 47A (5.99g, 14 mmol) was dissolved in 85% aqueous ethanol. To this solution was added iron filings (7.01g, 125.57 mmol) and calcium chloride (0.69g, 6.29 mmol) and the reaction mixture was refluxed for 16h. The reaction mixture was filtered through a bed of celite while hot and the celite was washed with 10 hot ethanol (700 mL). The ethanol solution was then decolorized with activated charcoal (2.4g) and then filtered through celite. Ethanol was then rotary evaporated to give the title compound in 100% yield as an off-white solid. MP= 102.4-103.1°C, MH + 398.

C. 4-(8-CHLORO-3-BROMO-5,6-DIHYDRO-11H-BENZO[5,6]-CYCLOHEPTA[1,2-b]PYRIDIN-11-YLIDENE)-1-PIPERIDINE-1-CARBOXYLIC ACID ETHYL ESTER



15 The title compound from Preparative Example 47B (3.00g, 7.60 mmol) was dissolved in hydrobromic acid (48%, 30 mL). The reaction mixture was cooled to -5°C (ice-ethylene glycol bath) and bromine(2 mL) was added dropwise. The reaction mixture was stirred at -5°C for 15 minutes. Sodium nitrite (1.57g, 22.8 mmol) dissolved in water (15 mL)

- 110 -

was slowly added to the reaction mixture. The reaction mixture was then stirred for 45 minutes and then quenched with 40% NaOH to pH ~10. The aqueous phase was then extracted with ethyl acetate(3x100mL).

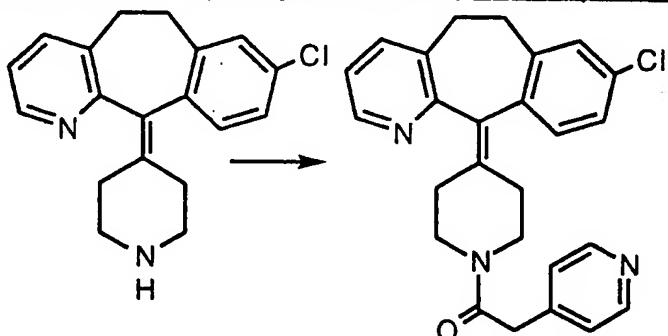
Combined ethyl acetate fractions were dried over sodium sulfate and then

- 5 concentrated to give the title compound in 83% yield as a light brown solid. Mp = 146-148°C, MH<sup>+</sup> 463.

EXAMPLE 1

1-(4-PYRIDYLACETYL)-4-(8-CHLORO-5,6-DIHYDRO-11H-

- 10 BENZO[5,6]CYCLOHEPTA[1,2-b]PYRIDIN-11-YLIDENE)PIPERIDINE



To a mixture of 528 mg (1.7 mmol) of 4-(8-chloro-5,6-dihydro-11H-benzo[5,6]cyclohepta[1,2-b]pyridin-11-ylidene)piperidine (product from Preparative Example 1, Step G), 274 mg (1.7 mmol) of 4-pyridylacetic acid

- 15 hydrochloride, and 242 mg (1.8 mmol) of 1-hydroxybenzotriazole hydrate in 5 mL of dry methylene chloride at -15 °C and under a nitrogen atmosphere was added dropwise 0.17 mL (1.5 mmol) of triethylamine followed by a solution of 363 mg (1.9 mmol) of 1-(3-dimethylaminopropyl)-3-ethylcarbodiimide hydrochloride (DEC) in 5 mL of dry methylene

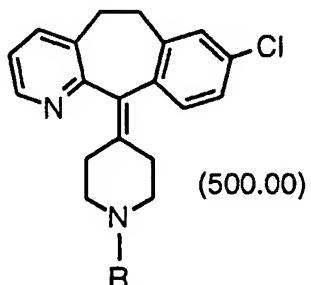
- 20 chloride. The reaction mixture was slowly allowed to warm to room temperature. After 4 hours the mixture was poured into water and extracted several times with methylene chloride. The combined organic portions were dried over MgSO<sub>4</sub>, filtered, and concentrated *in vacuo* to give a product which was purified via flash chromatography (3% methanol

- 25 saturated with ammonia in methylene chloride) 155 mg of 1-(4-pyridylacetyl)-4-(8-chloro-5,6-dihydro-11H-benzo[5,6]cyclohepta[1,2-b]pyridin-11-ylidene)piperidine as a solid: mp 152 - 155 °C.

- By essentially the same procedure as set forth in Example 1, but using the carboxylic acids set forth in column 1, of Table 2 below, in place of 4-pyridylacetic acid, one can obtain the compounds listed in column 2

- 111 -

of Table 2. The compounds listed in Table 2 refer to compounds of Formula 500.00:



wherein R is the substituent in Column 2.

5

TABLE 2

EXAMPLE	COLUMN 1	COLUMN 2	COMPOUND
2			glass
3			white powder
4			white solid
5			white crystals mp 200°C
6			mp 122 - 125°C
7			----

- 112 -

TABLE 2 - continued

EXAMPLE	COLUMN 1	COLUMN 2	COMPOUND
8			off white powder
9			glass
10			white solid
11			white solid
12			glass
13			white solid
14			glass
15			mp 176 - 178°C
16			glass
17			mp 200 - 204°C

- 113 -

TABLE 2 - continued

EXAMPLE	COLUMN 1	COLUMN 2	COMPOUND
18			glass
19			glass
20			yellow solid
21			off white solid
22			white solid mp 228°C (dec)
23			white solid mp 205-207°C
24			white powder
25			white powder
26			glass
27			glass

- 114 -

TABLE 2 continued

EXAMPLE	COLUMN 1	COLUMN 2	COMPOUND
28			glass
29			glass
30			mp 211 - 215°C
31			yellow solid
32			white solid
33			white solid
34			glass
35			solid mp 190 - 193°C
36			solid

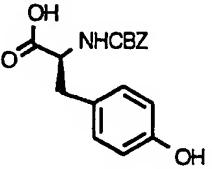
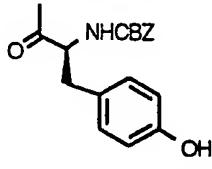
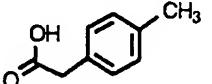
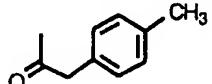
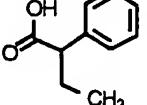
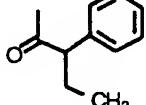
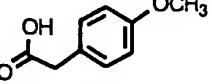
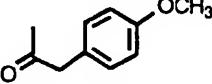
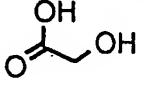
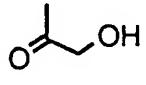
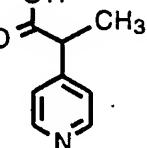
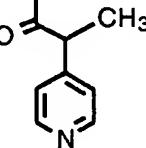
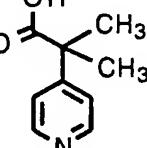
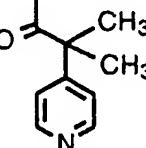
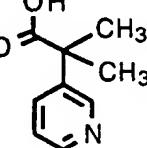
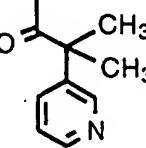
- 115 -

TABLE 2 - continued

EXAMPLE	COLUMN 1	COLUMN 2	COMPOUND
37			glass
38			white solid
39			glass
40			mp 218 - 220°C
41			light brown solid mp = 92.7 - 93°C MS M+ = 459
42			white solid mp = 114.2 - 115.8°C MS M+ = 506
43			white solid mp = 93.3 - 94.6°C MS M+ = 506
44			white solid mp = 112 - 114.6°C MS M+ = 428
45			white solid mp = 94.3 - 95.5°C MS M+ = 474

- 116 -

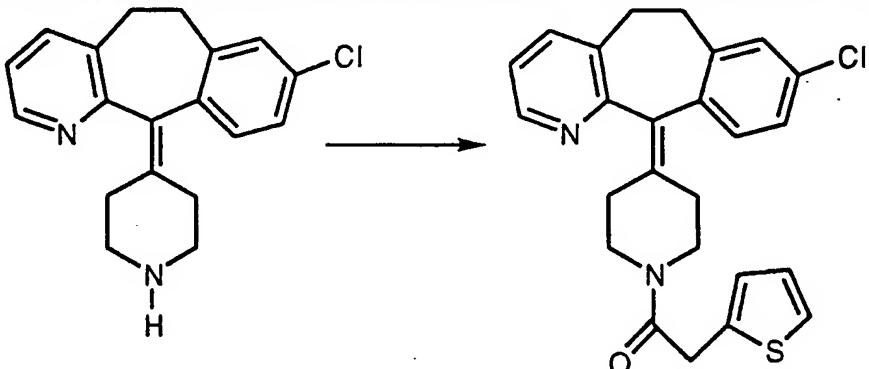
TABLE 2 - continued

EXAMPLE	COLUMN 1	COLUMN 2	COMPOUND
46			white solid mp = 126.5 - 127.5°C MS M+ = 607
47			white solid mp = 83.6 - 85.0°C
48			white solid mp = 82.7 - 83.8°C MS M+ = 456
49			white solid MS M+ = 534
49a			white solid mp = 73.5 - 73.8°C
288			white solid MH+ 452
Preparative Ex. 25			
299			off white solid MH+ 459
Preparative Ex. 26			
300			white solid MH+ 459
Preparative Ex. 10			

- 117 -

EXAMPLE 50

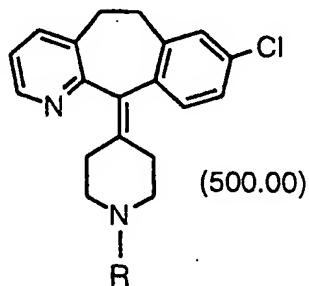
1-(2-THIOPHENEACETYL)-4-(8-CHLORO-5,6-DIHYDRO-11H-BENZO[5,6]CYCLOHEPTA[1,2-b]PYRIDIN-11-YLIDENE)PIPERIDINE



- 5 To a solution of 1.0 gm (3.22 mmole) of 4-(8-chloro-5,6-dihydro-11H-benzo[5,6]cyclohepta [1,2-b] pyridin-11-ylidene) piperidine and 0.29 mL of pyridine in 20 mL of dry methylene chloride at 0°C and under an argon atmosphere was added dropwise 0.438 mL (3.55 mmol) of 2-thiopheneacetyl chloride. After 30 minutes the mixture was washed with  
 10 1.0 N aqueous sodium hydroxide and then brine. The organic portion was dried over sodium sulfate, filtered and converted in vacuo to provide a residue which was purified via flash chromatography (3% methanol in methylene chloride) and treated with activated carbon to provide the title compound as a glass.
- 15

EXAMPLE 51

- By essentially the same procedure as set forth in Example 50, but using the acid chlorides set forth in Column 1, in Table 3 below, in place of 2-thiopheneacetyl chloride, one can obtain the compounds listed in  
 20 Column 2 of Table 3. The compounds listed in Table 3 refer to compounds of Formula 500.00:



wherein R is the substituent in Column 2

- 118 -

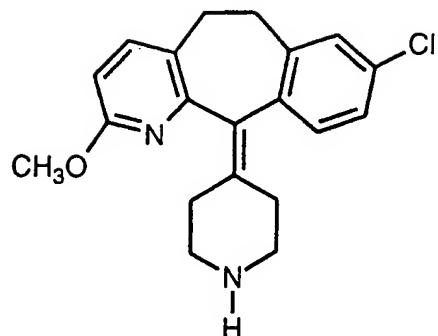
TABLE 3

EXAMPLE	COLUMN 1	COLUMN 2	COMPOUND
52			solid
53			solid mp 158 - 160°C
54			glass
55			white powder
56			solid mp 126 - 128°C
57			solid mp 137 - 139°C
58			solid mp 104 - 106°C
59			white solid mp 155 - 157°C

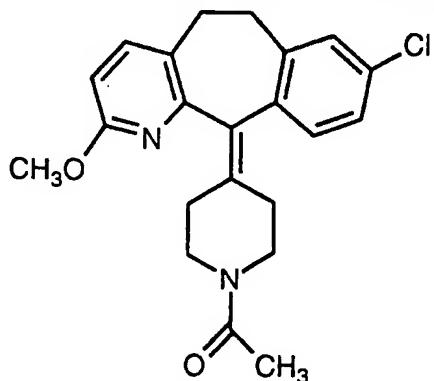
EXAMPLE 65

- 5 By essentially the same procedures as set forth in Example 50 above, or Example 4 of US 5,089,496, but using

- 119 -



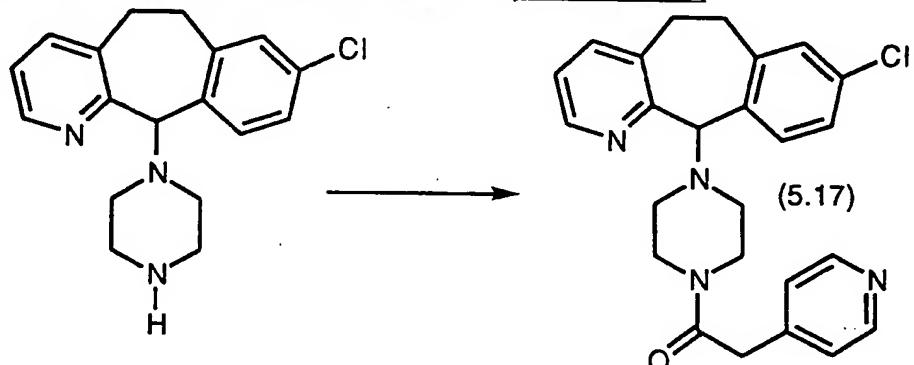
in place of 4-(8-chloro-5,6-dihydro-11H-benzo[5,6]cyclohepta[1,2-b]pyridin-11ylidene)piperidine, one can obtain the compound



5 as a white solid.

#### EXAMPLE 75

#### 1-(8-CHLORO-5,6-DIHYDRO-11H-BENZO[5,6]CYCLO-HEPTA[1,2-b]PYRIDIN-11YL-4-(4-PYRIDYLACETYL)-PIPERAZINE



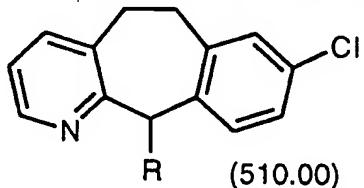
10

To a mixture of 8.5 g (27.2 m mole) of 8-chloro-11-(1-piperazinyl)-6,11-dihydro-5H-benzo[5,6]cyclohepta[1,2-b]pyridine (Preparative Example 7) in 256 mL of anhydrous dimethylformamide at room temperature and under an argon atmosphere was added 2.98 g (27.2 m

- 120 -

- mole of 4-methylmorpholine, 7.81 g (27.2 m mole) of 1-(3-dimethylaminopropyl)-3-ethylcarbodiimide hydrochloride, 3.68 g (27.2 m mole) of 1-hydroxybenzotriazole, and 3.72 g (27.2 m mole) of 4-pyridylacetic acid.
- The mixture was stirred at room temperature for 22 hours. The mixture
- 5    was poured into 3300 mL of methylene chloride and washed with 500 mL of water. The aqueous layer was extracted with 500 mL of methylene chloride. The combined organic portions were dried over magnesium sulfate, filtered, and concentrated in vacuo. The residue was purified by silica gel column chromatography using a solution of 1.5% (10%
- 10   ammonium hydroxide in methanol) in methylene chloride. The product was obtained as a white amorphous solid, M.S. (Mass Spec)  $M+ = 433$ .

By essentially the same procedures as set forth in Example 75 above but using the compounds set forth in Column 1, Table 4 below, in place of 4-pyridylacetic acid, one can obtain compounds of the formula



15

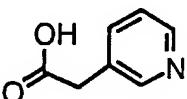
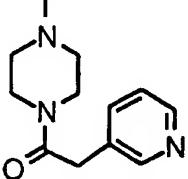
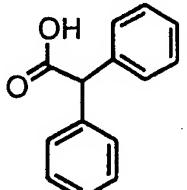
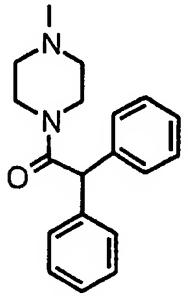
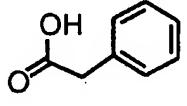
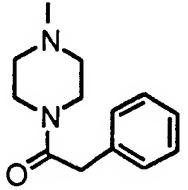
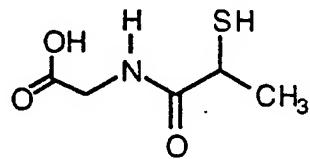
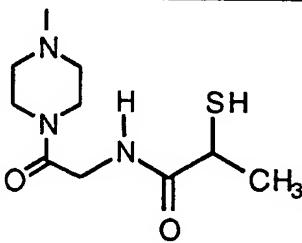
wherein R is as listed in Column 2 of Table 4.

TABLE 4

EX.	COLUMN 1	COLUMN 2	CMPD
76			white amorphous solid Mass Spec $M+ = 501$
77			white amorphous solid Mass Spec $M+ = 512$

- 121 -

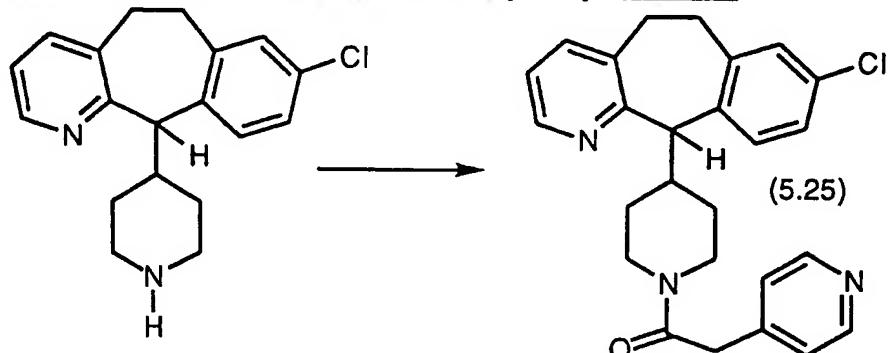
TABLE 4 - continued

EX.	COLUMN 1	COLUMN 2	CMPD
78			white amorphous solid Mass Spec $M^+ = 433$
79			white amorphous solid Mass Spec $M^+ = 508$
80			white amorphous solid Mass Spec $M^+ = 432$
81			white amorphous solid Mass Spec $M^+ = 459$

- 122 -

EXAMPLE 82

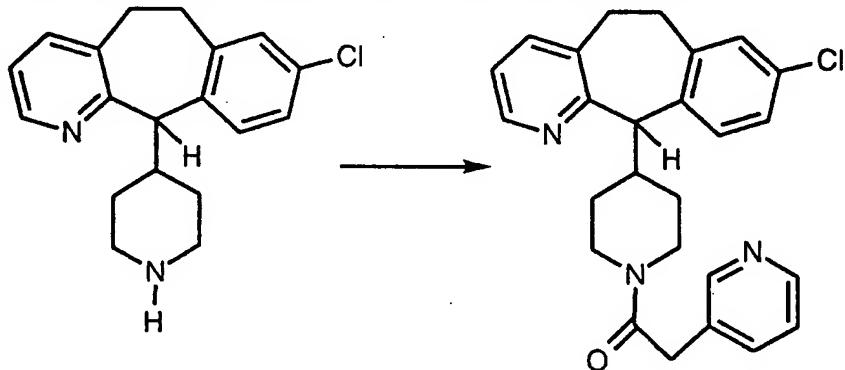
8-CHLORO-11-[1-(2-(4-PYRIDYL)ACETYL)-4-PIPERIDYL]-6,11-DIHYDRO-5H-BENZO[5,6]CYCLOHEPTA[1,2-b]PYRIDINE



- 5 Dissolve 0.1 g (0.32 m mole) of 8-chloro-11-4-piperidyl]-6,11-dihydro-5H-benzo[5,6]cyclohepta[1,2-b]pyridine (from Example 233), 0.06 g (0.32 m mole) of 4-pyridylacetic acid, 0.092 g (0.48 m mole) of 1-(3-dimethylaminopropyl)-3-ethylcarbodiimide hydrochloride, 0.065 g (0.48 m mole) of N-hydroxy benzotriazole and 0.048 g (0.50 m mole) of N-methyl
- 10 morpholine in 5 mL of dimethylformamide and stir at room temperature for 18 hours under nitrogen. Concentrate under vacuo and partition between 100 mL each of ethyl acetate and water. Dry the organic layer over sodium sulfate and concentrate under vacuo. The resulting residue is chromatographed on silica gel using 98% dichloro methane and 2%
- 15 methanol, saturated with ammonia as the solvent, giving the product as a white waxy solid, mass spec M+ = 431.

EXAMPLE 82A

8-CHLORO-11-[1-(2-(PYRIDYL)ACETYL)-4-PIPERIDYL]-6,11-DIHYDRO-5H-BENZO[5,6]CYCLOHEPTA[1,2-b]PYRIDINE



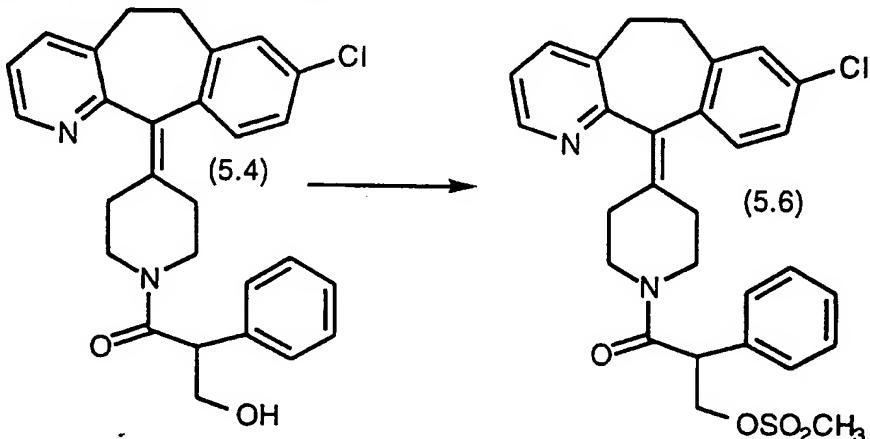
- 123 -

By essentially the same procedure as set forth in Example 82, but using 3-pyridylacetic acid instead of 4-pyridylacetic acid, the title compound is obtained as a white solid ( $M^+ = 431$ , mp = 81.7-82°C).

5

EXAMPLE 83

8-CHLORO-11-[1-(2-METHYLSULFONYLOXY-1-PHENYLETHYL-CARBONYL)-4-PIPERIDYLIDENE]-6,11-DIHYDRO-5H-BENZO[5,6]-CYCLOHEPTA[1,2-b]PYRIDINE

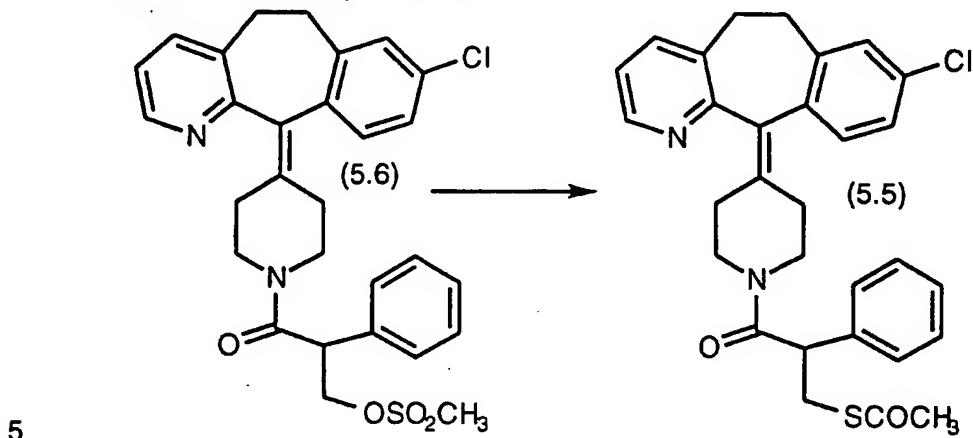


- 10 Dissolve 0.40 g (0.9 m mole) of 8-chloro-11-[1-(2-hydroxy-1-phenylethylcarbonyl)-4-piperidylidene]-6,11-dihydro-5H-benzo[5,6]-cyclohepta[1,2-b]pyridine (Example 41 of Table 2) in 10 mL of pyridine and stir under nitrogen. Add 0.15 g (1.3 m mole) of methanesulfonyl chloride and stir for 20 hours. Concentrate under vacuo and triturate the residue with ether. Purify the resulting solid by silica gel chromatography using 2% methanol saturated with ammonia, and 98% dichloromethane as the solvent. The product is obtained as a white solid, mp = 110.7-111.6° C.
- 15

- 124 -

EXAMPLE 84

8-CHLORO-11-[1-(2-ACETYL MERCAPTO-1-PHENYLETHYL-CARBONYL)-4-PIPERIDYLIDENE]-6,11-DIHYDRO-5H-BENZO[5,6]-CYCLOHEPTA[1,2-b]PYRIDINE



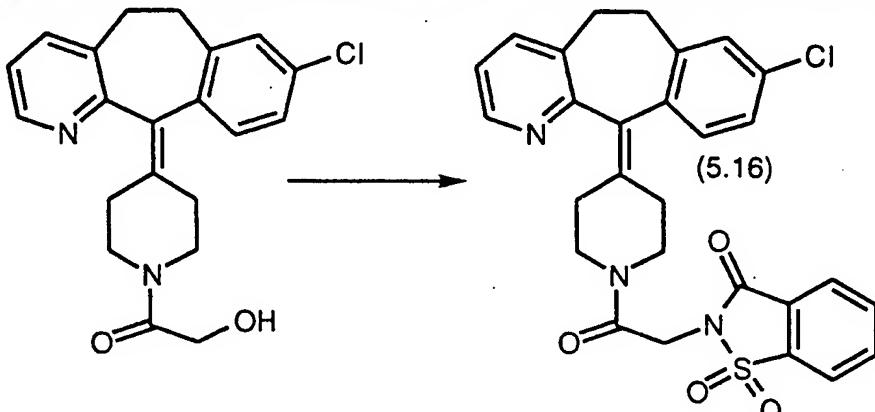
Dissolve 0.3 g (0.56 m mole) of 8-chloro-11-[1-(2-methanesulfonyloxy-1-phenylethylcarbonyl)-4-piperidylidene]-6,11-dihydro-5H-benzo[5,6]cyclohepta[1,2-b]pyridine (Formula 5.6 of Example 83) in 5 mL of dimethylformamide and add 0.2 g (0.6 m mole) of cesium thioacetate (preparation described in Synthetic Communications, 13, 553, 1983). Stir the reaction at 80°C for twenty hours then concentrate under vacuo.

Purify the residue by silica gel chromatography using 70% ethyl acetate and 30% hexane as the solvent. The product is obtained as a light brown solid, mp = 92.7-93°C.

15

EXAMPLE 85

8-CHLORO-11-[1-(1-(2,3-DIHYDRO-3-OXO-1,2-BENZOISO-ThIAZOL-S,S-DIOXIDE-2-YL)METHYL CARBONYL)-4-PIPERIDYLIDENE]-6,11-DIHYDRO-5H-BENZO[5,6]CYCLOHEPTA[1,2-b]PYRIDINE



20

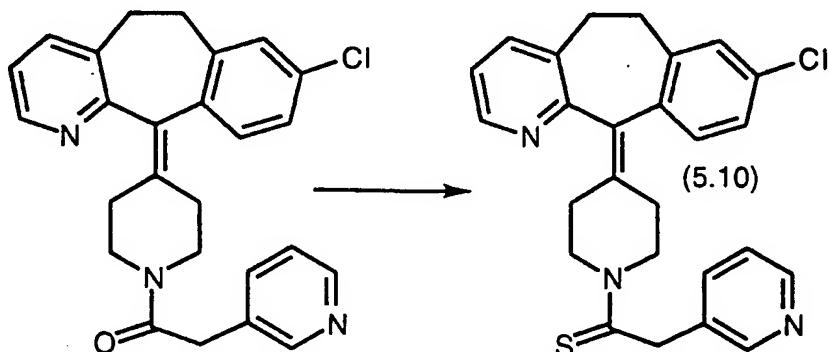
- 125 -

- Dissolve 0.46g (1.7 m mole) of 8-chloro-11-[1-(2-hydroxyethylcarbonyl)-4-piperidylidene]-6,11-dihydro-5H-benzo[5,6]cyclohepta[1,2,b]pyridine (Example 49a of Table 2) in 30 mL of dimethylformamide and stir at 0°C under nitrogen. Add 0.55 g (2.1 m mole) of triphenyl phosphine and 0.36 g (2.1 m mole) of diethyl azodicarboxylate. Stir reaction mixture at 70°C for 3 days, then concentrate under vacuo. The residue was dissolved in 50 mL of 1 N hydrochloric acid and washed with 100 mL of ethyl acetate. The water layer was neutralized with 1 N sodium hydroxide and the mixture was extracted with ethyl acetate. The organic layer was dried over magnesium sulfate and concentrated under vacuo. The residue was purified by silica gel chromatography using 90% ethyl acetate and 10% hexane as the solvent, giving the product as a white solid, mass spec. M+ = 534.

15

#### EXAMPLE 86

8-CHLORO-11-[1-(1-(3-PYRIDYL)METHYLTHIOCARBONYL)-4-PIPERIDYLIDENE]-6,11-DIHYDRO-5H-BENZO[5,6]CYCLOHEPTA[1,2-b]-PYRIDINE



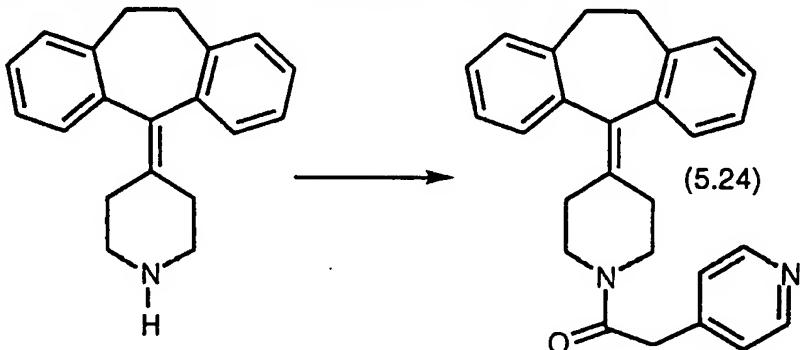
- 20 Dissolve 0.50 g (0.12 m mole) of 8-chloro-11-[1-(1-(3-pyridyl)methylcarbonyl)-4-piperidylidene]-6,11-dihydro-5H-benzo[5,6]cyclohepta[1,2-b]-pyridine (Example 2 of Table 2) and 0.5 g (0.12 m mole) of 2,4-bis(4-methoxyphenyl)-1,3-dithia-2,4-diphosphetane-2,4-disulfide (Lawesson's Reagent) in 15 mL of toluene and stir for 18 hours at room temperature and 18 hours at 80°C, under nitrogen. Filter the reaction mixture and concentrate under vacuo. Dissolve the residue in 50 mL of 1N hydrochloric acid and extract with 200 mL of dichloromethane. The water layer was neutralized with sodium carbonate and extracted with dichloromethane. The organic layer was dried over magnesium sulfate
- 25

- 126 -

and concentrated under vacuo giving the product as a white solid, mp = 92-93°C.

EXAMPLE 87

5       10,11-DIHYDRO-5-[1-(1-(4-PYRIDYL)METHYLCARBONYL)-4-PIPERIDYLIDENE]-5H-DIBENZO[a,d]CYCLOHEPTENE

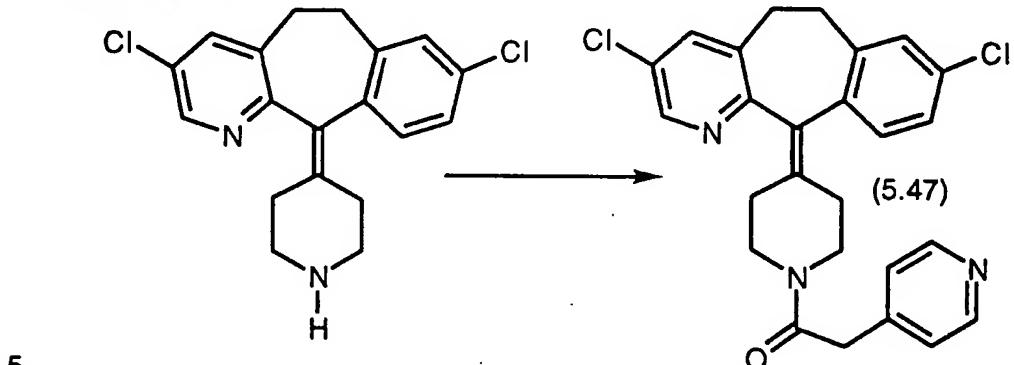


- Dissolve 0.15 g (0.6m mole) of 10,11-dihydro-5-(4-piperidylidene)-  
5H-dibenzo[a,d]cycloheptene, 0.096 g (0.55 m mole) of 4-pyridylacetic  
10 acid hydrochloride, 0.16 g (0.83 m mole) of 1-(3-dimethylaminopropyl)-3-  
ethylcarbodiimide hydrochloride and 0.075 g (0.55 m mole) of N-hydroxy  
benzotriazole in 5 mL of dimethylformamide and stir at room temperature  
for 18 hours under nitrogen. Concentrate under vacuo and partition  
between 100 mL each of ethyl acetate and 10% aqueous sodium  
15 hydrogenphosphate. Dry the organic layer over magnesium sulfate and  
concentrate under vacuo. The resulting residue is chromatographed on  
silica gel using 98% dichloro methane and 2% methanol, saturated with  
ammonia as the solvent, giving the product as a white waxy solid, mp =  
162.8-163.4 °C.

- 127 -

EXAMPLE 180

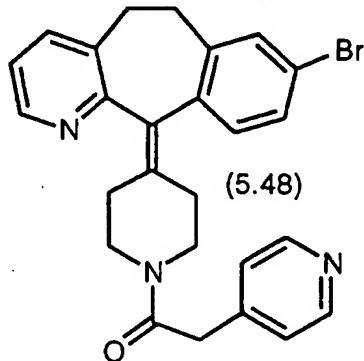
1- 1-(4-PYRIDINYLACETYL) -4-[3,8-DICHLORO-5,6-DIHYDRO-  
11H-BENZO[5,6]CYCLOHEPTA[1,2-b]PYRIDIN-11-YLIDENE]-  
PIPERIDINE



5

Dissolve 0.18 g (0.51 mmole) of 3,8-dichloro 11-(1-acetyl-4-piperidylidene)-6,11-dihydro-5H-benzo[5,6]cycohepta[1,2-b]pyridine, 0.088g. (0.51 mmole ) 4-pyridylacetic acid, 0.117g (0.61 mmole) of 1-(3-dimethylaminopropyl)-3-ethylcarbodiimide hydrochloride, 0.082g (0.61 mmole) N-hydroxybenzotriazole and 0.071g (0.71 mmole) N-methyl morpholine in 5 mL of dimethylformamide and stir for 18 hours under nitrogen. Concentrate under vacuo and partition between ethyl acetate and water. Dry organic layer over sodium sulfate and concentrate in vacuo. The resulting residue is chromatographed on silica gel using 95% dichloromethane and 5% methanol, saturated with ammonia as the solvent. The product is obtained as white solid, mp = 113-114 °C.

EXAMPLE 181

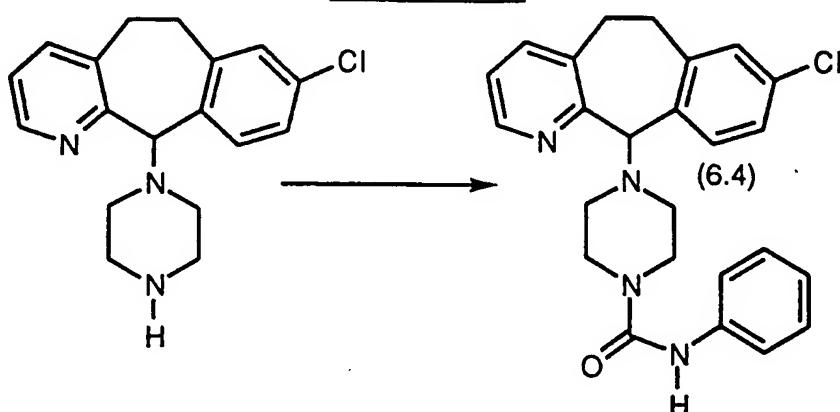


20 By essentially the same procedure as set forth in Exampe 180, but using 8-bromo-11-(1-acetyl-4-piperidylidene)-6,11-dihydro-5H-benzo-[5,6]cyclohepta[1,2-b]pyridine instead of 3,8-dichloro-11-(1-acetyl-4-

- 128 -

piperidylidene)-6,11-dihydro-5H-benzo[5,6]-cyclohepta[1,2-b]pyridine,  
compound 5.48 was obtained as an off-white solid, mp= 94.3-94.7 °C.

EXAMPLE 182

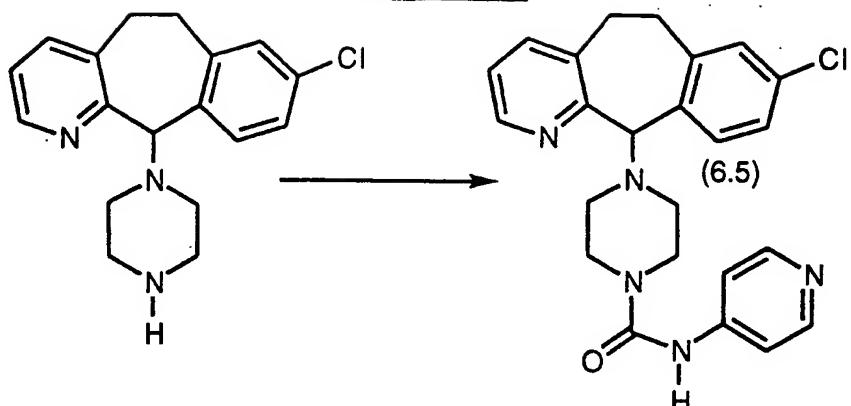


5

- To a stirred solution of phenyl isocyanate (1.27 mmole) in 15 ml of anhydrous methylene chloride at room temperature and under an argon atmosphere was added dropwise over 20 minutes, a solution of 8-chloro-11-(1-piperazinyl)-6,11-dihydro-5H-benzo[5,6]cyclohepta[1,2-b]pyridine (1.27 mmole) in 5 ml of anhydrous methylene chloride. The mixture was stirred at room temperature for 20 hours. The mixture was poured into 700 ml of methylene chloride and washed with 100 ml of saturated sodium bicarbonate. The organic portion was dried over magnesium sulfate, filtered, and concentrated in vacuo. The residue was purified by silica gel chromatography using a solution of 1.0% (10% ammonium hydroxide in methanol) in methylene chloride. The product was obtained as a white amorphous solid, M.S. (Mass Spec) M+ = 433.

- 129 -

EXAMPLE 183

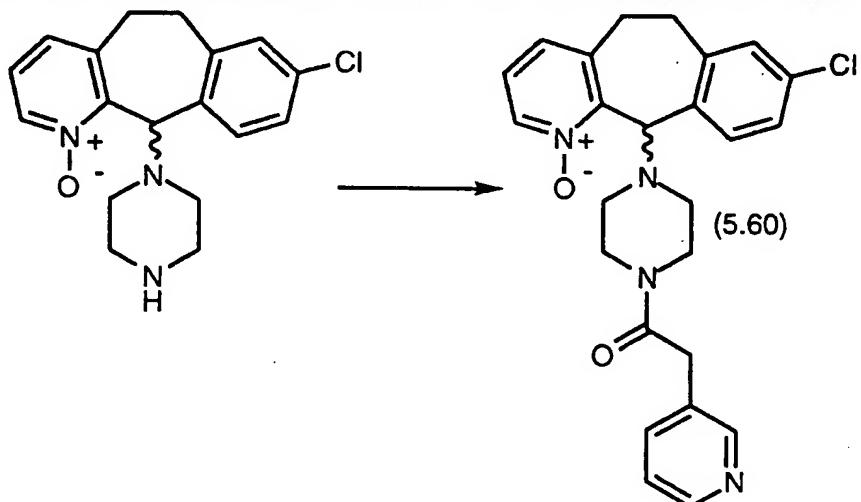


To a 5.0 ml reaction vial was added 8-chloro-11-(1-piperazinyl)-6,11-dihydro-5H-benzo[5,6]cyclohepta[1,2-b]pyridine (1.0 mmole) and N-ethoxycarbonyl-4-aminopyridine (0.99 mmole). The vial was capped and placed in an oil bath at 170 °C and stirred for 5 hours. The residue was purified by silica gel chromatography using a solution of 3.0% (10% ammonium hydroxide in methanol) in methylene chloride. The product was obtained as a white amorphous solid, M.S. (Mass Spec)  $M^+ = 434$ .

10

EXAMPLE 184

1-(8-CHLORO-6,11-DIHYDRO-5H-BENZO[5,6]CYCLOHEPTA[1,2-b]PYRIDIN-11-YL)-4-(3-PYRIDINYLACETYL)piperazine 1-N-OXIDE

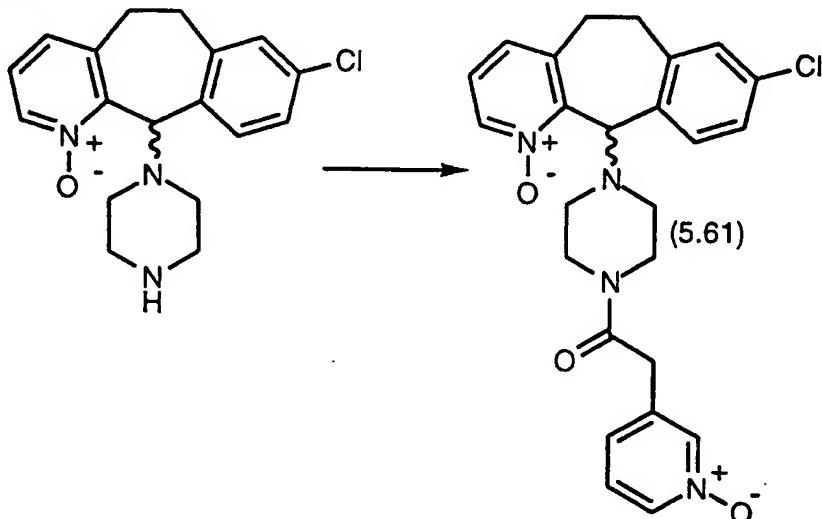


15      The title compound from Preparative Example 11D (0.5 grams) (1.5 mmoles) was reacted with 3-pyridylacetic acid (0.208 grams) (1.5 mmoles) under the conditions described in Example 75 to give the title compound (Yield: 0.439 grams, 95%,  $MH^+ 449$ ).

- 130 -

EXAMPLE 185

1-(8-CHLORO-6,11-DIHYDRO-5H-BENZO[5,6]CYCLOHEPTA[1,2-b]PYRIDIN-11-YL)-4-(3-PYRIDINYLAACETYL 1-N-OXIDE)PIPERAZINE 1-N-OXIDE



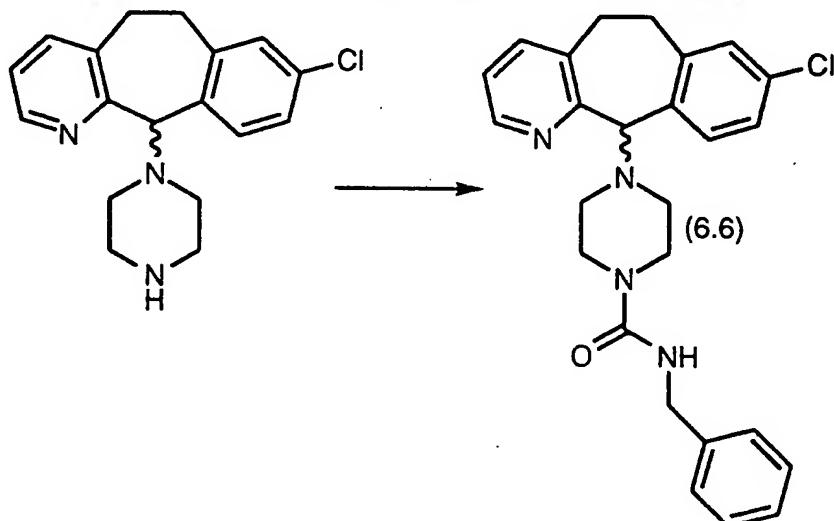
5

The title compound from Preparative Example 11D (0.5 grams) (1.5 mmoles) was reacted with the title compound from Preparative Example 8 (0.232 grams) (1.5 mmoles) under the conditions described in Example 75 to give the title compound (Yield: 0.6454 grams, 92%,  $MH^+$  465.2).

10

EXAMPLE 186

N-BENZYL 4-(8-CHLORO-6,11-DIHYDRO-5H-BENZO[5,6]CYCLOHEPTA[1,2-b]PYRIDIN-11-YL)-1-PIPERAZINECARBOXAMIDE



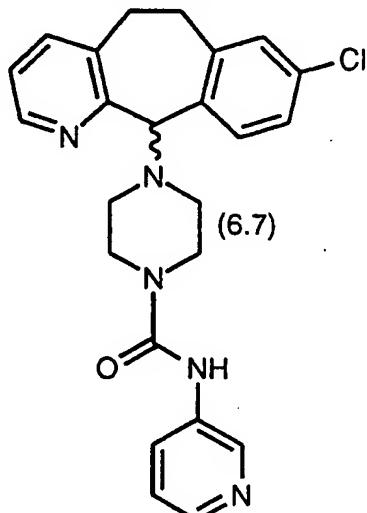
- 131 -

The title compound from Example 75 was reacted with benzyl isocyanate under the conditions described in Example 182 above to give the title compound (Yield: 79%,  $MH^+$  447).

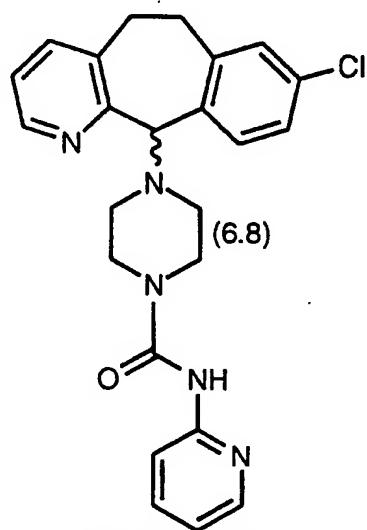
5

EXAMPLE 187

By essentially the same procedure as Example 183, with the exception that 3-ethoxycarbonylaminopyridine or 2-ethoxycarbonylaminopyridine (Preparative Example 12) is used instead of using 4-ethoxycarbonylaminopyridine, the compound



or



10

White amorphous solid,  $MH^+$  434.3

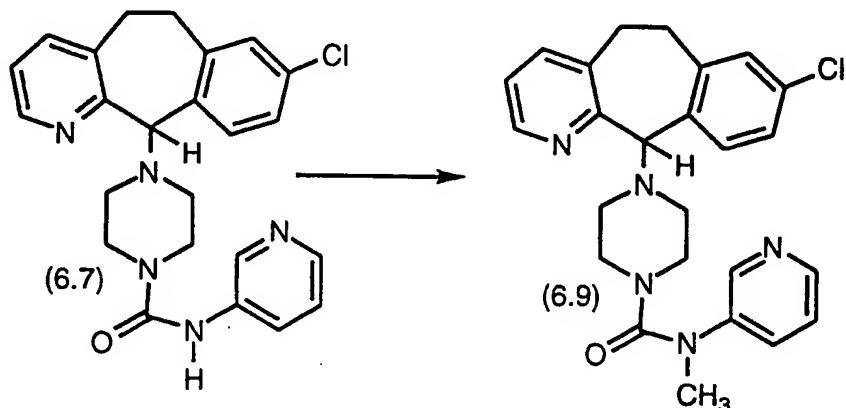
was obtained, respectively.

White amorphous solid,  $MH^+$  434.3

- 132 -

**EXAMPLE 188**

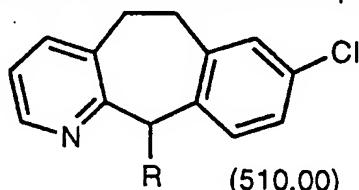
4-(8-CHLORO-6,11-DIHYDRO-5H-BENZO[5,6]CYCLOHEPTA[1,2-b]PYRIDIN-11-YL)-N-METHYL-N-(3-PYRIDINYL)-1-PIPERAZINE-CARBOXAMIDE



Compound 6.7 from Example 187 (10 grams) (23.1 mmoles) in DMSO (37.6 ml.) was added to a solution of powdered potassium hydroxide (2.62 grams) (23.1 mmoles) in DMSO (25 ml.) and the mixture was stirred at 25°C for 3 minutes. Iodomethane (1.4518 ml.) (23.1 mmoles) was added and the mixture was stirred at 25°C for 15 minutes. The mixture was poured into water and extracted with dichloromethane. The latter was dried (magnesium sulphate), filtered and evaporated to dryness. The product was purified by chromatography on silica gel using 3-5% (10% concentrated ammonium hydroxide in methanol)-dichloromethane as the eluant to give the title compound (Yield: 6.28 grams, 61%.  $MH^+$  448).

### **EXAMPLES 189 - 218**

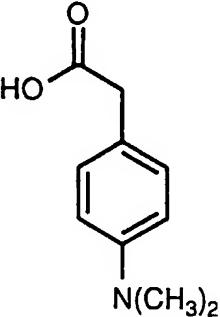
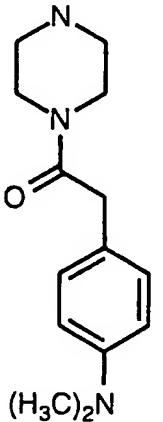
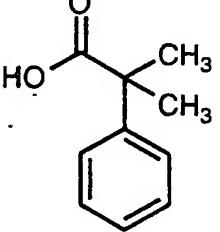
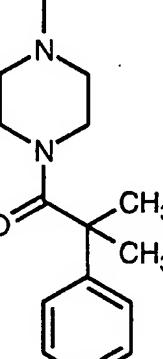
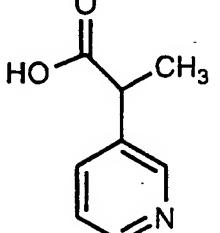
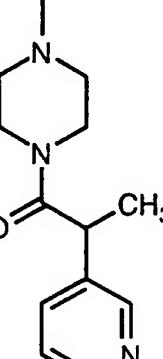
By essentially the same procedures as set forth in Example 75 above but using the compounds set forth in Column 1, Table 5 below, in place of 4-pyridylacetic acid, one can obtain compounds of the formula



wherein R is as listed in Column 2 of Table 5.

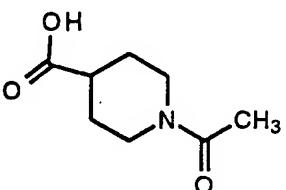
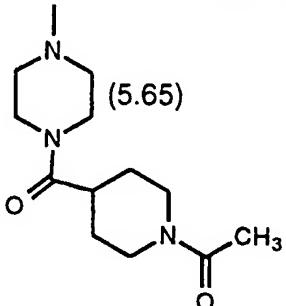
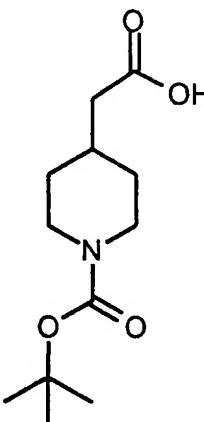
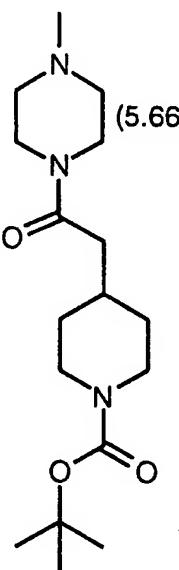
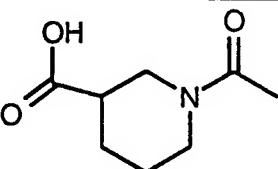
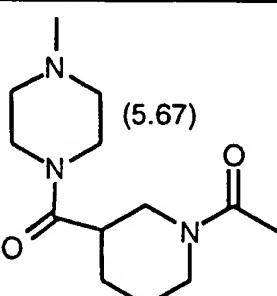
- 133 -

TABLE 5

EX.	COLUMN 1	COLUMN 2	CMPD
189		 (5.62)	white amorphous solid $MH^+ 475$
190		 (5.63)	white amorphous solid $MH^+ 460$
191		 (5.64)	white amorphous solid $MH^+ 447$

- 134 -

TABLE 5 - continued

EX.	COLUMN 1	COLUMN 2	CMPD
192			white amorphous solid $MH^+ 467$
193			white amorphous solid $MH^+ 539$
194			white amorphous solid $MH^+ 467$

- 135 -

TABLE 5 - continued

EX.	COLUMN 1	COLUMN 2	CMPD
195		 (5.68)	white amorphous solid MH <sup>+</sup> 439
196		 (5.69)	white amorphous solid MH <sup>+</sup> 433
197		 (5.70)	white amorphous solid MH <sup>+</sup> 449

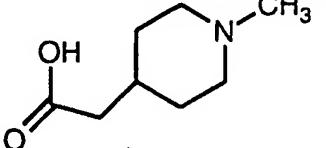
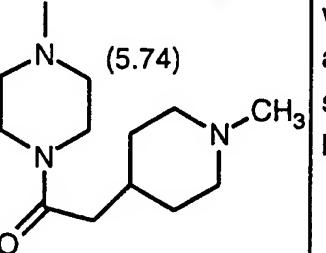
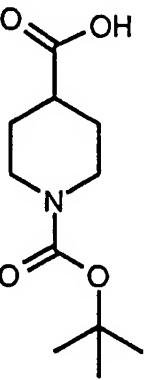
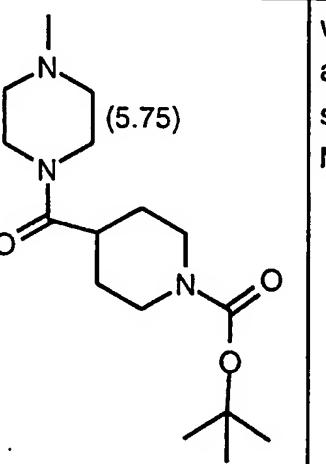
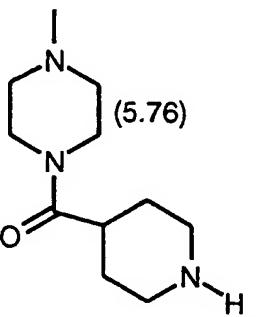
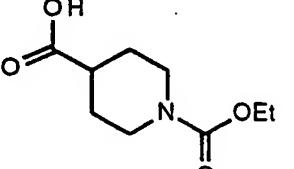
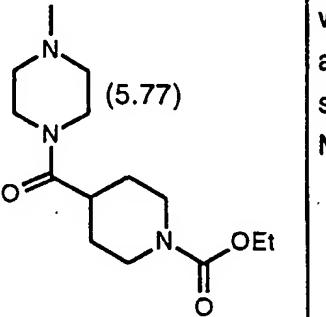
- 136 -

TABLE 5 - continued

EX.	COLUMN 1	COLUMN 2	CMPD
198		 (5.71)	white amorphous solid MH <sup>+</sup> 461
199		 (5.72)  5.72A = Isomer A 5.72B = Isomer B	white amorphous solid MH <sup>+</sup> 467
200		 (5.73)	white amorphous solid MH <sup>+</sup> 467

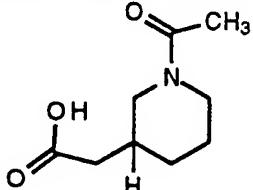
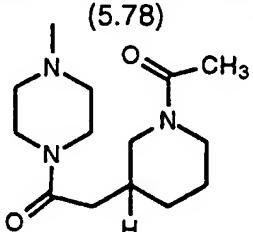
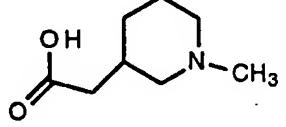
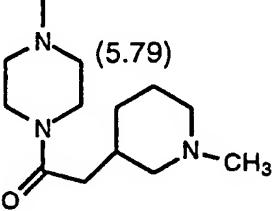
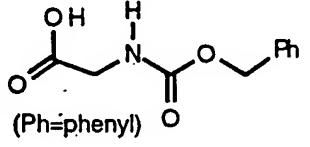
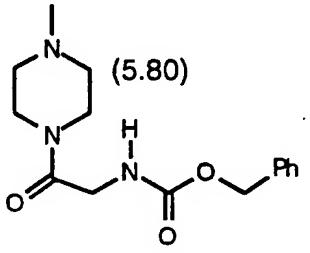
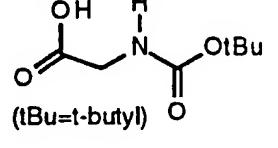
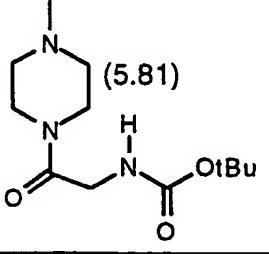
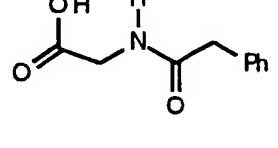
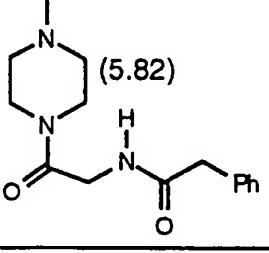
- 137 -

TABLE 5 - continued

EX.	COLUMN 1	COLUMN 2	CMPD
201			white amorphous solid $MH^+ 453$
202			white amorphous solid $MH^+ 525$
203	Trifluoroacetic Acid deprotection of Compound 5.75 of Example 202		white amorphous solid $MH^+ 525$
204			white amorphous solid $MH^+ 497$

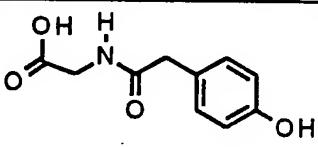
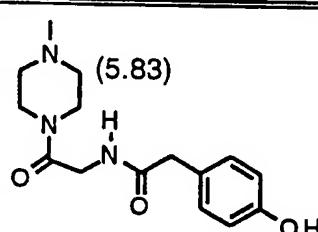
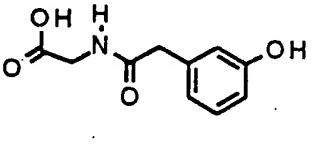
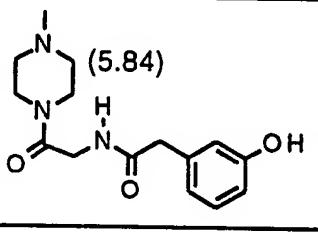
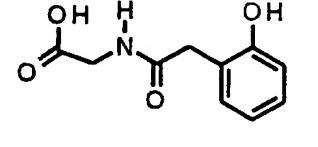
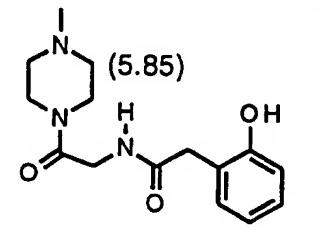
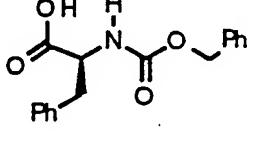
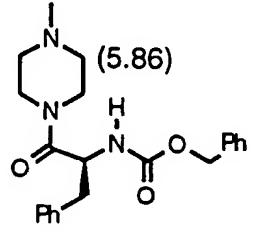
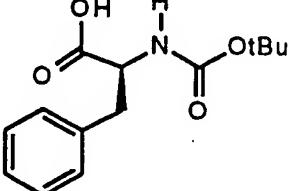
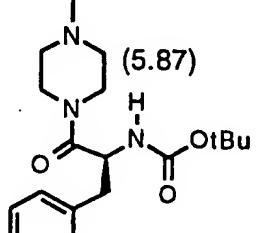
- 138 -

TABLE 5 - continued

EX.	COLUMN 1	COLUMN 2	CMPD
205			white amorphous solid $MH^+ 481$
206			white amorphous solid $MH^+ 453$
207			white amorphous solid $MH^+ 505$
208			white amorphous solid $MH^+ 471$
209			white amorphous solid $MH^+ 489$

- 139 -

TABLE 5 - continued

EX.	COLUMN 1	COLUMN 2	CMPD
210			white amorphous solid $MH^+$ 505
211			white amorphous solid $MH^+$ 505
212			white amorphous solid $MH^+$ 505
213			white amorphous solid $MH^+$ 595
214			white amorphous solid $MH^+$ 561

- 140 -

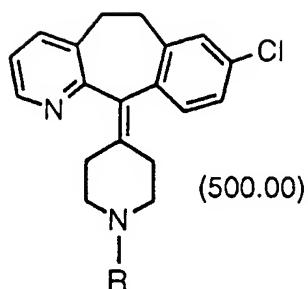
TABLE 5 - continued

EX.	COLUMN 1	COLUMN 2	CMPD
215			white amorphous solid MH+ 461
216			white amorphous solid MH+ 591
217			white amorphous solid MH+ 503
218			white amorphous solid MH+ 519

EXAMPLE 219 - 222

- 5 By essentially the same procedure as set forth in Example 1, but using the acids set forth in Column 1 of Table 6 below in place of 4-pyridylacetic acid, the compounds listed in Column 2 of Table 6 are obtained. The compounds listed in Table 6 refer to compounds of Formula 500.00:

- 141 -



wherein R is the substituent in Column 2.

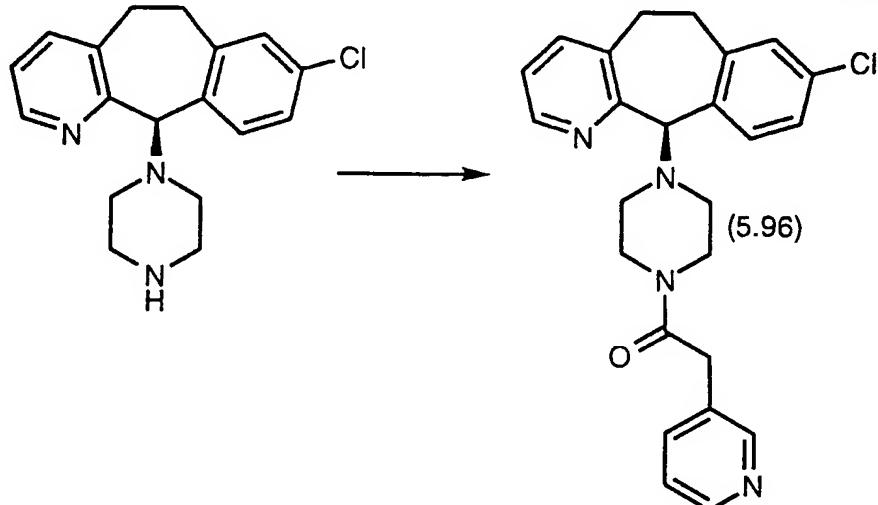
TABLE 6

EX.	COLUMN 1	COLUMN 2	CMPD
219			white amorphous solid $MH^+$ 482 m.p. = 192-193°C
220			white amorphous solid $MH^+$ 502 m.p. = 282-285°C
221			white amorphous solid $MH^+$ 485
222			white amorphous solid $MH^+$ 514

- 142 -

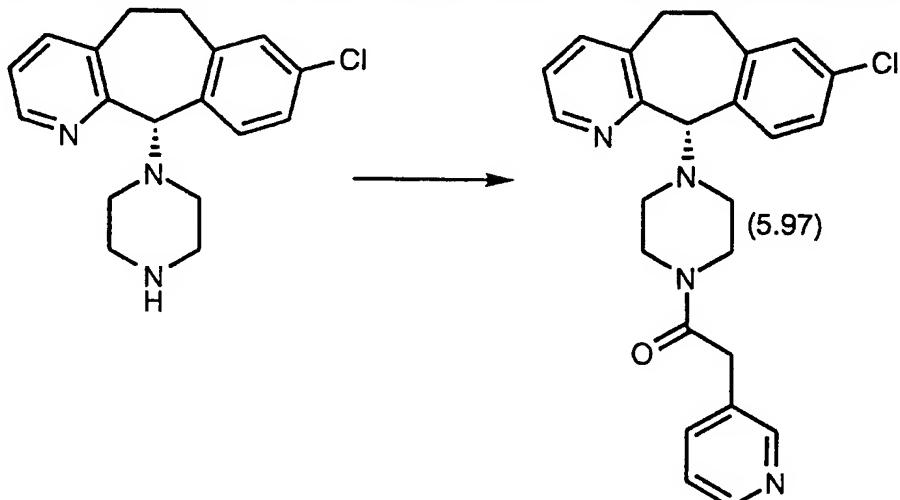
EXAMPLE 223

A. (+)-1-(8-CHLORO-5,6-DIHYDRO-11H-BENZO[5,6]CYCLO-HEPTA[1,2-b]PYRIDIN-11(R)-YL)-4-(3-PYRIDINYLAACETYL)PIPERAZINE



5        The title R(+) diastereoisomer from Preparative Example 19 was reacted with 3-pyridylacetic acid under the same conditions as described in Example 75 to give the title compound (Yield: 88%,  $MH^+$  433).

B. (-)-1-(8-CHLORO-5,6-DIHYDRO-11H-BENZO[5,6]CYCLO-HEPTA[1,2-b]PYRIDIN-11(S)-YL)-4-(3-PYRIDINYLAACETYL)PIPERAZINE



10

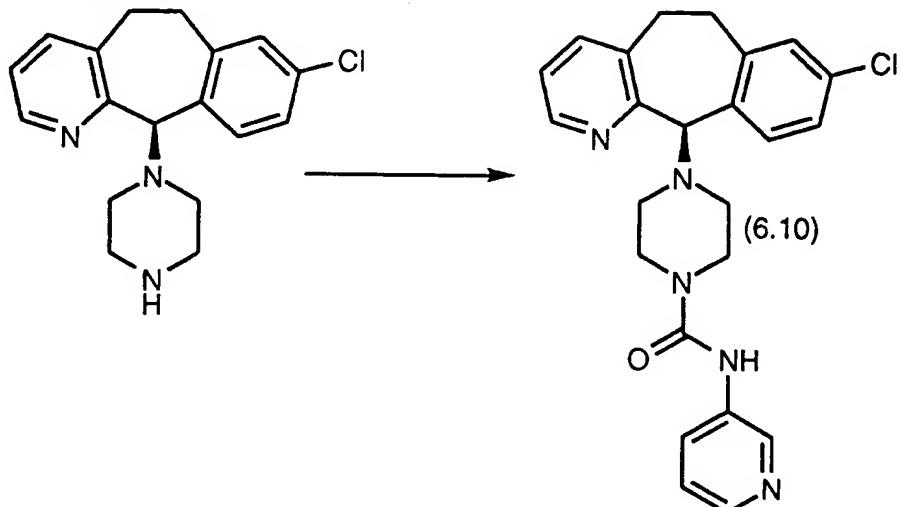
The title S(-) diastereoisomer from Preparative Example 19 above was reacted with 3-pyridylacetic acid under the same conditions as described in Example 75 to give the title compound (Yield: 96%,  $MH^+$  433).

15

- 143 -

EXAMPLE 224

A. (+)-4-(8-CHLORO-6,11-DIHYDRO-5H-BENZO[5,6]CYCLO-HEPTA[1,2-b]PYRIDIN-11(R)-YL)-N-(3-PYRIDINYL)-1-PIPERAZINE-CARBOXYLATE

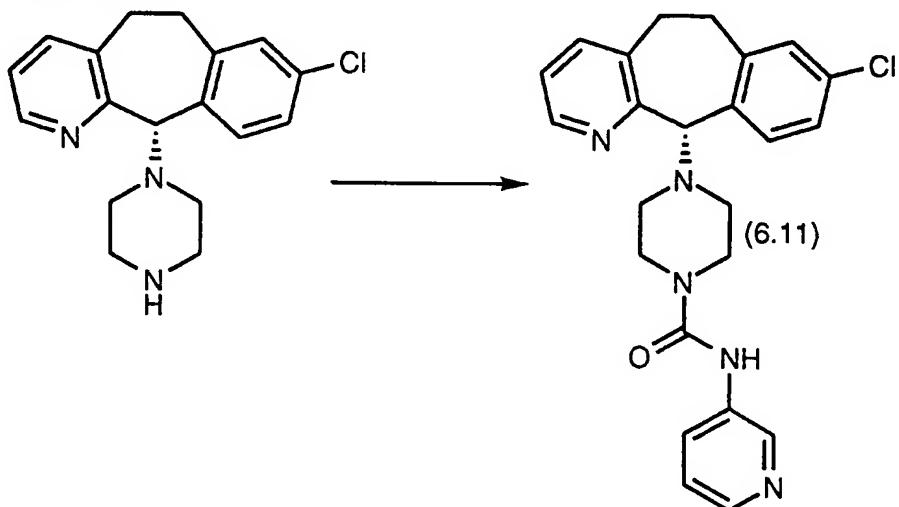


5

The title R(+) diastereoisomer from Preparative Example 19 was reacted with 3-ethoxycarbonylaminopyridine under the same conditions as described in Example 75 to give the title compound (Yield: 81%,  $MH^+$  434).

10

B. (-)-4-(8-CHLORO-6,11-DIHYDRO-5H-BENZO[5,6]CYCLO-HEPTA[1,2-b]PYRIDIN-11(S)-YL)-N-(3-PYRIDINYL)-1-PIPERAZINE-CARBOXAMIDE



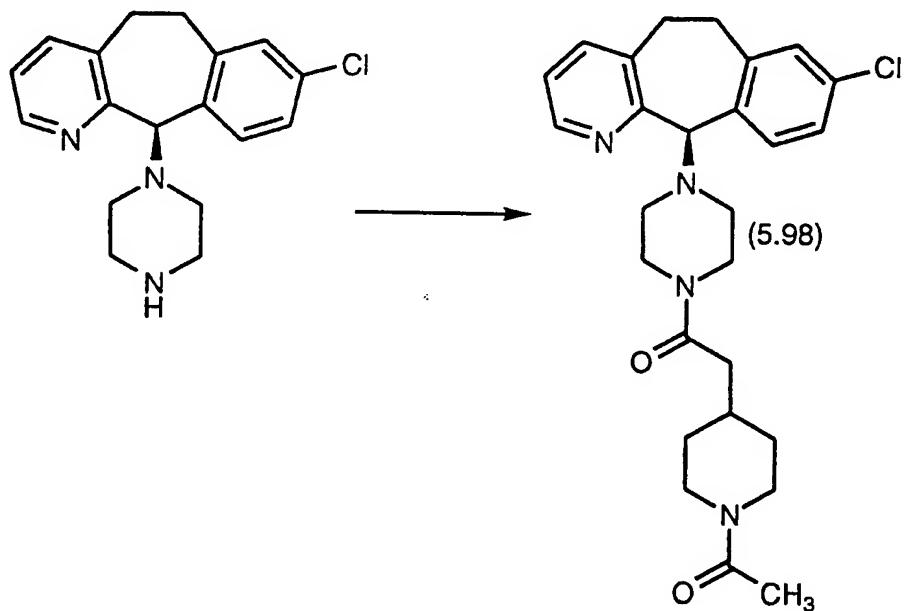
15 The title S(-) diastereoisomer from Preparative Example 19 was reacted with 3-ethoxycarbonylaminopyridine under the same conditions

- 144 -

as described in Example 75 to give the title compound (Yield: 80%,  $MH^+$  434).

EXAMPLE 225

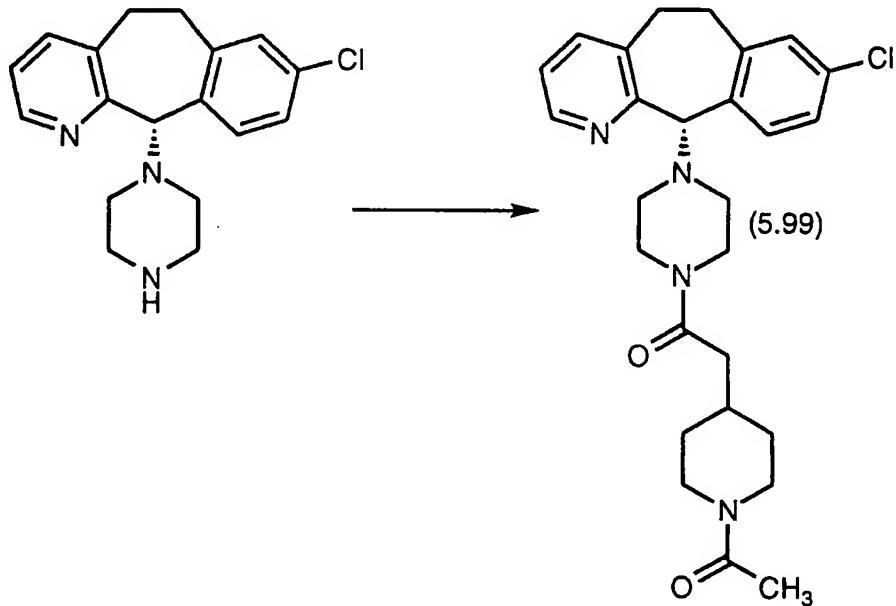
- 5 A. (+)-1-(8-CHLORO-5,6-DIHYDRO-11H-BENZO[5,6]CYCLO-HEPTA[1,2-b]PYRIDIN-11(R)-YL)-4-[(1-ACETYL-4-PIPERIDINYL)-ACETYL]PIPERAZINE



- 10 The title R(+) diastereoisomer from Preparative Example 19 above was reacted with 1-N-acetylpiridinyl-3-acetic acid under the same conditions as described in Example 75 to give the title compound (Yield: 52%,  $MH^+$  481).

- 145 -

B. (-)-1-(8-CHLORO-5,6-DIHYDRO-11H-BENZO[5,6]CYCLO-HEPTA[1,2-b]PYRIDIN-11(S)-YL)-4-[(1-ACETYL-4-PIPERIDINYL)-ACETYL]PIPERAZINE

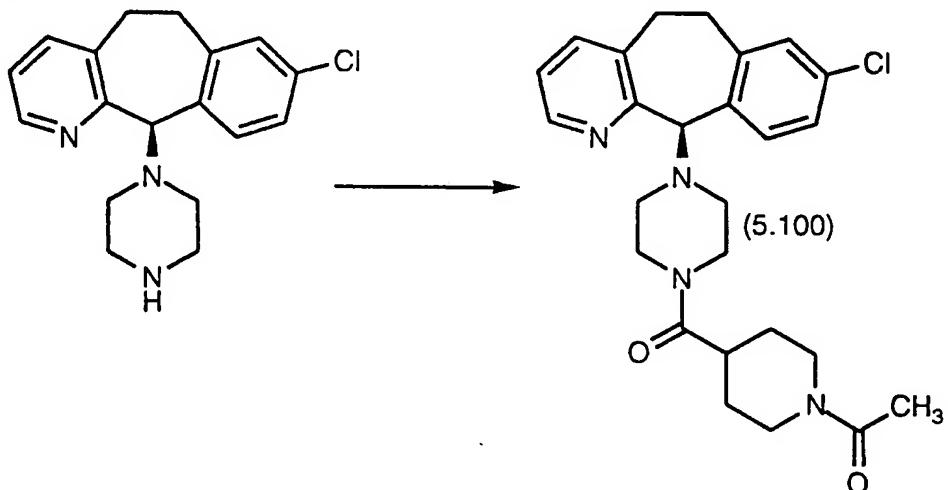


5 The title S(-) diastereoisomer from Preparative Example 19 above was reacted with 1-N-acetyl-1-piperidinyl-3-acetic acid under the same conditions as described in Example 75 to give the title compound (Yield: 53%,  $MH^+$  481).

10

EXAMPLE 226

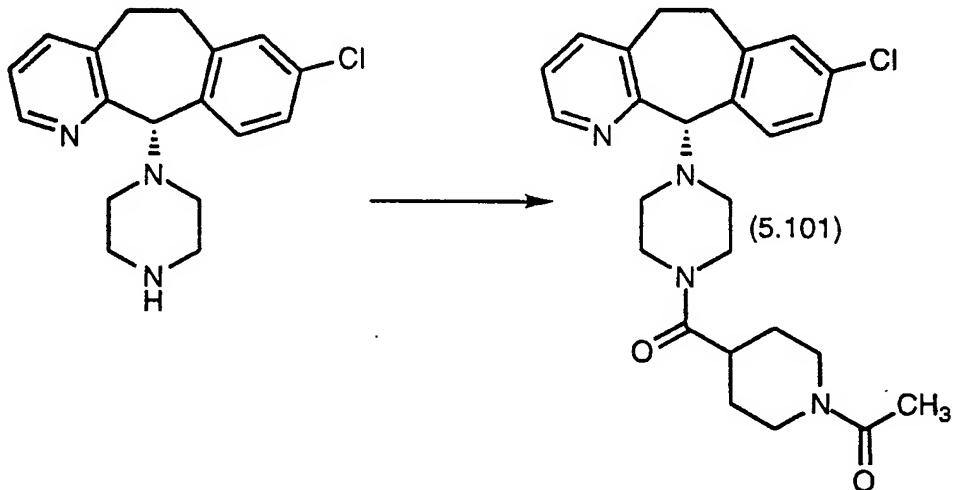
A. (+)-1-(8-CHLORO-6,11-DIHYDRO-5H-BENZO[5,6]CYCLO-HEPTA[1,2-b]PYRIDIN-11(R)-YL)-4-[(1-ACETYL-4-PIPERIDINYL)-CARBONYL]PIPERAZINE



- 146 -

The title R(+) diastereoisomer from Preparative Example 19 was reacted with 1-N-acetylisonipecotic acid under the same conditions as described in Example 75 to give the title compound (Yield: 90%,  $MH^+$  467).

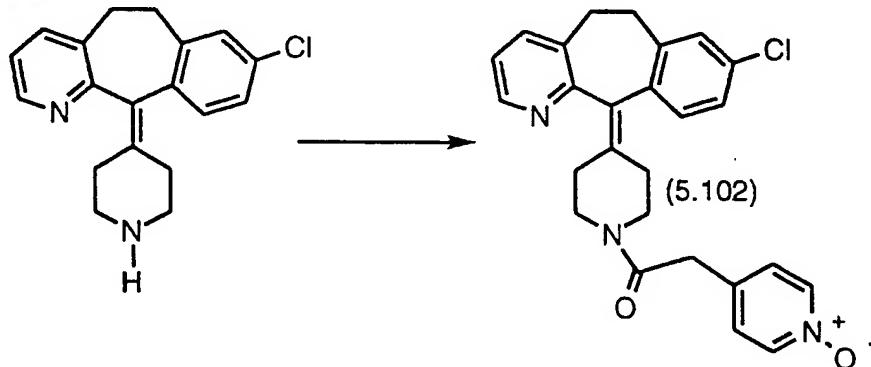
- 5      B. (-)-1-(8-CHLORO-6,11-DIHYDRO-5H-BENZO[5,6]CYCLOHEPTA[1,2-b]PYRIDIN-11(S)-YL)-4-[(1-ACETYL-4-PIPERIDINYL)-CARBONYL]PIPERAZINE



10     The title S(-) diastereoisomer from Preparative Example 19 was reacted with 1-N-acetylisonipecotic acid under the same conditions as described in Example 75 to give the title compound (Yield: 93%,  $MH^+$  467).

#### EXAMPLE 227

- 15     4-(8-CHLORO-5,6-DIHYDRO-11H-BENZO-[5,6]CYCLOHEPTA[1,2-b]PYRIDIN-11-YLIDENE)-1-[(4-PYRIDINYL)ACETYL]-PIPERIDINE N1 OXIDE

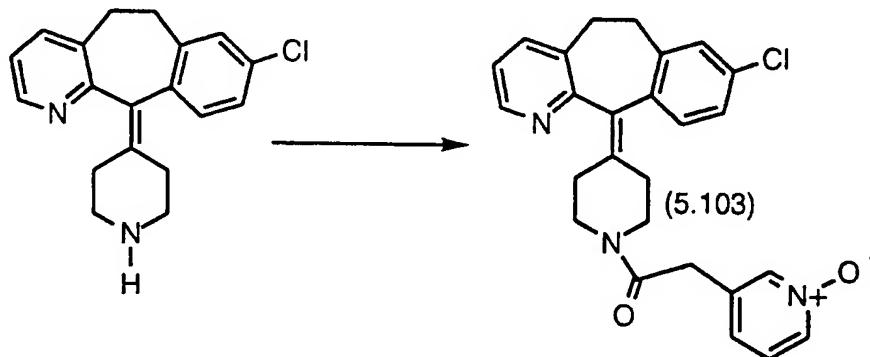


- 147 -

To a mixture of 0.933g(3 mmol) of 4-(8-chloro-5,6-dihydro-11H-benzo-[5,6]cyclohepta(1,2-b]pyridin-11-ylidene)-piperidine (product from Preparative Example 1, step G), 0.46g(3 mmol) of 4-pyridyl acetic acid N-oxide (prepared as described in Preparative Example 8) 1-hydroxybenzotriazole (0.40g, 3 mmol) in 20 mL of DMF at ~ 4°C and under nitrogen atmosphere was added N- methyl morpholine(1.65 mL, 15 mmol) followed by 1-(3-dimethylaminopropyl)-3-ethylcarbodiimide hydrochloride salt (DEC) an reaction stirred overnight at room temperature. The volatiles were stripped off and the resulting semi-solid was partitioned between water and ethyl acetate. The aqueous phase was washed twice with ethyl acetate. Combined ethyl acetate fractions were dried over Na<sub>2</sub>SO<sub>4</sub> and concentrated. The crude product was purified via flash chromatography on silica gel (first eluting with 3% and then 5% methanol saturated with ammonia in methylene chloride) to give the title compound as a light brown solid(0.2g mp=128-130 °C MH<sup>+</sup>446).

EXAMPLE 228

4-(8-CHLORO-5,6-DIHYDRO-11H-BENZO-[5,6]CYCLOHEPTA[1,2-b]PYRIDIN-11-YLIDENE)-1-[(3-PYRIDINYL)ACETYL]PIPERIDINE N1 OXIDE

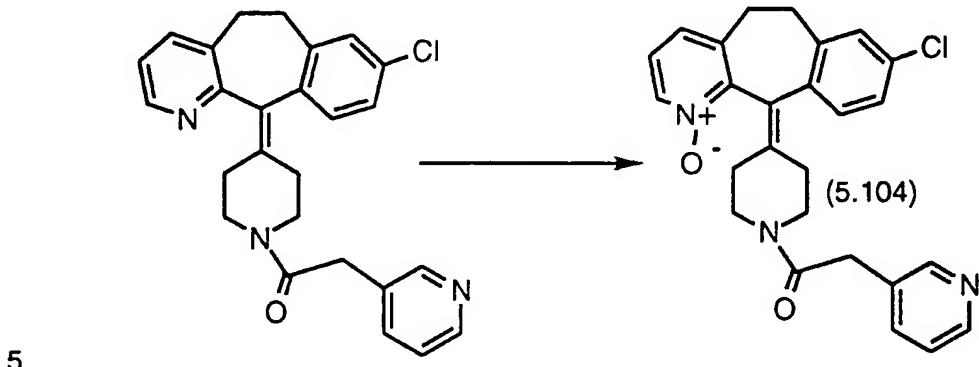


By essentially the same procedure as set forth in Example 227, but using 3-pyridyl acetic acid N-oxide (Preparative Example 9) instead of 4-pyridyl acetic acid N-oxidelthe title compound was obtained as a white solid (mp = 120-121°C, MH<sup>+</sup>=466).

- 148 -

EXAMPLE 229

4-(8-CHLORO-5,6-DIHYDRO-11H-BENZO-[5,6]CYCLOHEPTA[1,2-b]PYRIDIN-11-YLIDENE)-1-[(3-PYRIDINYL)ACETYL]- PIPERIDINE N4 OXIDE

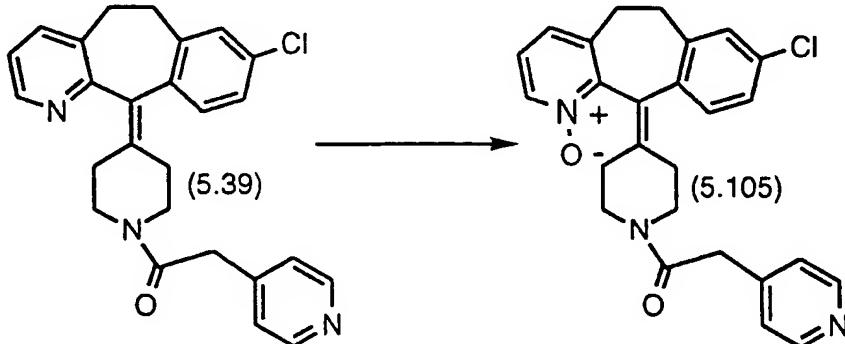


5

4-(8-chloro-5,6-dihydro-11H-benzo-[5,6]cyclohepta[1,2-b]pyridin-11-ylidene)-1-[(3-pyridinyl)acetyl]-piperidine (1.0g, 2.33mmol) was dissolved in dry methylene chloride(50mL) at -10°C. 3-Chloroperbenzoic acid (80-85% purity 1.1g, 5.13 mmol) was added and the reaction stirred at that temperature for 95 minutes. The reaction mixture was washed with sodium bisulfite and then with 10% NaOH. The organic phase was dried over magnesium sulfate and then concentrated. Purification on silica gel eluting, first with 4%, 6% and then 10% methanol in methylene chloride gave rise to the title compound as a white solid (0.2g, 0.77 mmol  
10  
15  $MH^+=446$ ).

EXAMPLE 230

4-(8-CHLORO-5,6-DIHYDRO-11H-BENZO-[5,6]CYCLOHEPTA[1,2-b]PYRIDIN-11-YLIDENE)-1-[(4-PYRIDINYL)ACETYL]- PIPERIDINE N4 OXIDE



By essentially the same procedures as set forth in Example 229 above, but using 4-(8-chloro-5,6-dihydro-11H-benzo-[5,6]cyclohepta[1,2-

- 149 -

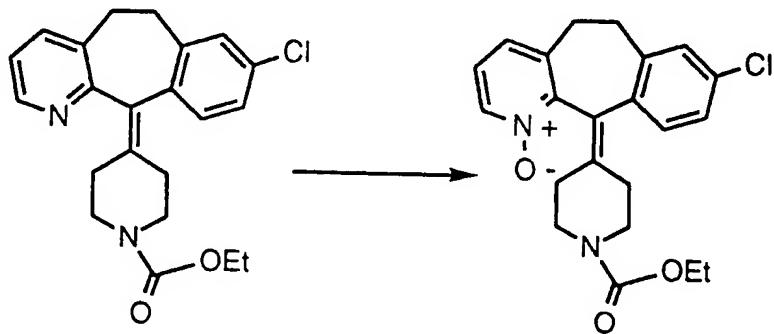
b]pyridin-11-ylidene)-1-[(4-pyridinyl)acetyl]-piperidine instead of 4-(8-chloro-5,6-dihydro-11H-benzo-[5,6]cyclohepta[1,2-b]pyridin-11-ylidene)-1-[(3-pyridinyl)acetyl]-piperidine the title compound was obtained as an off-white solid ( $MH^+=446$ ).

5

EXAMPLE 231

A. 8-CHLORO-11-(1-ETHOXCARBONYL-4-PIPERIDYL-IDENE)-6,11-DIHYDRO-5H-BENZO[5,6]CYCLOHEPTA[1,2-b]PYRIDINE N-OXIDE

10

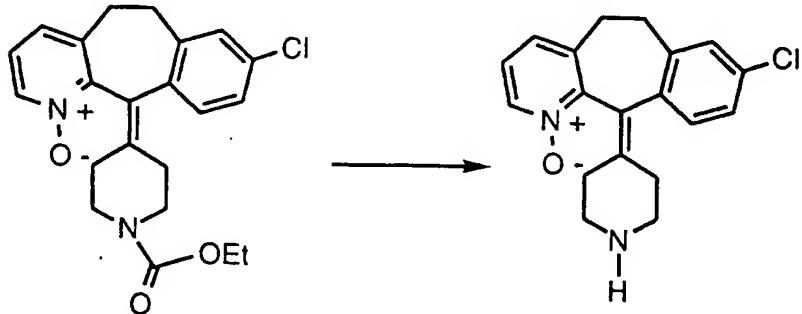


15

8-chloro-11-(1-ethoxycarbonyl-4-piperidylidene)-6,11-dihydro-5H-benzo[5,6]cyclohepta[1,2-b]pyridine (5g, 13.06 mmol) was dissolved in methylene chloride at -10°C. 3-Chlorobenzoic acid(4.9g, 15.67 mmol) was then added and the reaction mixture stirred for 95 minutes. The reaction mixture was taken up in methylene chloride and extracted with sodium bisulfite, 10% sodium hydroxide. The crude reaction product was purified on silica gel eluting first with 1% and then with 2% methanol in methylene chloride to give the title compound (2.7g,  $MH^+ 399$ ).

20

B. 8-CHLORO-11-(4-PIPERIDYLIDENE)-6,11-DIHYDRO-5H-BENZO[5,6]CYCLOHEPTA[1,2-b]PYRIDINE N-OXIDE

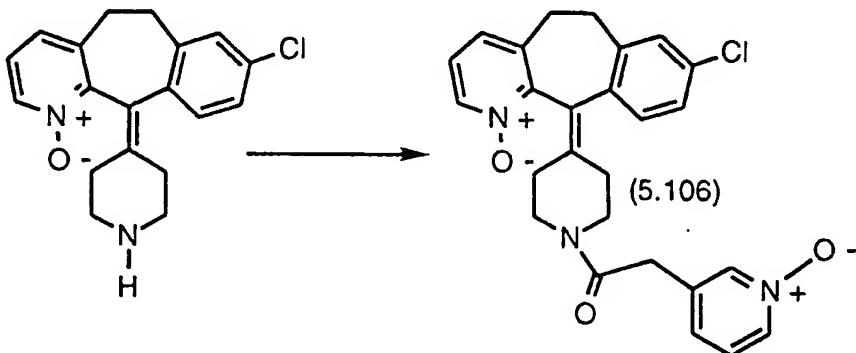


By essentially the same procedures as set forth in Preparative Example 1 step G, but using 8-chloro-11-(1-ethoxycarbonyl-4-

- 150 -

piperidylidene)-6,11-dihydro-5H-benzo[5,6]cyclohepta[1,2-b]pyridine N-oxide instead of 8-chloro-11-(1-ethoxycarbonyl-4-piperidylidene)-6,11-dihydro-5H-benzo[5,6]cyclohepta[1,2-b]pyridine, the title compound was obtained and used for the next reaction without further purification ( $MH^+ = 327$ ).

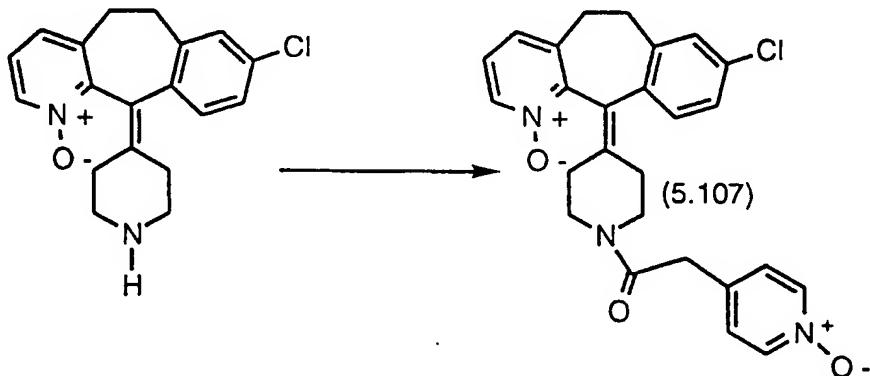
**C. 4-(8-CHLORO-5,6-DIHYDRO-11H-BENZO[5,6]CYCLOHEPTA(1,2-b)PYRIDIN-11-YLIDENE)-1-[(3-PYRIDINYL)ACETYL]-PIPERIDINE N1,N4 DIOXIDE**



By essentially the same procedure as set forth in Example 227, but using 3-pyridyl acetic acid N-oxide (Preparative Example 9) instead of 4-pyridyl acetic acid N-oxide and 8-chloro-11-(4-piperidylidene)-6,11-dihydro-5H-benzo[5,6]cyclohepta[1,2-b]pyridine N-oxide instead of 8-chloro-11-(4-piperidylidene)-6,11-dihydro-5H-benzo[5,6]cyclohepta[1,2-b]pyridine, the title compound was obtained as a white solid ( $mp=105-107^\circ C$ ,  $MH^+=462$ ).

**EXAMPLE 232**

**4-(8-CHLORO-5,6-DIHYDRO-11H-BENZO-[5,6]CYCLOHEPTA[1,2-b]PYRIDIN-11-YLIDENE)-1-[(4-PYRIDINYL)ACETYL]-PIPERIDINE N1,N4 DIOXIDE**

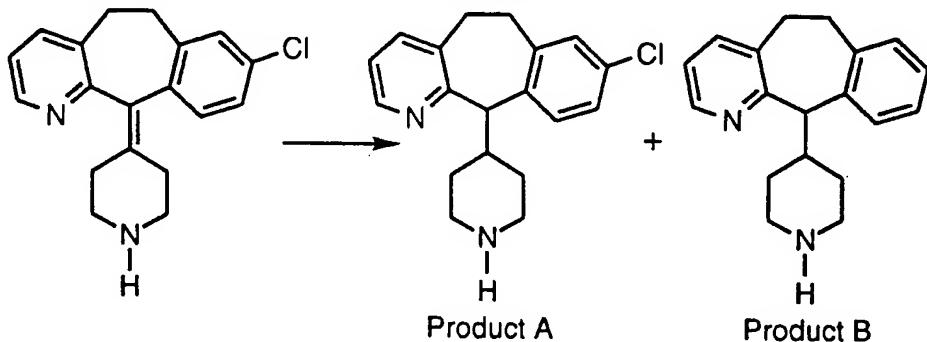


- 151 -

By essentially the same procedure as set forth in Example 227, but using 8-chloro-11-(4-piperidylidene)-6,11-dihydro-5H-benzo[5,6]cyclohepta[1,2-b]pyridine N-oxide instead of 8-chloro-11-(4-piperidylidene)-6,11-dihydro-5H-benzo[5,6]cyclohepta[1,2-b]pyridine, the title compound  
 5 was obtained as a light brown solid(  $MH^+=462$ ).

EXAMPLE 233

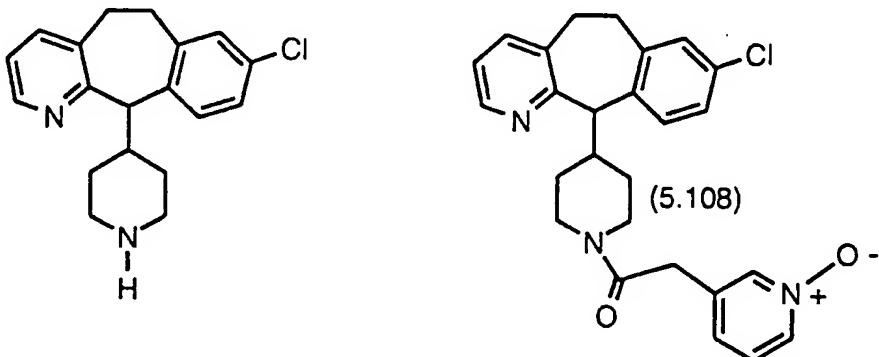
- A. 8-CHLORO-6,11-DIHYDRO-11-(4-PIPERIDINYL)-5H-BENZO[5,6]CYCLOHEPTA[1,2-b]PYRIDINE (Product A) and  
 10 6,11-DIHYDRO-11-(4-PIPERIDINYL)-5H-BENZO[5,6]-CYCLOHEPTA[1,2-b]PYRIDINE (Product B)



- To a solution 66.27g (0.21mole) of 4-(8-chloro-5,6-dihydro-11H-benzo[5,6]cyclohepta(1,2-b]pyridin-11-ylidene)-piperidine (product from  
 15 Preparative Example 1 Example, step G), in THF (1L) was added lithium aluminum hydride (24.32g, 0.64 mole) and the reaction mixture was heated to reflux overnight. The reaction mixture was then cooled to room temperature and ~ 3L of diethyl ether is added followed by dropwise addition of saturated sodium sulfate until a white gray precipitate forms.  
 20 Magnesium sulfate was then added to the separated organic layer and stirred for 30 minutes. All the volatiles were then removed and the resulting crude mixture was chromatographed on a silica gel column eluting with 10% methanol saturated with ammonia in methylene chloride. The material obtained contained both the desired compound and the des-  
 25 chloro compound. Separation on HPLC using reverse phase column and eluting with 40% methanol-water afforded the desired compounds as white solids (Product A's mp = 95.2-96.1°C, Product B's mp = 145.1-145.7°C).

- 152 -

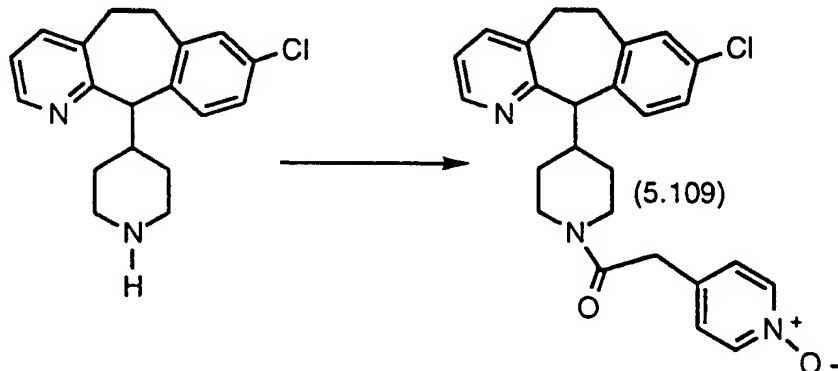
B. 4-(8-CHLORO-6,11-DIHYDRO-5H-BENZO[5,6]CYCLOHEPTA[1,2-b]PYRIDIN-11-YL)-1-[(3-PYRIDINYL)ACETYL]- PIPERIDINE N1 OXIDE



- 5 By essentially the same procedure as set forth in Example 227, but using 3-pyridyl acetic acid N-oxide(Preparative Example 9) instead of 4-pyridyl acetic acid N-oxide and 8-chloro-6,11-dihydro-11-(4-piperidinyl)-5H-benzo[5,6]cyclohepta[1,2-b]pyridine (product from Example 233A ) instead of 4-(8-chloro-5,6-dihydro-11H-benzo-[5,6]cyclohepta(1,2-
- 10 b]pyridin-11-ylidene)-piperidine, the title compound was obtained as a white solid (mp=117-118°C,  $MH^+=414$ ).

EXAMPLE 234

4-(8-CHLORO-6,11-DIHYDRO-5H-BENZO[5,6]CYCLOHEPTA(1,2-b]PYRIDIN-11-YL)-1-[(4-PYRIDINYL)ACETYL]- PIPERIDINE N1 OXIDE

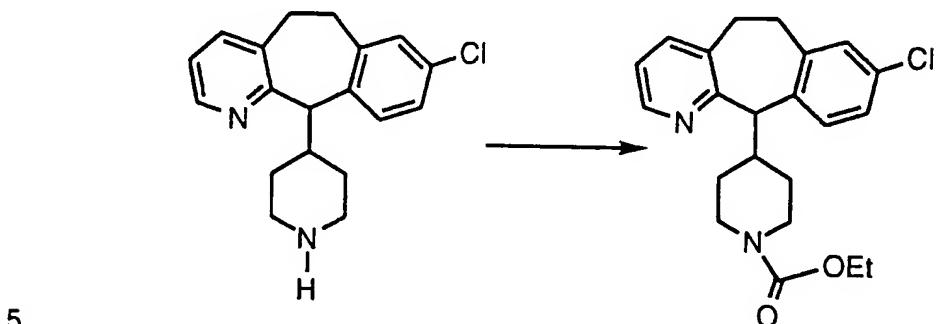


- By essentially the same procedure as set forth in Example 227, but using 8-chloro-6,11-dihydro-11-(4-piperidinyl)-5H-benzo[5,6]cyclohepta[1,2-b]pyridine (product from Example 233A) instead of 4-(8-chloro-5,6-dihydro-11H-benzo-[5,6]cyclohepta(1,2-b]pyridin-11-ylidene)-piperidine (product from Preparative Example 1, step G), the title compound was obtained as a white solid (mp=125-126°C,  $MH^+=414$ ).

- 153 -

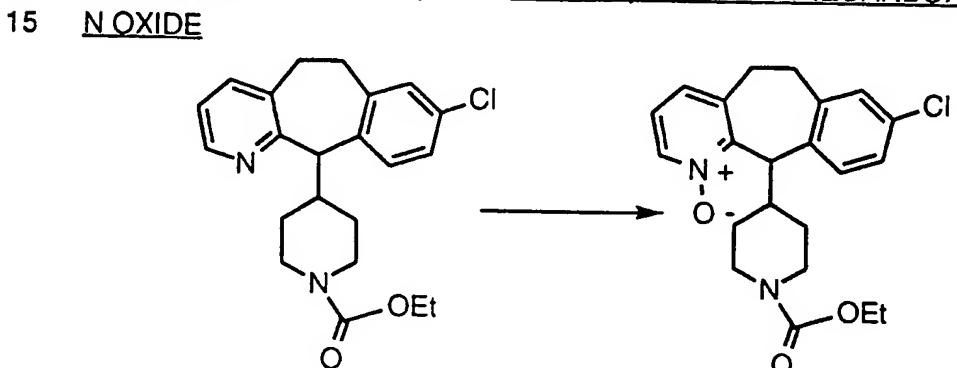
EXAMPLE 235

A. ETHYL 4-(8-CHLORO-6,11-DIHYDRO-5H-BENZO-[5,6]CYCLOHEPTA(1,2-b]PYRIDIN-11-YL)-1- PIPERIDINE-CARBOXYLATE



8-Chloro-6,11-dihydro-11-(4-piperidinyl)-5H-benzo[5,6]cyclohepta-[1,2-b]pyridine (product from Example 233A) (4.18g, 13mmol) was dissolved in toluene (175mL). Ethyl chloroformate(11.6g,110 mmol, 10.2 mL) was then added and the reaction mixture was heated to ~120°C overnight. All volatiles were stripped off and the crude product was purified on silica gel column eluting with 50% ethyl acetate- hexanes to give the title compound as a white solid( $MH^+ = 385$ ).

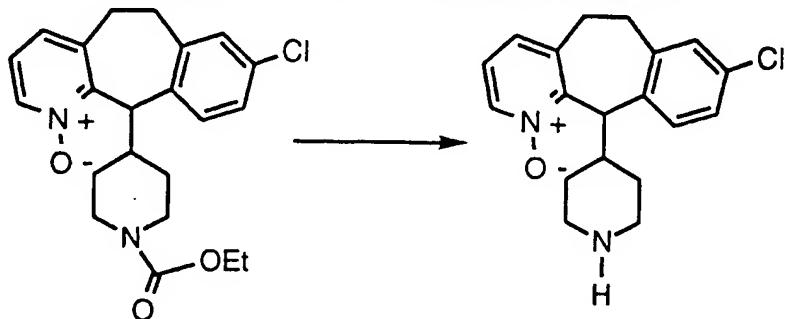
B. ETHYL 4-(8-CHLORO-6,11-DIHYDRO-5H-BENZO-[5,6]CYCLOHEPTA(1,2-b]PYRIDIN-11-YL)-1-PIPERIDINECARBOXYLATE N OXIDE



By essentially the same procedure as set forth in Example 231, but using ethyl 4-(8-chloro-6,11-dihydro-5H-benzo-[5,6]cyclohepta(1,2-b]pyridin-11-yl)-1-piperidinecarboxylate (product from Example 235A) instead of 8-chloro-11-(1-ethoxycarbonyl-4-piperidylidene)-6,11-dihydro-5H-benzo[5,6]cyclohepta[1,2-b]pyridine, the title compound was obtained as a white solid ( $mp= 81.7\text{-}82.5^\circ C$ ,  $MH^+=400$ ).

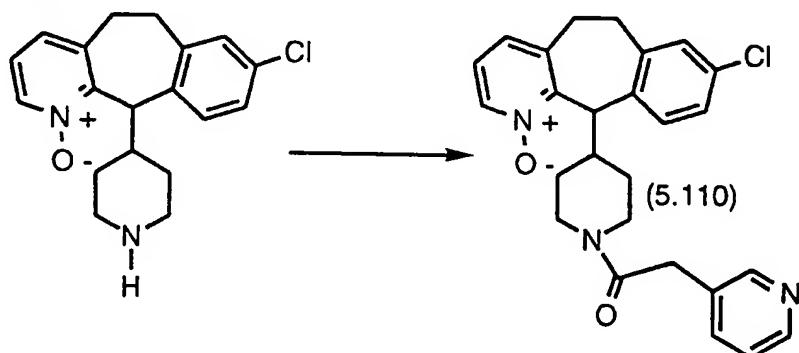
- 154 -

C. 4-(8-CHLORO-6,11-DIHYDRO-5H-BENZO-[5,6]CYCLOHEPTA(1,2-b]PYRIDIN-11-YL)-1- PIPERIDINE N OXIDE



By essentially the same procedure as set forth in Preparative

- 5 Example 1 step G, but using ethyl 4-(8-chloro-6,11-dihydro-5H-benzo-[5,6]cyclohepta[1,2-b]pyridin-11-yl)-1-piperidinecarboxylate N1 oxide (product from Example 235B) instead of 8-chloro-11-(1-ethoxycarbonyl-4-piperidylidene)-6,11-dihydro-5H-benzo[5,6]cyclohepta[1,2-b]pyridine, the title compound was obtained as a solid ( $MH^+=329$ ).
- 10 D. 4-(8-CHLORO-6,11-DIHYDRO-5H-BENZO[5,6]CYCLOHEPTA(1,2-b]PYRIDIN-11-YL)-1-[(3-PYRIDINYL)ACETYL]- PIPERIDINE N4 OXIDE



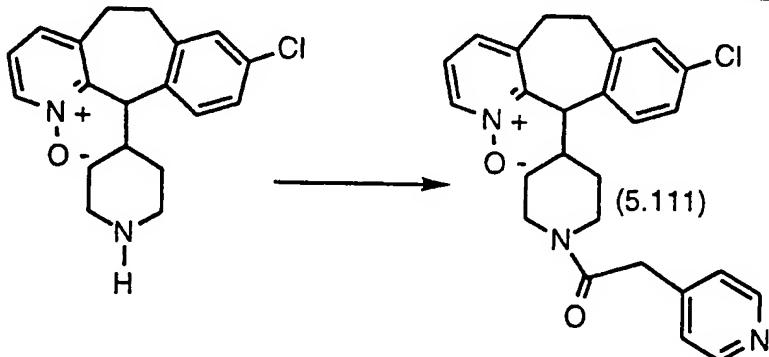
By essentially the same procedure as set forth in Example 227, but

- 15 using 3-pyridyl acetic acid instead of 4-pyridyl acetic acid N-oxide and 4-(8-chloro-6,11-dihydro-5H-benzo-[5,6]cyclohepta[1,2-b]pyridin-11-yl)-1-piperidine N oxide (product from Example 235C) instead of 4-(8-chloro-5,6-dihydro-11H-benzo-[5,6]cyclohepta[1,2-b]pyridin-11-ylidene)-piperidine, the title compound was obtained as a white solid (mp=61.8-62.3°C,  $MH^+=448$ ).
- 20

- 155 -

EXAMPLE 236

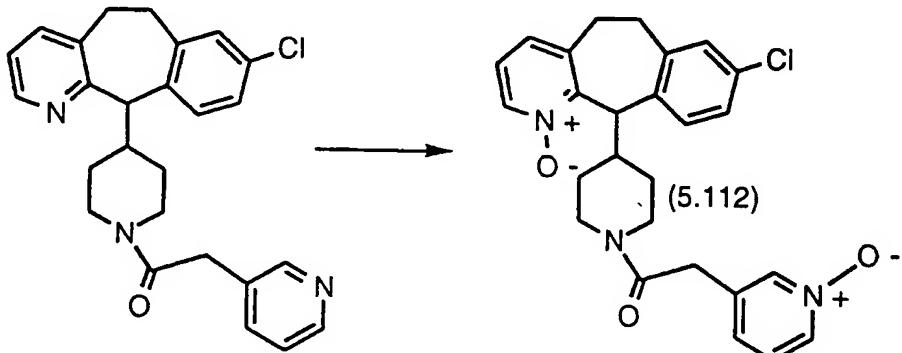
4-(8-CHLORO-6,11-DIHYDRO-5H-BENZO-[5,6]CYCLOHEPTA(1,2-b]PYRIDIN-11-YL)-1-[(4-PYRIDINYL)ACETYL]- PIPERIDINE N4 OXIDE



- 5 By essentially the same procedure as set forth in Example 227, but using 4-pyridyl acetic acid instead of 4-pyridyl acetic acid N-oxide and 4-(8-chloro-6,11-dihydro-5H-benzo-[5,6]cyclohepta(1,2-b]pyridin-11-yl)-1-piperidine N oxide (product from Example 235C) instead of 4-(8-chloro-5,6-dihydro-11H-benzo-[5,6]cyclohepta[1,2-b]pyridin-11-ylidene)-piperidine, the title compound was obtained as a white solid (mp=116.7-117.6°C, MH<sup>+</sup>=448).
- 10

EXAMPLE 237

4-(8-CHLORO-6,11-DIHYDRO-5H-BENZO-[5,6]CYCLOHEPTA(1,2-b]PYRIDIN-11-YL)-1-[(3-PYRIDINYL)ACETYL]- PIPERIDINE N1, N4 OXIDE



- 15
- 20
- 4-(8-Chloro-6,11-dihydro-5H-benzo-[5,6]cyclohepta(1,2-b]pyridin-11-yl)-1-[(3-pyridinyl)acetyl]-piperidine, from Example 82A, (0.5g, 1.2mmol) was dissolved in methylene chloride at about -18°C. 3-Chloroperbenzoic acid (0.62g, 3.6 mmol) was added and the reaction stirred for 1.5 hours. The reaction mixture was extracted with 10% sodium bisulfite, 10% sodium hydroxide and then dried with magnesium sulfate, filtered

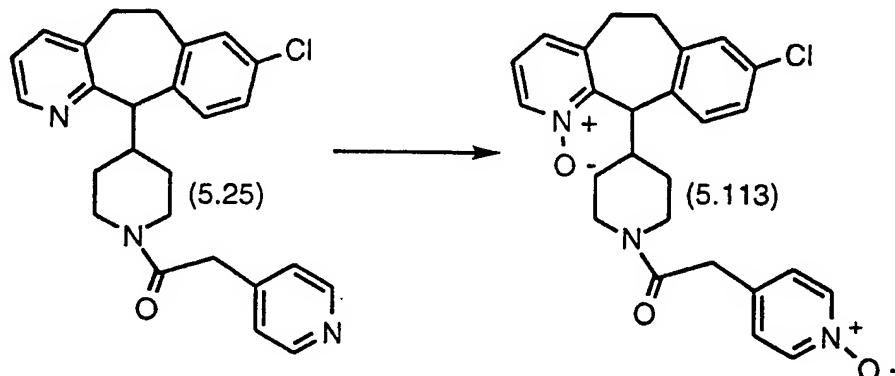
- 156 -

and concentrated. The crude product was purified on silica gel eluting with 7% methanol saturated with ammonia in methylene chloride to give the title compound as a white solid(0.51g, 91% yield  $MH^+ = 464$ ).

5

EXAMPLE 238

4-(8-CHLORO-6,11-DIHYDRO-5H-BENZO-[5,6]CYCLOHEPTA(1,2-b]PYRIDIN-11-YL)-1-[(4-PYRIDINYL)ACETYL]- PIPERIDINE N1, N4 OXIDE

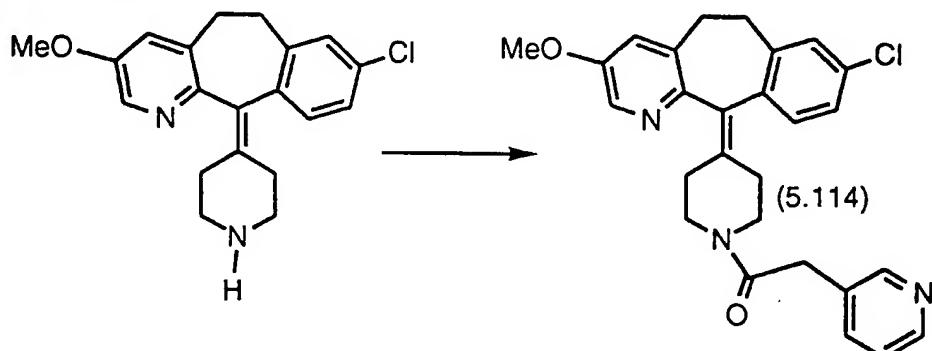


10 By essentially the same procedure as set forth in Example 237, but using 4-(8-chloro-6,11-dihydro-5H-benzo-[5,6]cyclohepta[1,2-b]pyridin-11-yl)-1-[(4-pyridinyl)acetyl]-piperidine (product from Example 82 ) instead of 4-(8-chloro-6,11-dihydro-5H-benzo-[5,6]cyclohepta[1,2-b]pyridin-11-yl)-1-[(3-pyridinyl)acetyl]-piperidine, the title compound was obtained as a  
15 white solid ( $mp=85-85.6\text{ }^\circ\text{C}$ ,  $MH^+=464$ ).

EXAMPLE 239

4-(8-CHLORO-3-METHOXY-5,6-DIHYDRO-11H-BENZO[5,6]-CYCLOHEPTA[1,2-b]PYRIDIN-11-YLIDENE)-1-[(3-PYRIDINYL)ACETYL]- PIPERIDINE

20

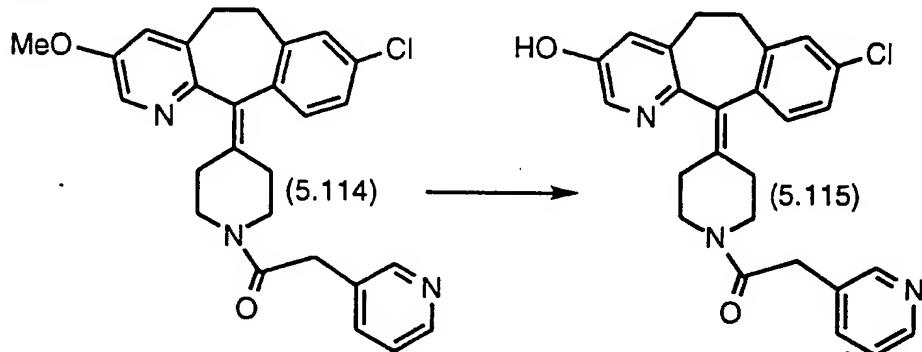


- 157 -

By essentially the same procedure as set forth in Example 180, but using 8-chloro-3-methoxy-11-(4-piperidylidene)-6,11-dihydro-5H-benzo[5,6]-cyclohepta[1,2-b]pyridine (Preparative Example 20) instead of 3,8-dichloro-11-(1-acetyl-4-piperidylidene)-6,11-dihydro-5H-benzo[5,6]-cyclohepta[1,2-b]pyridine the title compound was obtained as a white solid ( $MH^+$  460).

EXAMPLE 240

10 4-(8-CHLORO-3-HYDROXY-5,6-DIHYDRO-11H-BENZO[5,6]-CYCLOHEPTA[1,2-b]PYRIDIN-11-YLIDENE)-1-[(3-PYRIDINYL]ACETYL]-PIPERIDINE

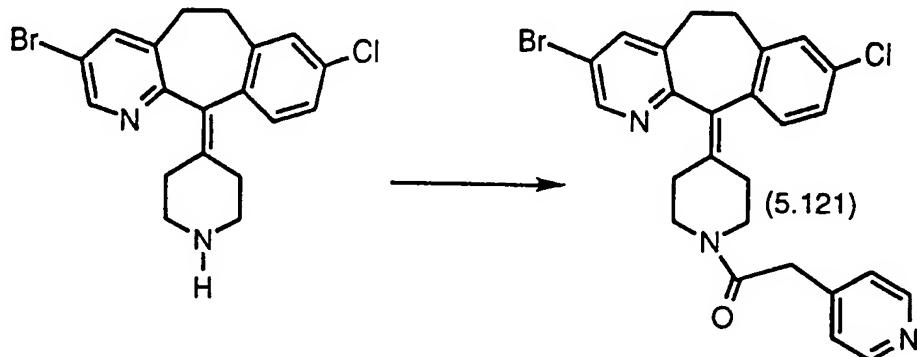


15 4-(8-Chloro-3-methoxy-5,6-dihydro-11H-benzo[5,6]cyclohepta[1,2-b]pyridin-11-ylidene)-1-[(3-pyridinyl]acetyl]-piperidine (0.24g, 0.54 mmol) (Example 239) was dissolved in methylene chloride at 0°C under nitrogen atmosphere. Bromine tribromide(0.9g, 3.6 mmol, 3.6 mL) was added and the reaction was run at room temperature for two days. The reaction mixture was concentrated and chromatographed on a silica gel column 20 eluting with 3% methanol saturated with ammonia in methylene chloride to give an off white borate salt solid (0.14g, 61% yield,  $MH^+$  446).

- 158 -

EXAMPLE 246

1-1(4-PYRIDINYLACETYL)-4-[3-BROMO8-CHLORO5,6-DIHYDRO-11H-BENZO[5,6]CYCLOHEPTA[1,2-b]PYRIDIN-11YLIDENE]-PIPERIDINE

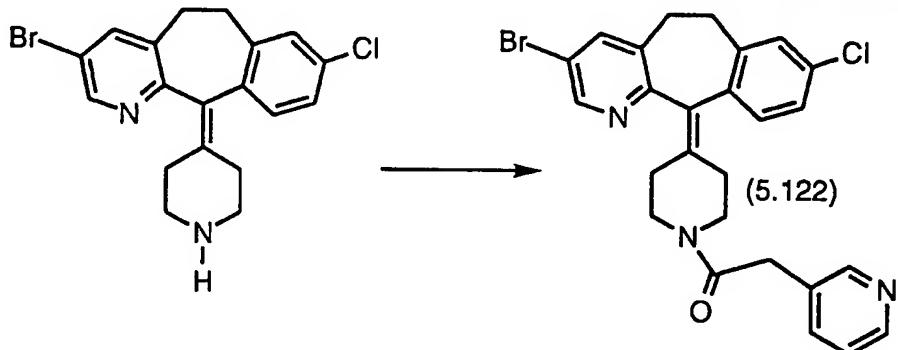


- 5 By essentially the same procedure as set forth in Example 180 but using 4-(3-bromo-8-chloro-5,6-dihydro-11H-benzo[5,6]cyclohepta(1,2-b]pyridin-11-ylidene)-piperidine instead of 4-(3,8-dichloro-5,6-dihydro-11H-benzo-[5,6]cyclohepta(1,2-b]pyridin-11-ylidene)-piperidine, the title compound was obtained as a glassy solid (MH<sup>+</sup> 508).

10

EXAMPLE 247

1-1(3-PYRIDINYLACETYL)-4-[3-BROMO8-CHLORO5,6-DIHYDRO-11H-BENZO[5,6]CYCLOHEPTA[1,2-b]PYRIDIN-11YLIDENE]-PIPERIDINE



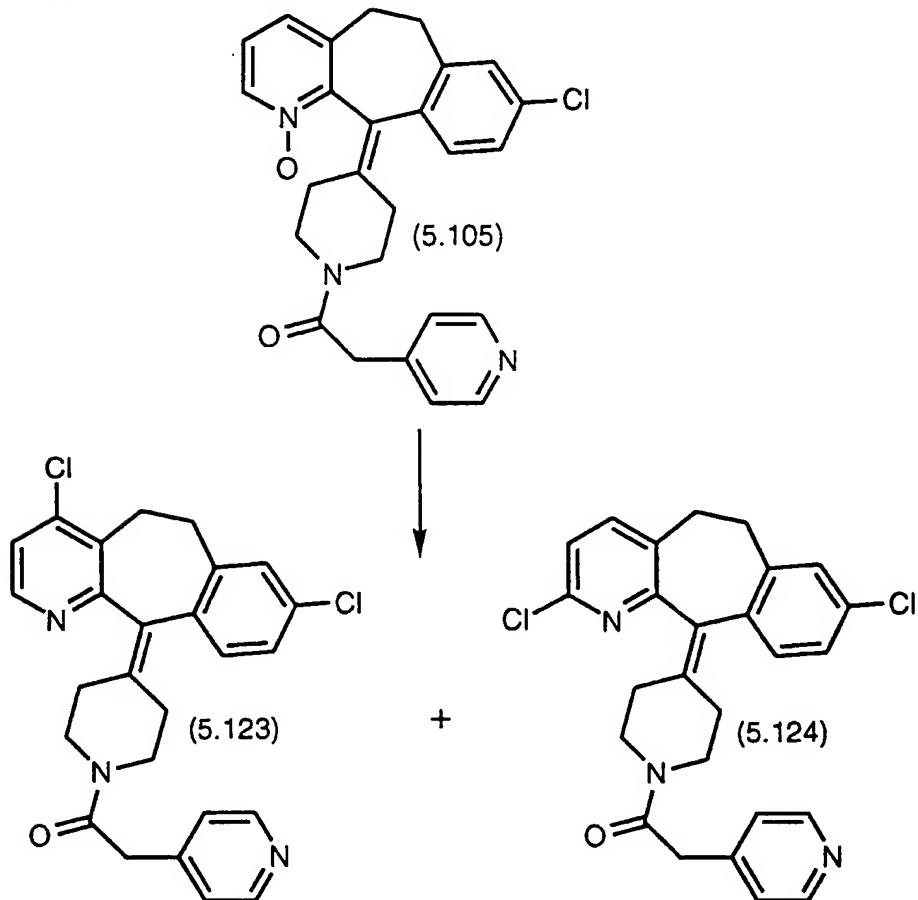
- 15 By essentially the same procedure as set forth in Example 180, but using 4-(3-bromo-8-chloro-5,6-dihydro-11H-benzo[5,6]cyclohepta(1,2-b]pyridin-11-ylidene)-piperidine instead of 4-(3,8-dichloro-5,6-dihydro-11H-benzo[5,6]cyclohepta(1,2-b]pyridin-11-ylidene)-piperidine and 3-pyridyl acetic acid instead of 4-pyridyl acetic acid, the title compound was obtained as a white solid (mp=92-93°C MH<sup>+</sup> 508).
- 20

- 159 -

EXAMPLE 248

4-[4,8-DICHLORO-5,6-DIHYDRO-11H-BENZO[5,6]CYCLOHEPTA-[1,2-b]PYRIDIN-11-YLIDENE]-1-(4-PYRIDINYLACETYL)-PIPERIDINE and  
4-[2,8-DICHLORO-5,6-DIHYDRO-11H-BENZO[5,6]CYCLOHEPTA-[1,2-b]PYRIDIN-11-YLIDENE]-1-(4-PYRIDINYLACETYL)-PIPERIDINE

5

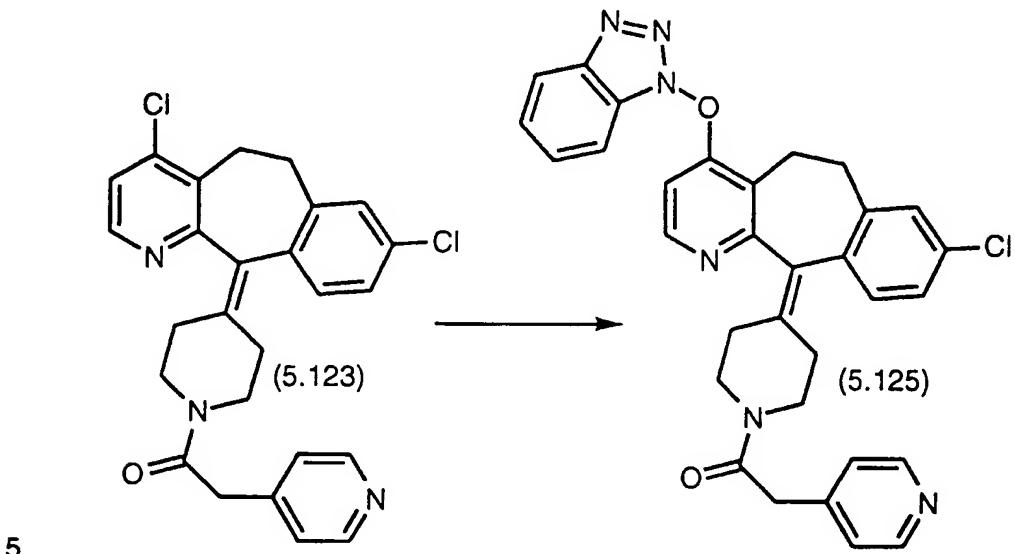


A solution of the title compound from Example 230 (1.7 grams) and phosphorous oxychloride (21 mL) dissolved in chloroform (12 mL) was stirred at reflux for 1 hour. Concentration *in vacuo* provided a residue  
10 which was diluted with dichloromethane and washed with saturated aqueous sodium bicarbonate and brine. The organic phase was dried over anhydrous magnesium sulfate, concentrated *in vacuo*, and purified by flash column chromatography (silica gel) using 2% methanol-dichloromethane to afford the title 4,8-dichloro compound (0.34 grams, 20% yield, mp 84-91 °C, MH<sup>+</sup> 464) and the title 2,8-dichloro compound  
15 (0.18 grams, 11% yield, mp 163.8-164.6 °C, MH<sup>+</sup> 464).

- 160 -

EXAMPLE 249

4-[4-[(1H-BENZOTRIAZOL-1-YL)OXY]-8-CHLORO-5,6-DIHYDRO-11H-BENZO[5,6]CYCLOHEPTA[1,2-b]PYRIDIN-11-YLIDENE]-1-(4-PYRIDINYLACETYL)-PIPERIDINE



5

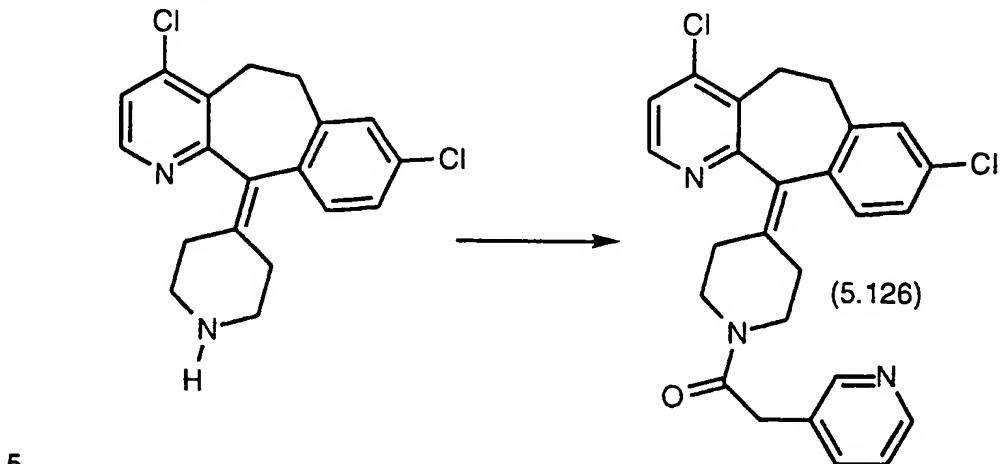
A mixture of the 4,8-dichloro compound from Example 248 (0.5 grams), 1-hydroxybenzotriazole hydrate (0.4 grams) and anhydrous dimethylformamide (20 mL) was stirred at 25°C under N<sub>2</sub> for 5 days. The mixture was concentrated *in vacuo*, diluted with dichloromethane, and washed with 1*N* aqueous sodium hydroxide. The organic phase was dried over anhydrous magnesium sulfate, concentrated *in vacuo* and purified by flash column chromatography (silica gel) using 3-5% methanol-dichloromethane to give the title compound (0.58 grams, 96%, mp 98.6-101.6 °C, MH<sup>+</sup> 563).

15

- 161 -

EXAMPLE 250

4-[4,8-DICHLORO-5,6-DIHYDRO-11H-BENZO[5,6]CYCLO-  
HEPTA[1,2-b]PYRIDIN-11-YLIDENE]-1-(3-PYRIDINYLACETYL)-  
PIPERIDINE



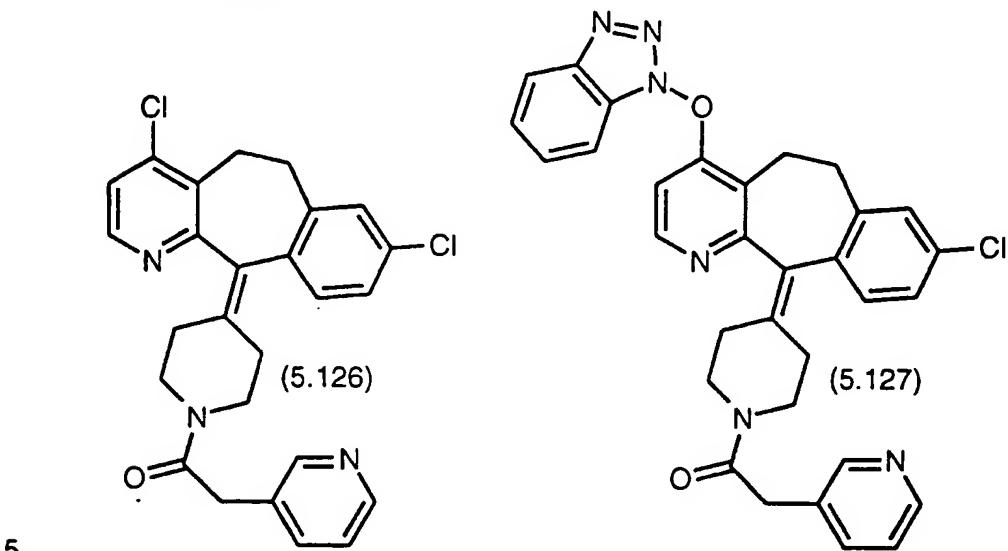
- 5 A mixture of the 4,8-dichloro product from Preparative Example 28 (1.91 grams), 3-pyridylacetic acid hydrochloride (2.1 grams), 1-(3-dimethylaminopropyl)-3-ethyl carbodiimide hydrochloride (1.6 grams), 4-methylmorpholine (1.4 mL) and anhydrous dimethylformamide (100 mL)
- 10 was stirred at 25 °C overnight. Concentration *in vacuo* provided a residue which was diluted with dichloromethane and water. The organic phase was dried over anhydrous magnesium sulfate and concentrated *in vacuo* to provide the title compound (2.2 grams, 87%, mp 59.8-63.5 °C, MH<sup>+</sup> 464).

15

- 162 -

EXAMPLE 251

4-[4-[(1H-BENZOTRIAZOL-1-YL)OXY]-8-CHLORO-5,6-DIHYDRO-11H-BENZO[5,6]CYCLOHEPTA[1,2-b]PYRIDIN-11-YLIDENE]-1-(3-PYRIDINYLACETYL)-PIPERIDINE



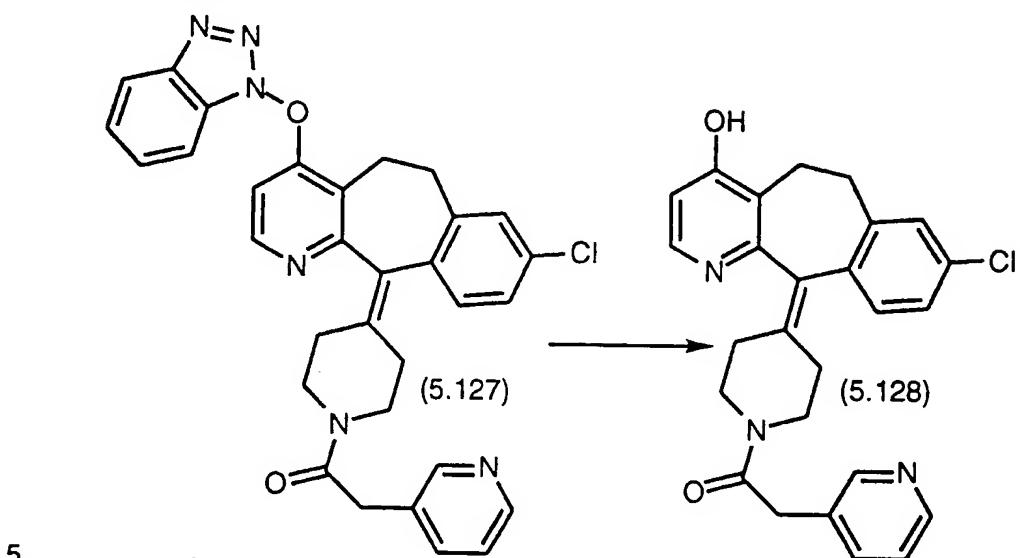
5

The 4,8-dichloro compound from Example 250 (0.8 grams) was added to a solution of 1-hydroxybenzotriazole hydrate (1.2 grams) and sodium hydride (0.14 grams, 60% in mineral oil) in anhydrous dimethylformamide (60 mL). The resulting solution was irradiated with a 200 W lamp while stirring at 25°C for 60 hours. The solution was poured into 1N aqueous sodium hydroxide while stirring and an additional 400 mL of water was added to the resulting mixture. Filtration provided a solid which was washed with water several times. The solid was dissolved in dichloromethane-acetone, dried over anhydrous magnesium sulfate, and concentrated in vacuo to provide the title compound (0.87 grams, 90%, mp = 120-122°C, MH<sup>+</sup> 563).

- 163 -

### EXAMPLE 252

4-[4-HYDROXY-8-CHLORO-5,6-DIHYDRO-11H-BENZO[5,6]-CYCLOHEPTA[1,2-b]PYRIDIN-11-YLIDENE]-1-(3-PYRIDINYLAACETYL)-PIPERIDINE

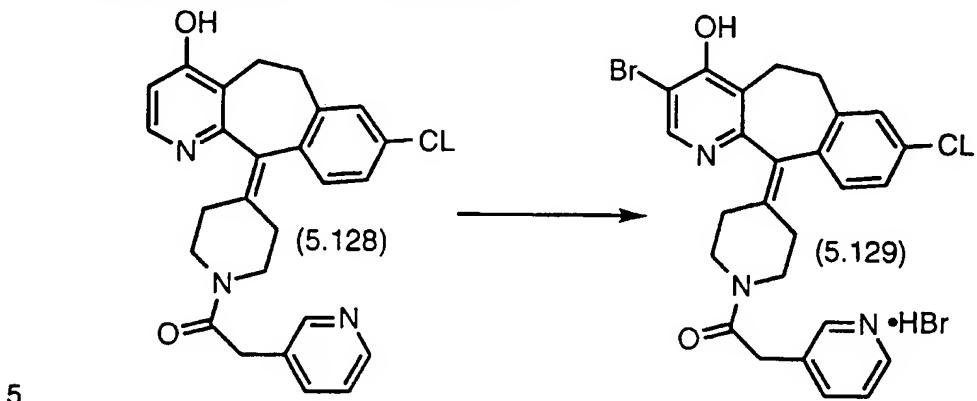


5 To a solution of the title compound form Example 251 (0.8 grams) and glacial acetic acid (30 mL) was added zinc dust (0.4 grams). After stirring at 25°C for 18 hour, the mixture was filtered through celite and the filtrate concentrated *in vacuo*. The residue was diluted with ethyl acetate, washed with saturated aqueous sodium bicarbonate and brine. The organic layer was separated, dried over magnesium sulfate and concentrated *in vacuo* to give the title compound (Yield 0.346 grams, 10 58%, MH<sup>+</sup> 446).

- 164 -

### EXAMPLE 253

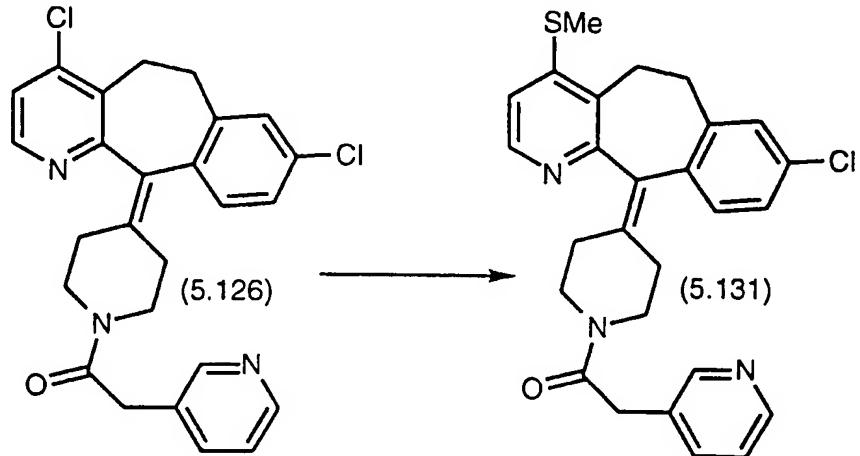
4-[3-BROMO-4-HYDROXY-8-CHLORO-5,6-DIHYDRO-11H-BENZO[5,6]CYCLOHEPTA[1,2-b]PYRIDIN-11-YLIDENE]-1-(3-PYRIDINYLACETYL)-PIPERIDINE



To a solution of the title compound from Example 252 (0.19 grams) and glacial acetic acid (4 mL) was added a 0.7 M bromine-acetic acid solution (0.7 mL) at 25°C under N<sub>2</sub>. After 10 minutes, water was added and the resulting solid was filtered and washed with water several times and dried to give the title compound (0.18 grams, 71%, MH<sup>+</sup> 526).

### EXAMPLE 255

4-[8-CHLORO-4-(METHYLTHIO)-5,6-DIHYDRO-11H-BENZO[5,6]CYCLOHEPTA[1,2-b]PYRIDIN-11-YLIDENE]-1-(3-PYRIDINYLACETYL)-PIPERIDINE



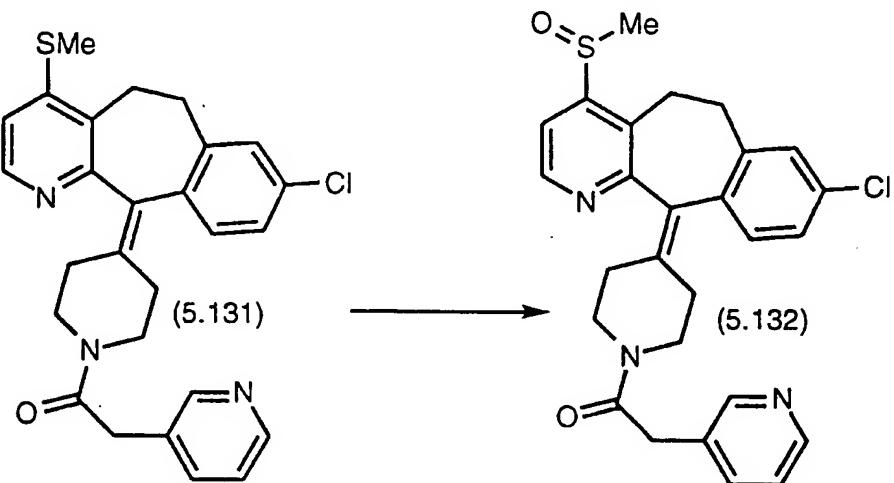
A mixture of the title compound from Example 250 (0.26 grams), sodium methylthiolate (0.06 grams) and anhydrous dimethylformamide (10 mL) was stirred while being irradiated with a 200 W lamp for 1 hour.

- 165 -

irradiation, the mixture was concentrated *in vacuo*, diluted with dichloromethane, and washed with 1*N* aqueous sodium hydroxide and brine. The organic phase was dried over anhydrous magnesium sulfate and concentrated *in vacuo* to afford the title compound as a white foam (0.3 grams, 100%, MH<sup>+</sup> 476).

### EXAMPLE 256

4-[8-CHLORO-4-(METHYLSULFINYL)-5,6-DIHYDRO-1H-BENZO[5,6]CYCLOHEPTA[1,2-b]PYRIDIN-11-YLIDENE]-1-(3-PYRIDINYLACETYL)-PIPERIDINE

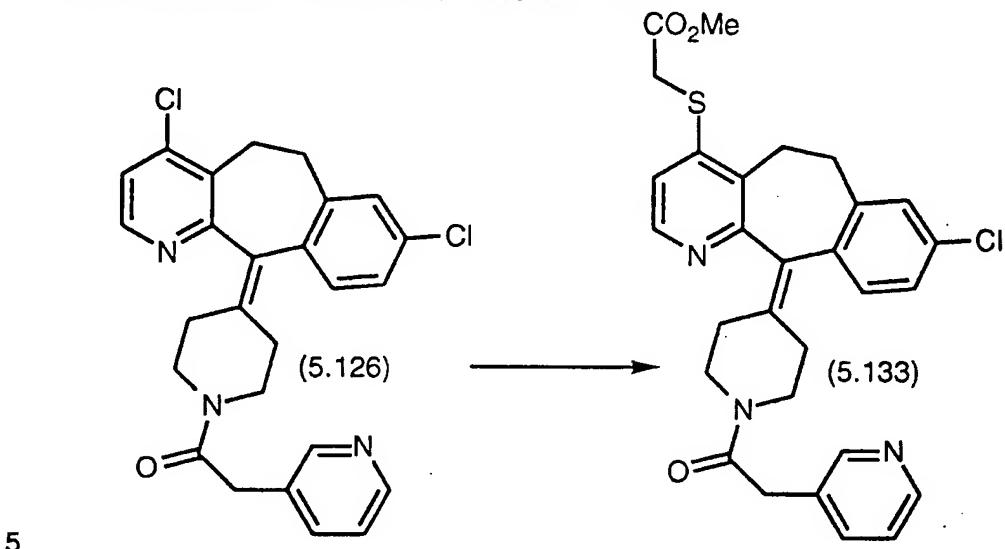


To the title compound from Example 255 (0.18 grams) dissolved in anhydrous tetrahydrofuran (10 mL) was added 30% aqueous hydrogen peroxide (3 mL) and the resulting solution was stirred for 12 hours at 15 73°C. The solution was concentrated *in vacuo*, diluted with dichloromethane, and washed with water. The organic phase was dried over anhydrous magnesium sulfate and concentrated *in vacuo* to afford the title compound after preparative plate chromatography (silica gel) using 3% methanol-dichloromethane (0.04 grams, 26%, MH<sup>+</sup> 492).

- 166 -

### EXAMPLE 257

METHYL [[8-CHLORO-6,11-DIHYDRO-11-[1-[1-OXO-2-(3-PYRIDINYL)ETHYL]-4-PIPERIDINYLDENE]-5H-BENZO[5,6]CYCLOHEPTA[1,2-b]PYRIDIN-4-YL]THIO]ACETATE

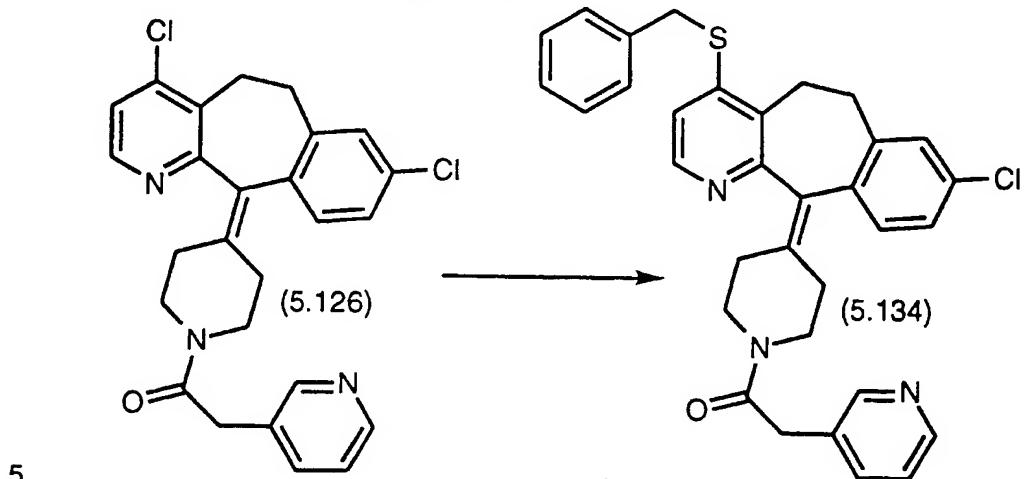


5 A mixture of the title compound from Example 250 (0.26 grams),  
sodium hydride (0.08 grams, 60% in mineral oil), methyl thioglycolate  
10 (0.19 mL) and anhydrous dimethylformamide (15 mL) was stirred while  
being irradiated with a 200 W lamp for 16 hours. The mixture was diluted  
with methanol, concentrated *in vacuo*, diluted with dichloromethane and  
water, and washed with 1*N* aqueous sodium hydroxide and brine. The  
organic phase was dried over anhydrous magnesium sulfate and  
concentrated *in vacuo* and the residue purified by preparative plate  
15 chromatography (silica gel) using 3% methanol-dichloromethane to afford  
the title compound (0.05 grams, 15%, MH<sup>+</sup> 534).

- 167 -

EXAMPLE 258

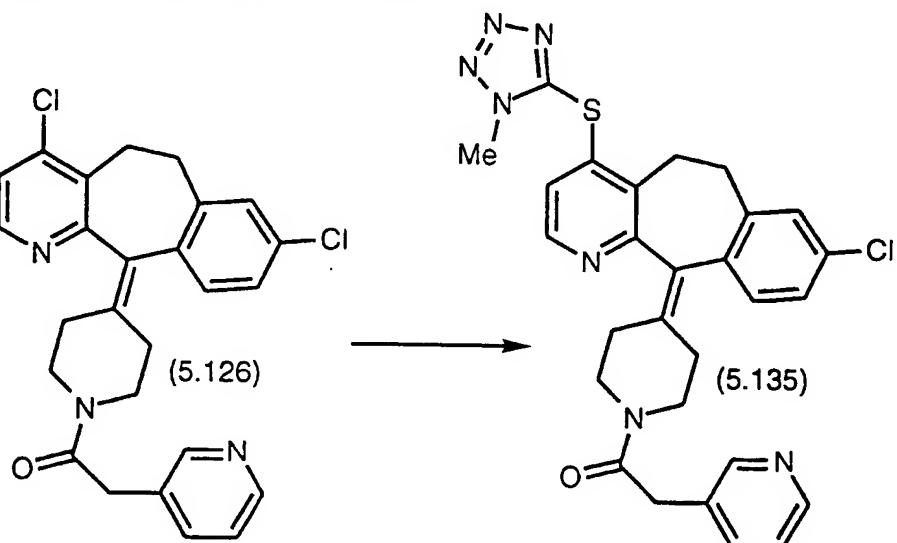
4-[8-CHLORO-5,6-DIHYDRO-4-(PHENYLMETHYLTHIO)-11H-BENZO[5,6]CYCLOHEPTA[1,2-b]PYRIDIN-11-YLIDENE]-1-(3-PYRIDINYLACETYL)-PIPERIDINE



A mixture of the title compound from Example 250 (0.25 grams), sodium hydride (0.11 grams, 60% in mineral oil), benzyl mercaptan (0.13 mL) and anhydrous dimethylformamide (15 mL) was stirred while being irradiated with a 200 W lamp for 10 days. Isolation and purification as in Example 257 provided the title compound (0.02 grams, 8%,  $MH^+$  552).

EXAMPLE 259

4-[8-CHLORO-5,6-DIHYDRO-4-[(2-METHYL-2H-TETRAZOL-5-YL)THIO]-11H-BENZO[5,6]CYCLOHEPTA[1,2-b]PYRIDIN-11-YLIDENE]-1-(3-PYRIDINYLACETYL)-PIPERIDINE

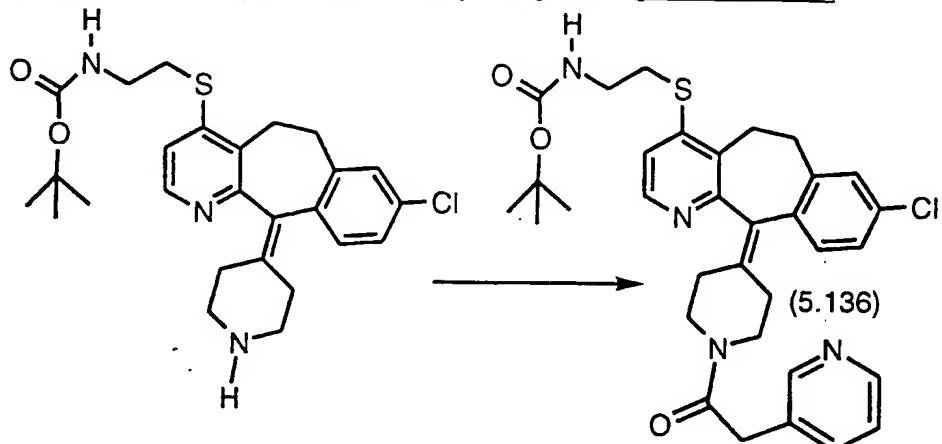


- 168 -

A mixture of the title compound from Example 250 (0.24 grams), 5-mercaptop-1-methyltetrazole sodium salt (0.6 grams) and anhydrous dimethylformamide (10 mL) was stirred while being irradiated with a 200 W lamp for 10 days. Isolation and purification as in Example 257 provided  
 5 the title compound (0.2 grams, 68%,  $MH^+$  544).

EXAMPLE 260

1,1-DIMETHYLETHYL [2-[(8-CHLORO-6,11-DIHYDRO-11-[1-[1-OXO-2-(3-PYRIDINYL)ETHYL]4-PIPERIDINYLDENE]-5H-BENZO[5,6]-10 CYCLOHEPTA[1,2-b]PYRIDIN-4-YL]THIO]ETHYL] CARBAMATE

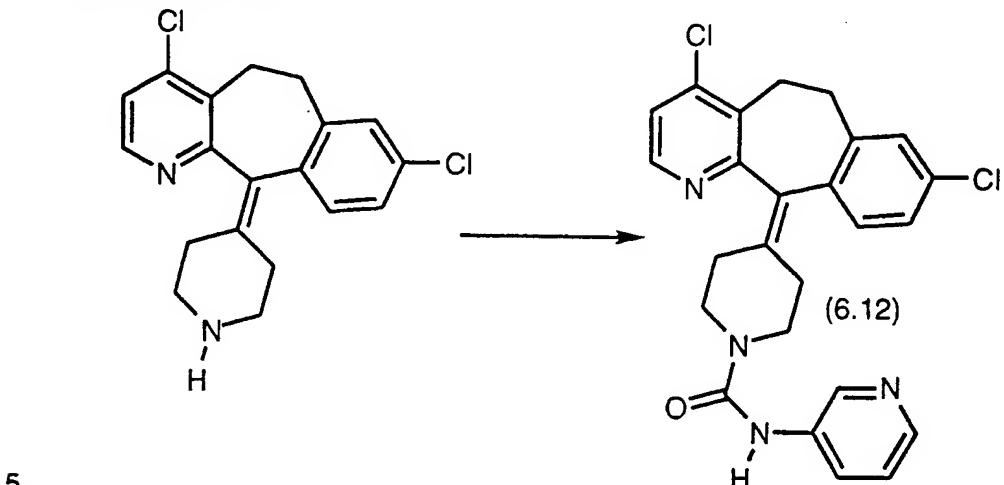


A mixture of the title compound from Preparative Example 32 (0.032 grams), 3-pyridylacetic acid hydrochloride (0.05 grams), 1-(3-dimethylaminopropyl)-3-ethyl carbodiimide hydrochloride (0.03 grams),  
 15 triethylamine (0.08 mL) and anhydrous dimethylformamide (4 mL) was stirred at 25 °C for 48 hours. Concentration *in vacuo* provided a residue which was diluted with dichloromethane and washed with 1*N* aqueous sodium hydroxide. The organic phase was dried over anhydrous magnesium sulfate and concentrated *in vacuo* to provide the title  
 20 compound (0.02 grams, 50%, mp 59.8-63.5 °C,  $MH^+$  605).

- 169 -

EXAMPLE 261

4-(4,8-DICHLORO-5,6-DIHYDRO-11H-BENZO[5,6]CYCLO-  
HEPTA[1,2-b]PYRIDIN-11-YLIDENE)-N-(3-PYRIDYL)-1-PIPERIDINE-  
CARBOXAMIDE



A portion of the stock solution of 3-pyridylisocyanate (32 mL) prepared as described in Preparative Example 33 was added to the 4,8-dichloro product from Preparative Example 28 (1.37 grams) and the mixture was stirred at 25°C for 4 days. The mixture was evaporated to dryness and the residue was taken up in dichloromethane and washed with saturated aqueous sodium bicarbonate and then water. The organic solution was dried over magnesium sulfate, filtered and evaporated to dryness. The residue was purified by flash column chromatography silica gel) using 2% methanol-dichloromethane as eluent to give the title compound (Yield 1.25 grams, 70%, MH+ 465).

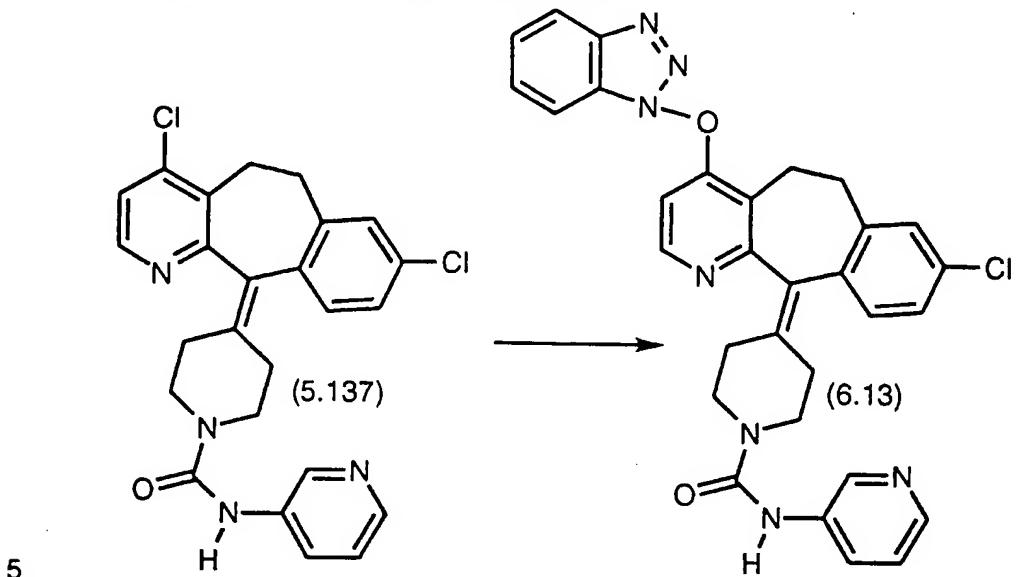
10

15

- 170 -

### EXAMPLE 262

4-[4-[(1H-BENZOTRIAZOL-1-YL)OXY]-8-CHLORO-5,6-DIHYDRO-11H-BENZO[5,6]CYCLOHEPTA[1,2-b]PYRIDIN-11-YLIDENE]-N-(3-PYRIDYL)-1-PIPERIDINECARBOXAMIDE

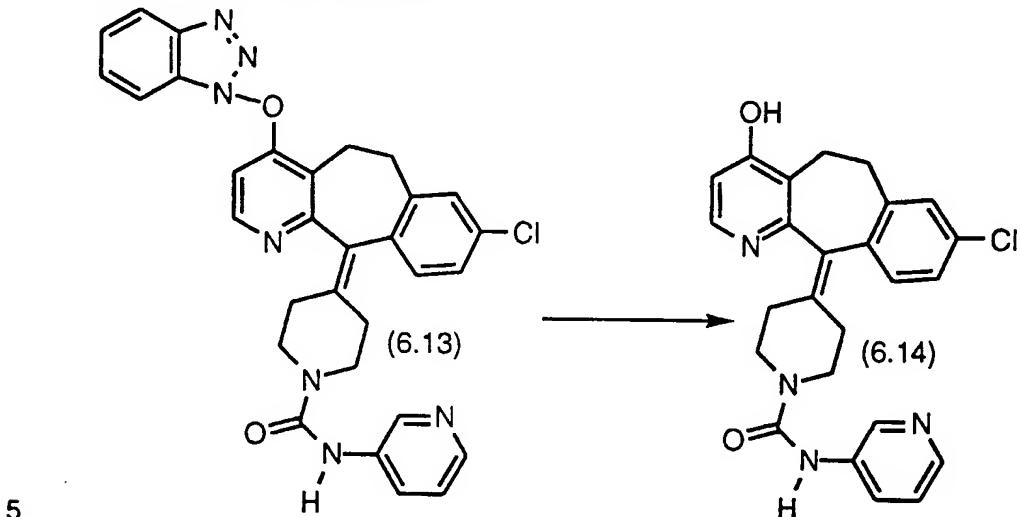


To a solution of the title compound from Example 261 (1.0 grams) in dry dimethylformamide (60 mL) was added 1-hydroxybenzotriazole (1.4 grams), sodium hydride (0.2 grams, 60% in mineral oil) and distilled water (0.5 mL). The solution was stirred at 25°C under nitrogen while being irradiated with a 200 Watt lamp for 20 hours. The reaction mixture was concentrated in vacuo, diluted with dichloromethane and saturated aqueous sodium bicarbonate and after two hours, the organic phase was separated, dried over magnesium sulfate and concentrated. Purification by flash column chromatography (silica gel) using 3-5% methanol-dichloromethane afforded the title compound (Yield 1.1 grams, 87%, MH+ 564).

- 171 -

EXAMPLE 263

4-[4-HYDROXY-8-CHLORO-5,6-DIHYDRO-11H-BENZO[5,6]-CYCLOHEPTA[1,2-b]PYRIDIN-11-YLIDENE]-N-(3-PYRIDYL)-1-PIPERIDINECARBOXAMIDE

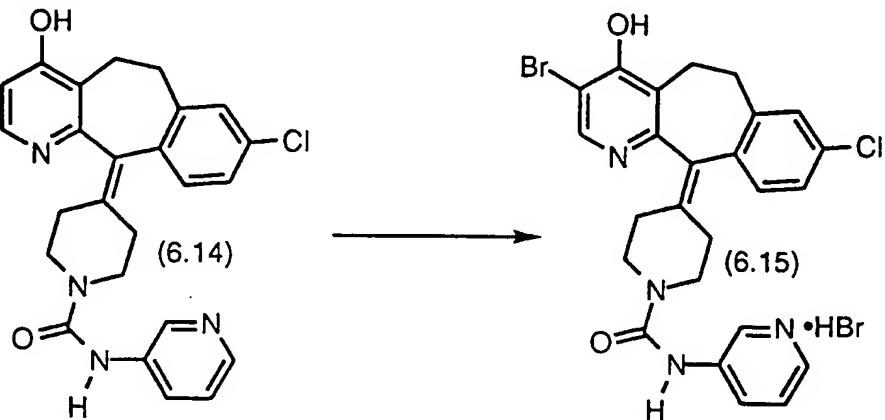


To a solution of the title compound from Example 262 (0.86 grams) and glacial acetic acid (20 mL) was added zinc dust (0.5 grams). After stirring at 25°C for 1.5 hours, the mixture was filtered through celite and the filtrate concentrated *in vacuo*. The residue was purified by flash column chromatography (silica gel) using 5-10% methanol-dichloromethane saturated with ammonium hydroxide to give the title compound (Yield 0.47 grams, 69%, MH<sup>+</sup>448).

10

EXAMPLE 264

4-[3-BROMO-4-HYDROXY-8-CHLORO-5,6-DIHYDRO-11H-BENZO[5,6]CYCLOHEPTA[1,2-b]PYRIDIN-11-YLIDENE]-N-(3-PYRIDYL)-1-PIPERIDINECARBOXAMIDE

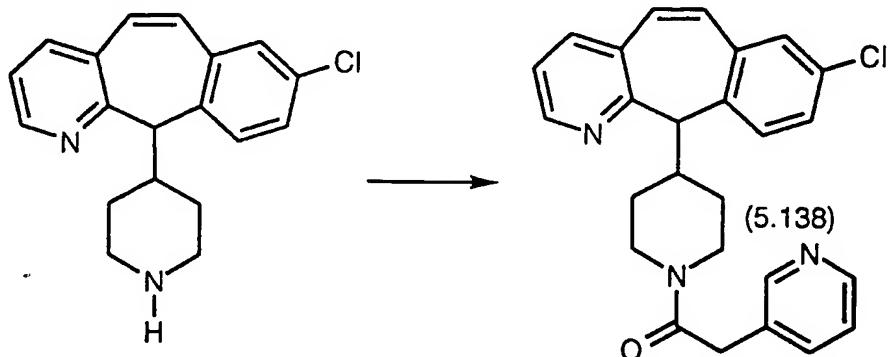


- 172 -

To a solution of the title compound from Example 263 (0.34 grams) and glacial acetic acid (10 mL) was added a 0.7 M bromine-acetic acid solution (4 mL) at 25°C under N<sub>2</sub>. After 10 minutes, water was added and the resulting solid was filtered and washed with water several times and dried to give the title compound (Yield 0.31 grams, 67%, M<sup>H+</sup> 527).

EXAMPLE 266  
4-(8-CHLORO-5H-BENZO[5,6]CYCLOHEPTA[1,2-b]PYRIDIN-11-YL)-1-(3-PYRIDINYLAACETYL)-PIPERIDINE

10

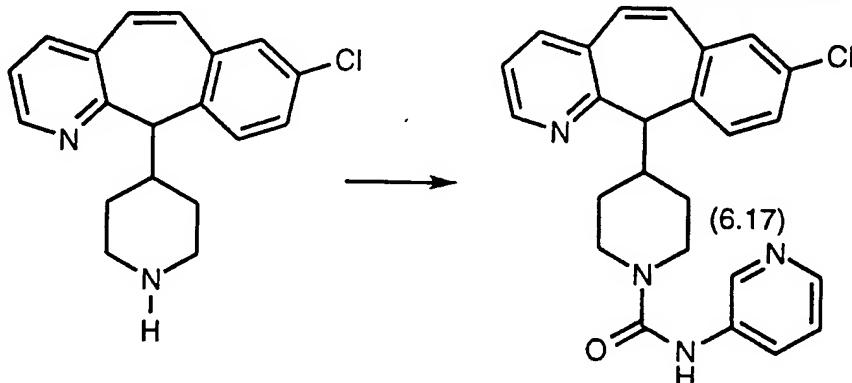


15      The title compound from Preparative Example 34C (2.0g, 6.4 mmole) was dissolved in anhydrous dimethylformamide (70 mL) and the solution was cooled with an ice bath for 30 minutes. 4-Methylmorpholine (3.3 g, 32 mmole), 1-(3-dimethylaminopropyl)-3-ethylcarbodiimide hydrochloride (1.8 g, 9.7 mmole) and 1-hydroxybenzotriazole (0.87g 6.4 mmole) were added to the cold solution. 3-Pyridylacetic acid (0.88 g, 6.4 mmole) was added and the cooling bath removed. Stir the mixture at room temperature for 18 hours. The reaction mixture was evaporated to dryness and the residue was diluted with water (50 mL). The aqueous mixture was extracted with ethyl acetate and the combined extracts dried (MgSO<sub>4</sub>), filtered and evaporated. The resulting residue was purified by silica gel chromatography using a gradient of 97% dichloromethane/ 3% methanol saturated with ammonia to 93% dichloromethane/7% methanol saturated with ammonia as eluent to give the title compound (0.87g M<sup>H+</sup> 430).

- 173 -

EXAMPLE 267

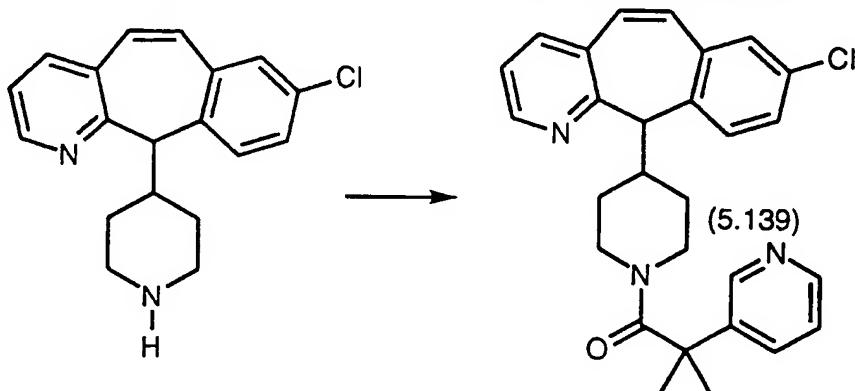
E. 4-(8-CHLORO-11H-BENZO[5,6]CYCLOHEPTA[1,2-b]PYRIDIN-11-YL)-N-(3-PYRIDINYL)-1-PIPERIDINECARBOXAMIDE



5 The title compound from Preparative Example 34C was treated with 3-pyridylisocyanate, similar to the procedure in Example 261, to afford the title compound ( $MH^+$  431).

EXAMPLE 268

10 4-(8-CHLORO-5H-BENZO[5,6]CYCLOHEPTA[1,2-b]PYRIDIN-11-YL)-1-[2-METHYL-2-(3-PYRIDINYL)-1-OXOPROPYL]PIPERIDINE

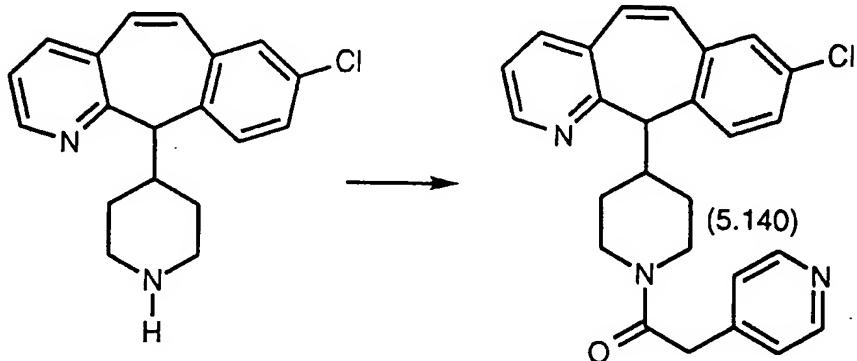


The title compound from Preparative Example 34C was treated as described in Example 266, using  $\alpha,\alpha$ -dimethyl-3-pyridylacetic acid  
15 (described in Preparative Example 10B) in place of 3-pyridylacetic acid, to afford the title compound ( $M+ 458$ ).

- 174 -

EXAMPLE 269

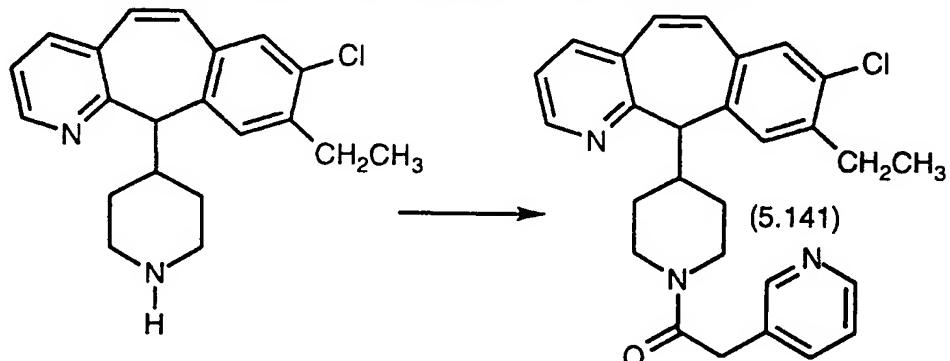
4-(8-CHLORO-5H-BENZO[5,6]CYCLOHEPTA[1,2-b]PYRIDIN-11-YL)-1-(4-PYRIDINYLAACETYL)-PIPERIDINE



- 5        The title compound from Preparative Example 34C above was treated as described in Example 266, using 4-pyridylacetic acid in place of 3-pyridylacetic acid, to give the title compound ( $M^+ 430$ ).

EXAMPLE 270

4-(8-CHLORO-9-ETHYL-5H-BENZO[5,6]CYCLOHEPTA-[1,2-b]PYRIDIN-11-YL)-1-(3-PYRIDINYLAACETYL)-PIPERIDINE

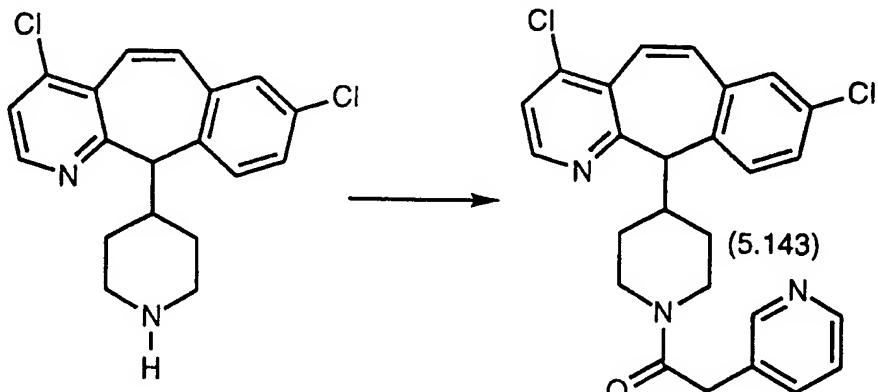


- 10      The title compound from Preparative Example 2A was treated as described in Example 266 to give the title compound ( $M^+ = 458$ , mp = 15      67.2-69.8°C).

- 175 -

EXAMPLE 273

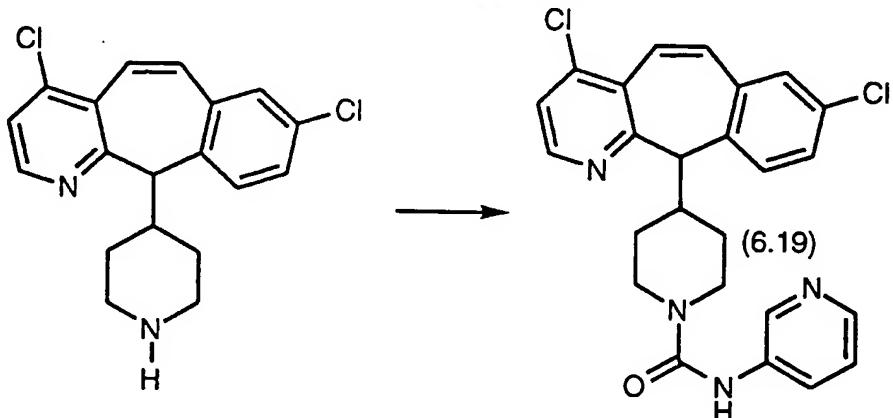
4-(4,8-DICHLORO-5H-BENZO[5,6]CYCLOHEPTA[1,2-B]PYRIDIN-11-YL)-1-(3-PYRIDINYLACETYL)-PIPERIDINE



- 5        The title compound from Preparative Example 36C was treated as described in Example 266 to give the title compound (mp 100.1 - 103.4°C).

EXAMPLE 274

4-(4,8-DICHLORO-11H-BENZO[5,6]CYCLOHEPTA[1,2-b]PYRIDIN-11-YL)-N-(3-PYRIDINYL)-1-PIPERIDINECARBOXAMIDE



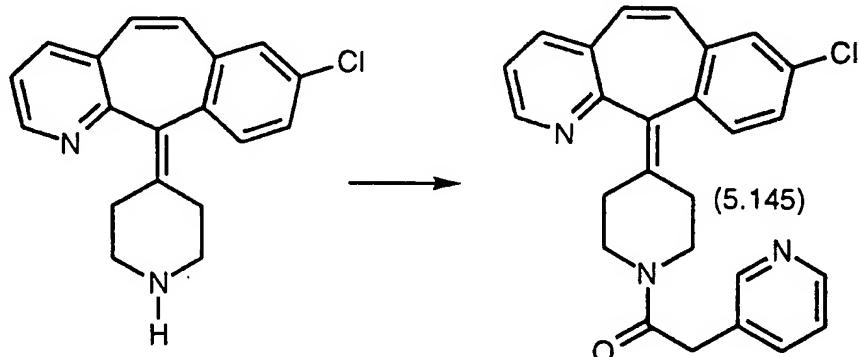
- 10      The title compound from Preparative Example 36C (0.75g, 2.17mmol) was treated with a pyridine solution of 3-pyridylisocyanate (from Preparative Example 33). The reaction mixture was evaporated to dryness and the residue dissolved in dichloromethane. This solution was washed with saturated sodium bicarbonate solution and brine, dried ( $MgSO_4$ ), filtered and evaporated to give a dark syrup. The syrup was purified by silica gel chromatography using a gradient of 97% dichloromethane/3% methanol saturated with ammonia to 93%
- 15

- 176 -

dichloromethane/7% methanol saturated with ammonia. The title compound was obtained as a yellow solid (0.13g, 13%, M+ 465)

EXAMPLE 276

- 5        4-(8-CHLORO-11H-BENZO[5,6]CYCLOHEPTA[1,2-b]PYRIDIN-11YLIDENE)-1-(3-PYRIDINYLAACETYL)-PIPERIDINE

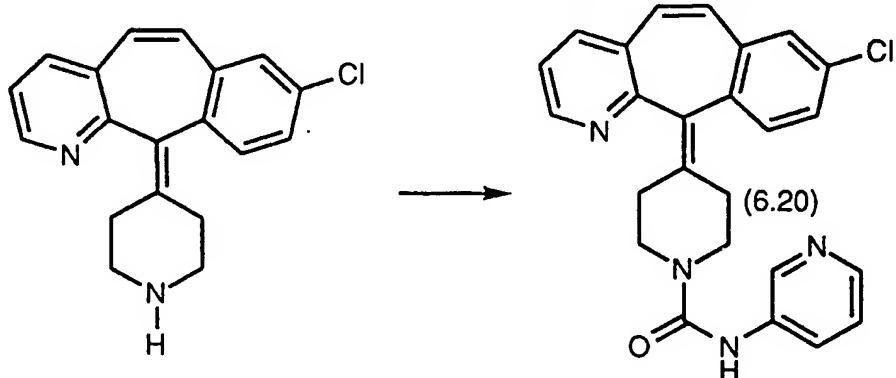


The title compound from Preparative Example 37B was treated as described in Example 266 to give the title compound (MH<sup>+</sup> 428).

10

EXAMPLE 277

- 4-(8CHLORO-11H-BENZO[5,6]CYCLOHEPTA[1,2-b]PYRIDIN-11YLIDENE)-N-(3-PYRIDINYL)-1-PIPERIDINECARBOXAMIDE

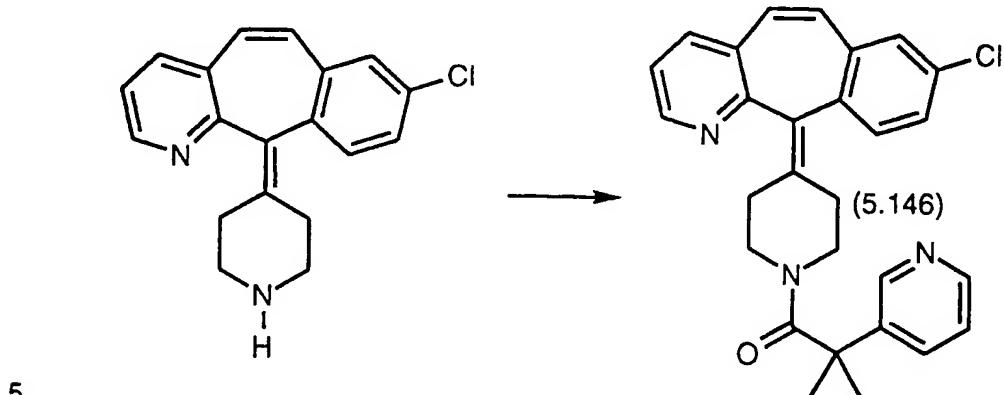


- 15        The title compound from Preparative Example 37B above was treated as described in Example 261 above to give the title compound (mp 95.5 - 97.6°C).

- 177 -

EXAMPLE 278

4-(8-CHLORO-11H-BENZO[5,6]CYCLOHEPTA[1,2-b]PYRIDIN-11YLIDENE)-1-[2-METHYL-2-(3-PYRIDINYL)-1-OXO-PROPYL]PIPERIDINE



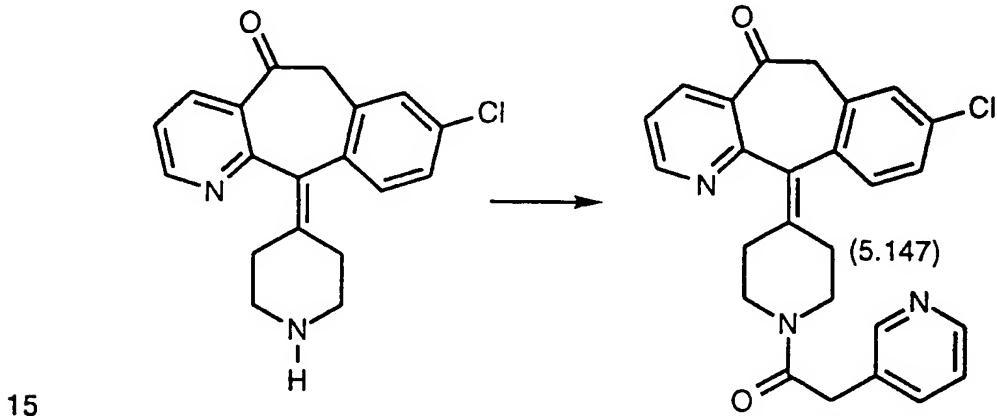
5

The title compound from Preparative Example 37B was treated as described in Example 266 using  $\alpha,\alpha$ -dimethyl-3-pyridylacetic acid (described in Preparative Example 10B) in place of 3-pyridylacetic acid, to give the title compound ( $M+ 456$ ).

10

EXAMPLE 279

4-(8-CHLORO-5,6-DIHYDRO-5-OXO-11H-BENZO[5,6]-CYCLOHEPTA[1,2-b]PYRIDIN-11YLIDENE)-1-(3-PYRIDINYLACETYL)PIPERIDINE



15

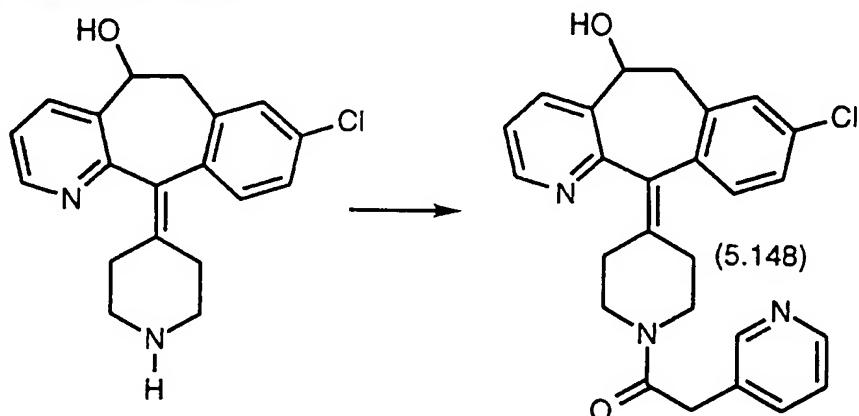
The preparation of the starting material for this reaction was described in *The Journal of Organic Chemistry*, 1990, 55, pp. 3341-3350 by Piwinski, J.J.; Wong, J.K.; Chan, T.-M.; Green, M.J.; and Ganguly, A.K. The procedure described in Example 266 was followed using 8-chloro-

- 178 -

6,11-dihydro-11-(4-piperidinylidene)-5H-benzo[5,6]cyclohepta[1,2-b]-pyridin-5-one to give the title compound ( $M^+$  443).

EXAMPLE 280

5      4-(8-CHLORO-5,6-DIHYDRO-5-HYDROXY-11H-BENZO-[5,6]CYCLOHEPTA[1,2-b]PYRIDIN-11YLIDENE)-1-(3-PYRIDINYL-ACETYL)-PIPERIDINE

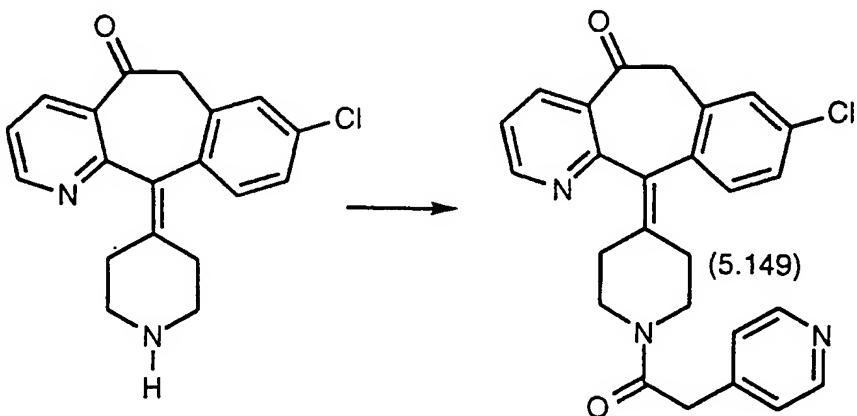


10      The preparation of the starting material for this reaction was described in *The Journal of Organic Chemistry*, 1990, 55, pp. 3341-3350 by Piwinski, J.J.; Wong, J.K.; Chan, T.-M.; Green, M.J.; and Ganguly, A.K. The procedure described in Example 266 was followed using 8-chloro-6,11-dihydro-5-hydroxy-11-(4-piperidinylidene)-5H-benzo[5,6]cyclohepta[1,2-b]pyridine to give the title compound ( $MH^+$  446).

15

EXAMPLE 281

4-(8-CHLORO-5,6-DIHYDRO-5-OXO-11H-BENZO[5,6]-CYCLOHEPTA[1,2-b]PYRIDIN-11YLIDENE)-1-(4-PYRIDINYLACETYL)-PIPERIDINE



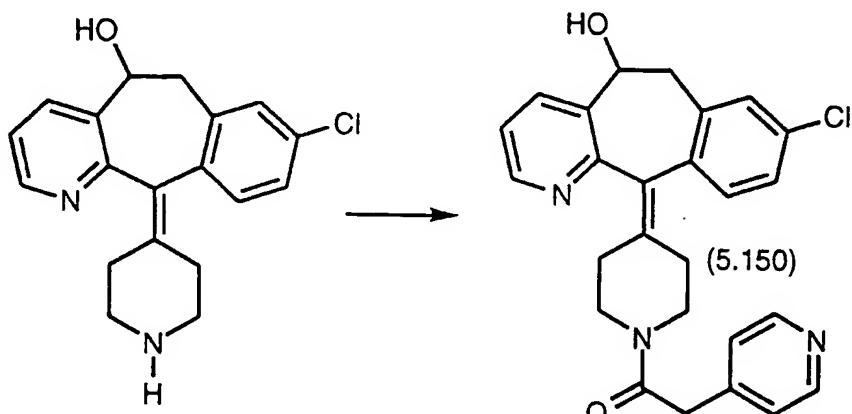
- 179 -

The procedure of Example 279 was followed with the exception that 4-pyridylacetic acid was used in place of 3-pyridylacetic acid to give the title compound ( $MH^+$  444).

5

EXAMPLE 282

4-(8-CHLORO-5,6-DIHYDRO-5-HYDROXY-11H-BENZO-[5,6]CYCLOHEPTA[1,2-b]PYRIDIN-11YLIDENE)-1-(4-PYRIDINYL-ACETYL)-PIPERIDINE

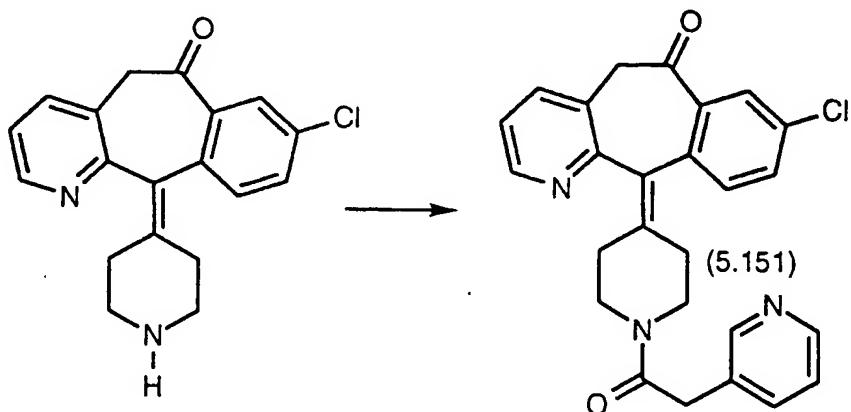


10

The procedure of Example 280 was followed with the exception that 4-pyridylacetic acid was used in place of 3-pyridylacetic acid to give the title compound ( $MH^+$  446).

15

4-(8-CHLORO-5,6-DIHYDRO-6-OXO-11H-BENZO[5,6]-CYCLOHEPTA[1,2-b]PYRIDIN-11YLIDENE)-1-(3-PYRIDINYLACETYL)-PIPERIDINE



The preparation of the starting material for this reaction was described in *The Journal of Organic Chemistry*, 1990, 55, pp. 3341-3350

- 180 -

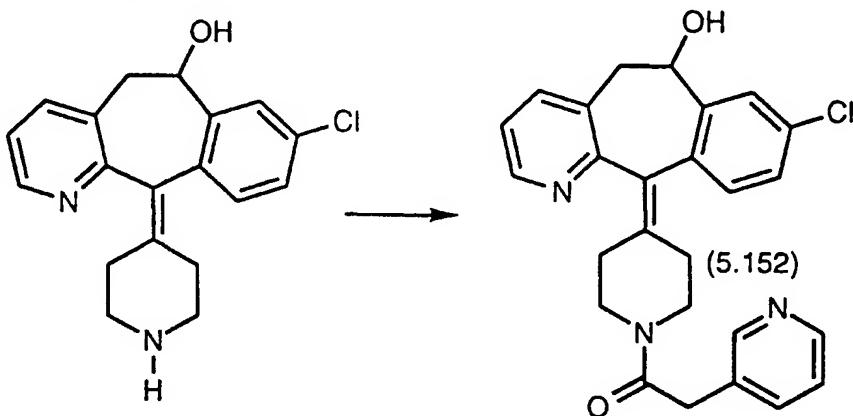
by Piwinski, J.J.; Wong, J.K.; Chan, T.-M.; Green, M.J.; and Ganguly, A.K. The procedure described in Example 266 was followed using 8-chloro-6,11-dihydro-11-(4-piperidinylidene)-5H-benzo[5,6]cyclohepta[1,2-b]pyridin-6-one to give the title compound ( $M^+$  444).

5

EXAMPLE 284

4-(8-CHLORO-5,6-DIHYDRO-6-HYDROXY-11H-BENZO-[5,6]CYCLOHEPTA[1,2-b]PYRIDIN-11YLIDENE)-1-(3-PYRIDINYL-ACETYL)-PIPERIDINE

10



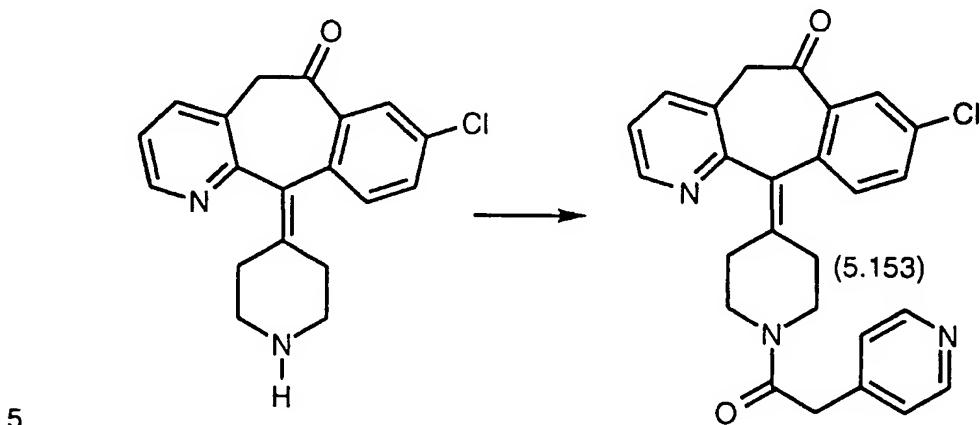
15

The preparation of the starting material for this reaction was described in *The Journal of Organic Chemistry*, 1990, 55, pp. 3341-3350 by Piwinski, J.J.; Wong, J.K.; Chan, T.-M.; Green, M.J.; and Ganguly, A.K. The procedure described in Example 266 above was followed using 8-chloro-6,11-dihydro-6-hydroxy-11-(4-piperidinylidene)-5H-benzo[5,6]-cyclohepta[1,2-b]pyridine to give the title compound ( $MH^+$  446).

- 181 -

EXAMPLE 285

4-(8-CHLORO-5,6-DIHYDRO-6-OXO-11H-BENZO[5,6]-CYCLOHEPTA[1,2-b]PYRIDIN-11YLIDENE)-1-(4-PYRIDINYLACETYL)-PIPERIDINE

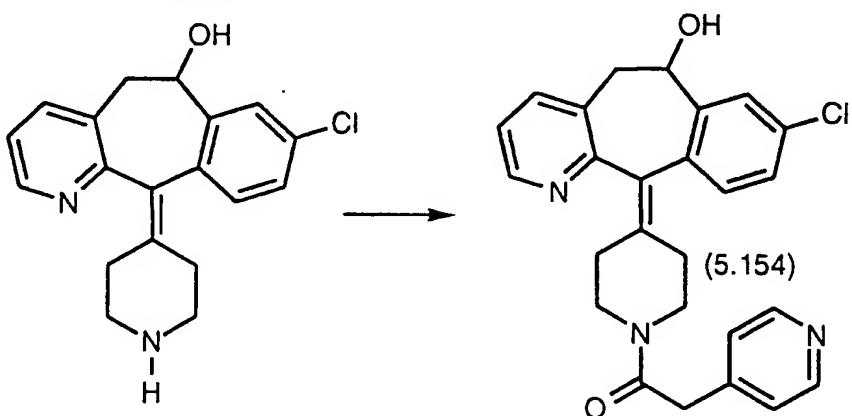


The procedure of Example 283 was followed with the exception that 4-pyridylacetic acid was used in place of 3-pyridylacetic acid to give the title compound ( $M^+$  444).

10

EXAMPLE 286

4-(8-CHLORO-5,6-DIHYDRO-6-HYDROXY-11H-BENZO-[5,6]CYCLOHEPTA[1,2-b]PYRIDIN-11YLIDENE)-1-(4-PYRIDINYL-ACETYL)-PIPERIDINE



15

The procedure of Example 284 was followed with the exception that 4-pyridylacetic acid was used in place of 3-pyridylacetic acid to give the title compound ( $MH^+$  446).

- 182 -

EXAMPLES 287, 289 AND 290

- By essentially the same procedure as in Example 1, but using either (R)-(+)- $\alpha$ -methoxy- $\alpha$ -(trifluoromethyl)-phenylacetic acid (Example 290), (S)-(-)- $\alpha$ -methoxy- $\alpha$ -(trifluoromethyl)-phenylacetic acid (Example 287), or  $\alpha,\alpha$ -dimethylphenylacetic acid (Example 289), the compounds of Example 290, 287 and 289 were obtained. The structures for these compounds are in Table 7. Data for these compounds are: compound of Example 290, white solid  $MH^+$  527; compound of Example 287, white solid  $MH^+$  527; and compound of Example 289, white solid  $M^+$  457.

10

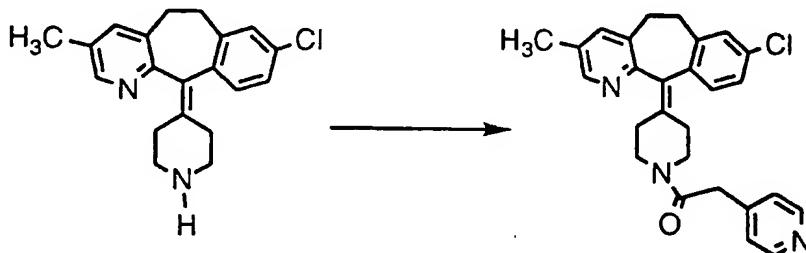
EXAMPLES 291, 292, 294, 313 AND 314

- By essentially the same procedure as in Example 183, and using either 4-, 3-, or 2-ethoxycarbonylaminopyridine and either 4-(8-chloro-5,6-dihydro-11H-benzo[5,6]cyclohepta[1,2-b]pyridin-11-ylidene)piperidine or 15 8-chloro-6,11-dihydro-11-(4-piperidinyl)-5H-benzo[5,6]cyclohepta[1,2-b]pyridine (product of Example 233A), the compounds of Examples 291, 292, 294, 313 and 314 were obtained. The structures for the compounds of Examples 291, 292, and 294 are given in Table 7. The structures for the compounds of Examples 313 and 314 are given in Table 10. Data 20 are: the compound of Example 291 was a yellow solid ( $MH^+$  431), the compound of Example 292 was an off white solid ( $MH^+$  431), the compound of Example 294 was an off white solid ( $MH^+$  431), the compound of Example 313 was a white solid ( $MH^+$  433), and the compound of Example 314 was a white solid ( $MH^+$  433).

25

EXAMPLE 301

1-[1-(4-PYRIDINYLACETYL)-4-[3-METHYL-8-CHLORO-5,6-DIHYDRO-11H-BENZO[5,6]CYCLOHEPTA[1,2-b]PYRIDIN-11-YLIDENE]-PIPERIDINE



30

By essentially the same procedure as set forth in Example 180, but using 4-(8-chloro-3-methyl-5,6-dihydro-11-(4-piperidylidene)-11H-benzo[5,6]cyclohepta[1,2-b]pyridine (from Preparative Example 3E)

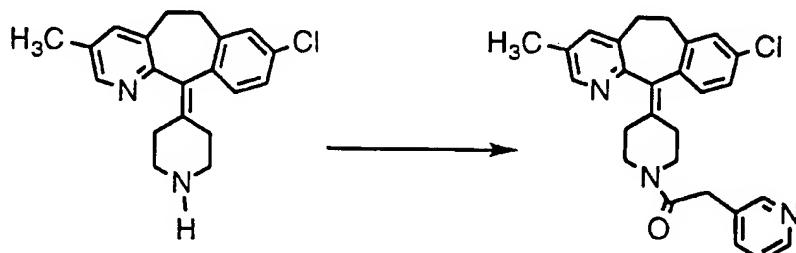
- 183 -

instead of 4-(3,8-dichloro-5,6-dihydro-11-(4-piperidylidene)-11H-benzo[5,6]cyclohepta[1,2-b]pyridine, the title compound was obtained as an off-white solid MH<sup>+</sup> 444

5

EXAMPLE 303

1- 1-(3-PYRIDINYLACETYL) -4-[3-METHYL-8-CHLORO-5,6-DIHYDRO-11H-BENZO[5,6]CYCLOHEPTA[1,2-b]PYRIDIN-11-YLIDENE]-PIPERIDINE



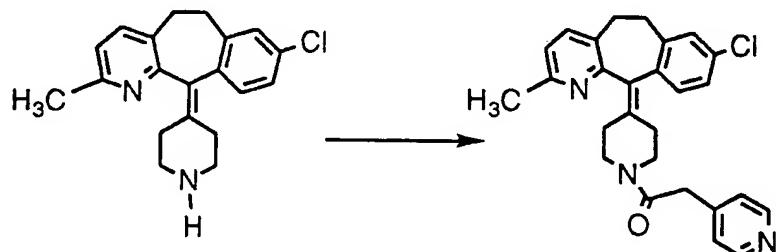
- 10 By essentially the same procedure as set forth in Example 180, but using 4-(8-chloro-3-methyl-5,6-dihydro-11-(4-piperidylidene)-11H-benzo[5,6]cyclohepta[1,2-b]pyridine (from Preparative Example 3E) instead of 4-(3,8-dichloro-5,6-dihydro-11-(4-piperidylidene)-11H-benzo[5,6]cyclohepta[1,2-b]pyridine, and 3-pyridylacetic acid instead of 4-pyridylacetic acid, the title compound was obtained as white solid MH<sup>+</sup> 444.
- 15

EXAMPLE 307

- 20 By essentially the same procedure as in Example 1, using the title compound from Preparative Example 37B, and 4-pyridylacetic acid the compound of Example 307, identified in Table 8, was obtained, MH<sup>+</sup> 428.

EXAMPLE 309

- 25 1-1-(4-PYRIDINYLACETYL)-4-[2-METHYL-8-CHLORO-5,6-DIHYDRO-11H-BENZO[5,6]CYCLOHEPTA[1,2-b]PYRIDIN-11-YLIDENE]-PIPERIDINE

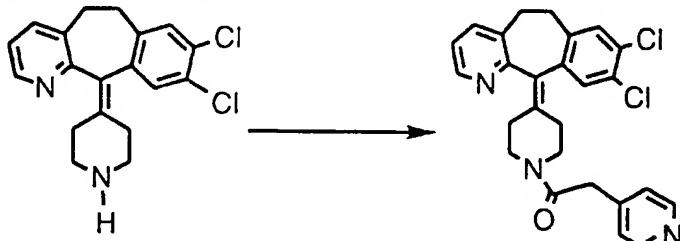


- 184 -

- By essentially the same procedure as set forth in Example 180, but using 4-(8-chloro-2-methyl-5,6-dihydro-11-(4-piperidylidene)-11H-benzo[5,6]cyclohepta[1,2-b]pyridine (from Preparative Example 3E) instead of 4-(3,8-dichloro-5,6-dihydro-11-(4-piperidylidene)-11H-benzo[5,6]cyclohepta[1,2-b]pyridine, and 3-pyridylacetic acid instead of 4-pyridylacetic acid, the title compound was obtained as white solid MH<sup>+</sup> 444.

EXAMPLE 311

- 10 1-1-(4-PYRIDINYLACETYL)-4-[8,9 DICHLORO-5,6-DIHYDRO-11H-BENZO[5,6]CYCLOHEPTA[1,2-b]PYRIDIN-11-YLIDENE] - PIPERIDINE



- 15 By essentially the same procedure as set forth in Example 180, but using 4-(8,9-dichloro-5,6-dihydro-11-(4-piperidylidene)-11H-benzo[5,6]-cyclohepta[1,2-b]pyridine (from Preparative Example 1H) instead of 4-(3,8-dichloro-5,6-dihydro-11-(4-piperidylidene)-11H-benzo[5,6]cyclohepta[1,2-b]pyridine, and 3-pyridylacetic acid instead of 4-pyridylacetic acid, the title compound was obtained as white solid MH<sup>+</sup> 464.

20

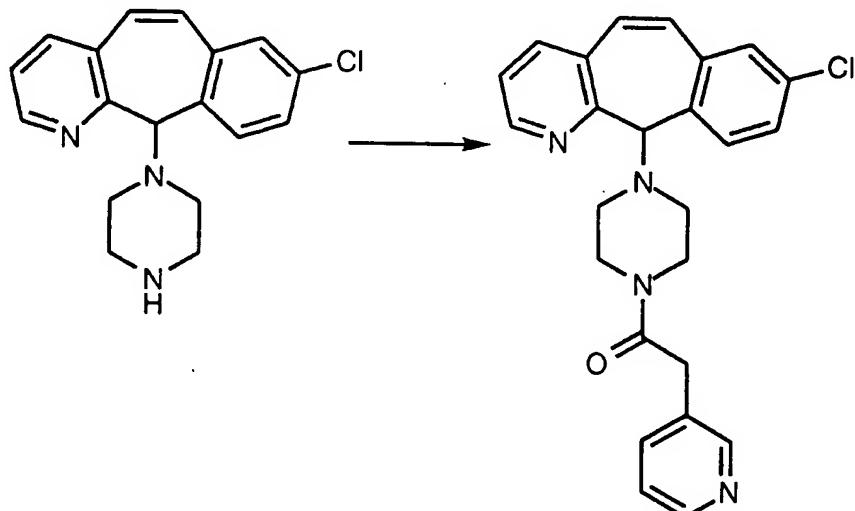
EXAMPLE 312

- By essentially the same procedure as in Example 182, with the exception that 8-chloro-6,11-dihydro-11-(4-piperidinyl)-5H-benzo[5,6]cyclohepta[1,2-b]pyridine is used instead of 8-chloro-11-(1-piperazinyl)-6,11-dihydro-5H-benzo[5,6]cyclohepta[1,2-b]pyridine, the compound of Example 312 was obtained as a white solid (MH<sup>+</sup> 432). The structure for this compound is given in Table 10.

- 185 -

EXAMPLE 350

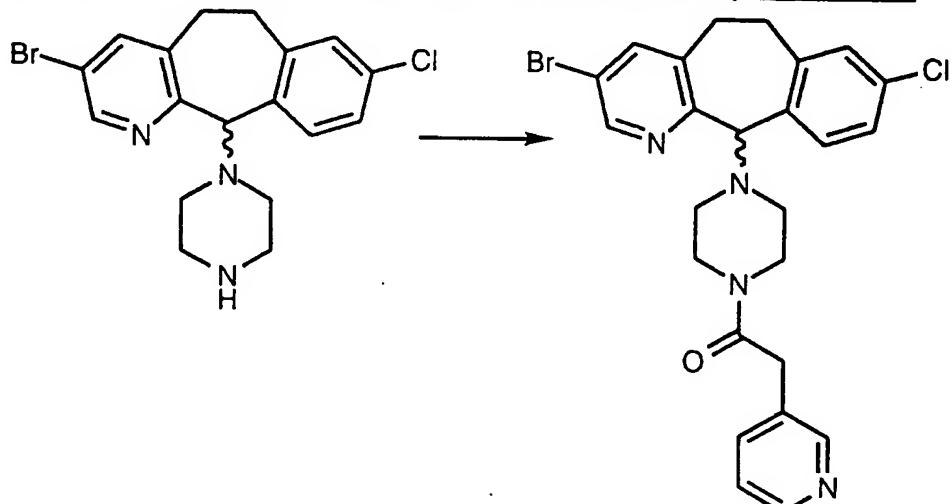
8-CHLORO-11H-BENZO[5,5]CYCLOHEPTA[1,2-b]PYRIDIN- 11-YLIDENE)-4-(3-PYRIDINYLAACETYL)PIPERAZINE



- 5 By substituting in Example 75, 0.4g (1.28mmoles) of 8-chloro-11-  
 (1-piperazinyl)-11H-benzo[5,6]cyclohepta[1,2-b]pyridine (Preparative  
 Example 38) for 8-chloro-11-(1-piperazinyl)-6,11-dihydro-5H-benzo[5,6]-  
 cyclohepta[1,2-b]pyridine and 0.1765g (1.28mmoles) of 3-pyridylacetic  
 acid for 4-pyridylacetic acid and using the same method as described in  
 10 Example 75, one obtains the title compound (0.513g, 93%, MH<sup>+</sup> 431).

EXAMPLE 351

1-(3-BROMO-8-CHLORO-6,11-DIHYDRO-5H-BENZO[5,6]CYCLO-  
 HEPTA[1,2-b]PYRIDIN-11-YL)-4-(3-PYRIDINYLAACETYL)PIPERAZINE

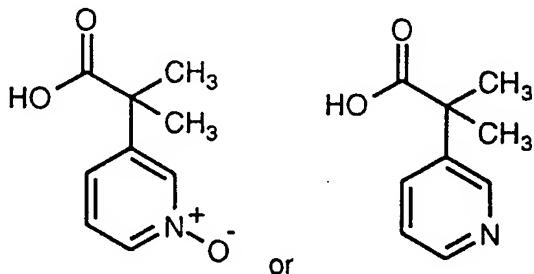


- 186 -

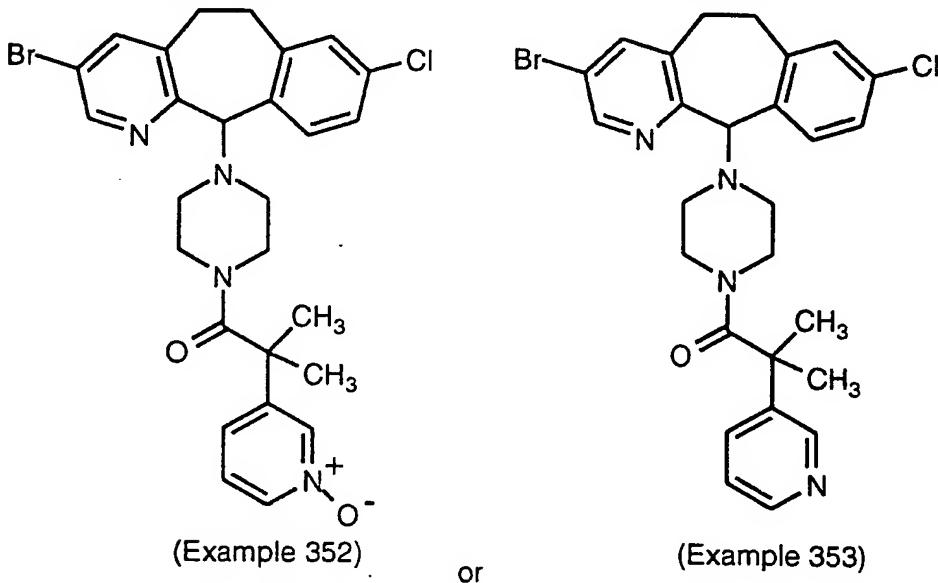
By substituting in Example 75, 3-bromo-8-chloro-11-(1-piperazinyl)-6,11-dihydro-5H-benzo[5,6]cyclohepta[1,2-b]pyridine (0.32g, 0.81mmoles) (Preparative Example 40) for 8-chloro-11-(1-piperazinyl)-6,11-dihydro-5H-benzo[5,6]cyclohepta[1,2-b]pyridine and 3-pyridylacetic acid (0.117g, 0.86mmoles) for 4-pyridylacetic acid and using the method described in Example 50, one obtains the title compound (0.3942g, 95%,  $MH^+$  511).

### EXAMPLES 352-353

- 10 By essentially the same procedures as set forth in Example 351,  
but using



in place of 3-pyridylacetic acid, one obtains compounds of the formulas

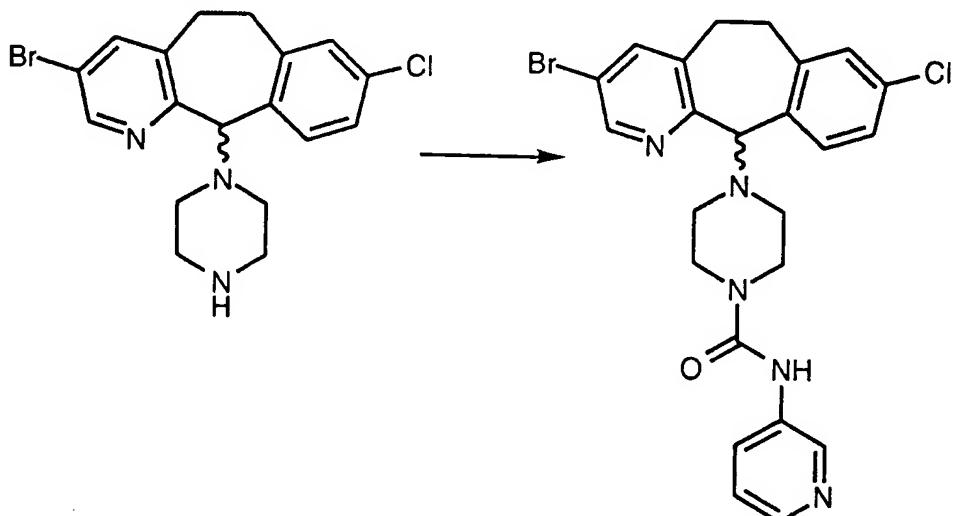


- 15 respectively. The compound of Example 352 is a white amorphous solid, yield 65%, Mass Spec MH<sup>+</sup> 555. The compound of Example 353 is a white amorphous solid, yield 59%, Mass Spec MH<sup>+</sup> 539.

- 187 -

EXAMPLE 354

4-(3-BROMO-8-CHLORO-6,11-DIHYDRO-5H-BENZO[5,6]CYCLOHEPTA[1,2-b]PYRIDIN-11-YL)-N-(3-PYRIDINYL)-1-PIPERAZINE-CARBOXAMIDE

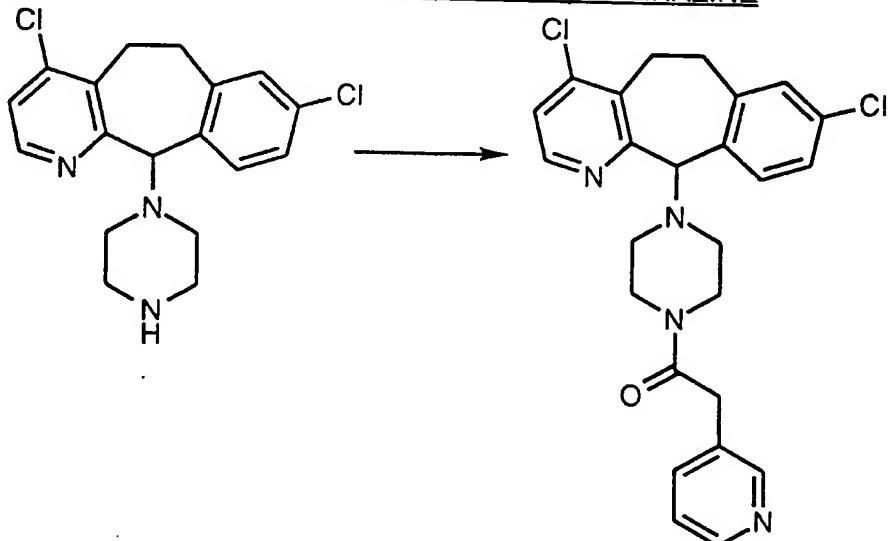


5

The title compound from Preparative Example 40 (0.37g, 0.94mmoles) was reacted with 3-ethoxycarbonylaminopyridine (Preparative Example 12) (0.123g, 0.94mmoles) under essentially the same conditions as described in Example 183, to give the title compound 10 (0.3164g, 66%,  $MH^+$  512).

EXAMPLE 355

1-(4,8-DICHLORO-6,11-DIHYDRO-5H-BENZO[5,6]CYCLOHEPTA[1,2-b]PYRIDIN-11-YL)-4-(3-PYRIDYLACETYL) PIPERAZINE



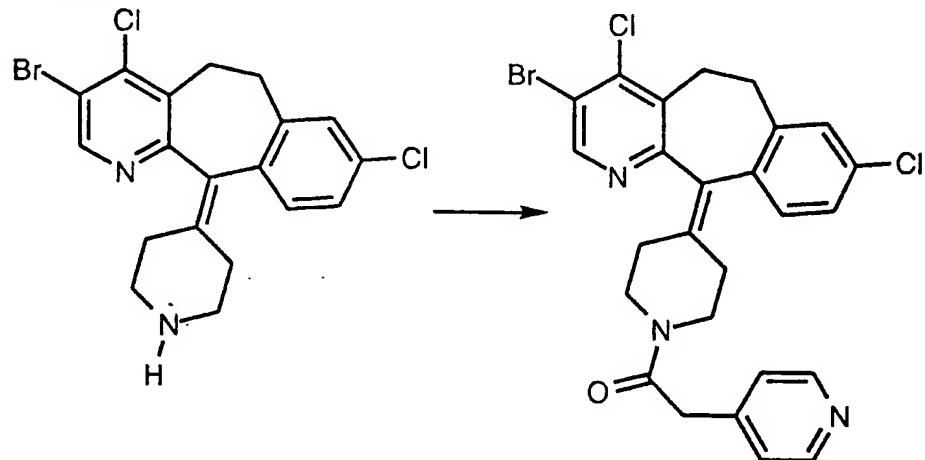
15

- 188 -

- By substituting in Example 75, 4,8-chloro-11-(1-piperazinyl)-6,11-dihydro-5H-benzo[5,6]cyclohepta[1,2-b]pyridine (0.3g, 0.86mmoles) (Preparative Example 41) for 8-chloro-11-(1-piperazinyl)-6,11-dihydro-5H-benzo[5,6]cyclohepta[1,2-b]pyridine and 3-pyridylacetic acid (0.1181g, 5 0.86mmoles) for 4-pyridylacetic acid and using the method described in Example 50 ,one obtains the title compound (0.357g, 88%, MH<sup>+</sup> 467).

#### EXAMPLE 356

- 10 4-[3-BROMO-4,8-DICHLORO-5,6-DIHYDRO-11H-BENZO[5,6]-CYCLOHEPTA[1,2-b]PYRIDIN-11-YLIDENE]-1-(4-PYRIDINYLACETYL)-PIPERIDINE

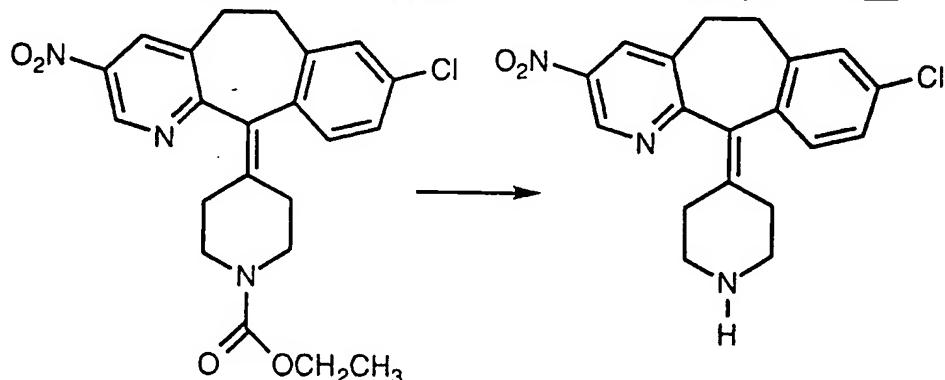


- A mixture of the title compound from Preparative Example 46 (0.68 grams), 4-pyridylacetic acid hydrochloride (0.60 grams), 1-(3-dimethylaminopropyl)-3-ethyl carbodiimide hydrochloride (0.65 grams), 4-methylmorpholine (0.6 mL) and anhydrous dimethylformamide (20 mL) was stirred at 25°C for 48 hours. Concentration *in vacuo* provided a residue which was diluted with dichloromethane and washed with 1 N aqueous sodium hydroxide and brine. The organic phase was dried over anhydrous magnesium sulfate and concentrated *in vacuo* to provide a residue which was purified by flash column chromatography (silica gel) using 2-5% methanol-dichloromethane saturated with ammonium hydroxide to afford the title compound (0.06 grams, 7%, MH<sup>+</sup> 544). 15 20

- 189 -

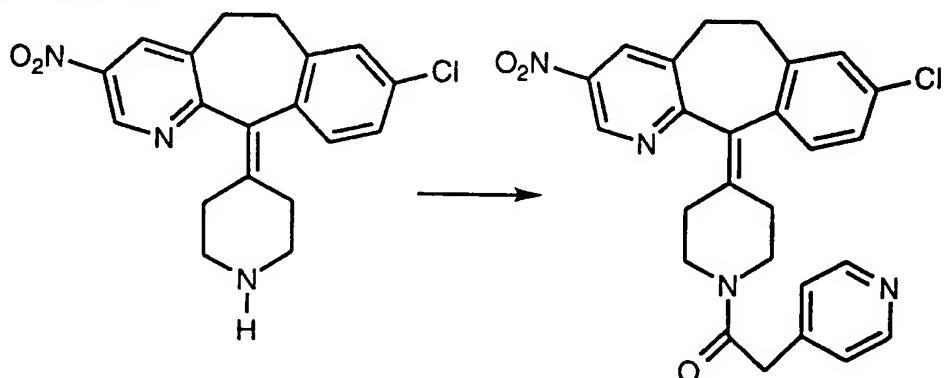
EXAMPLE 358

A. 4-(8-CHLORO-3-NITRO-5,6-DIHYDRO-11-(4-PIPERIDYLIDENE)-11H-BENZO[5,6]CYCLOHEPTA[1,2-b]PYRIDINE.



- 5        Hydrolyze the title compound of Preparative Example 47A (10.0g, mmol) by dissolving in conc. HCl (250mL) and heating to 100°C for 16h. The cooled acidic mixture was neutralized with 1M NaOH (950 mL). The mixture was extracted with methylene chloride. The latter was dried over magnesium sulfate. Filtration and concentration afforded the title  
10      compound in 99% yield as a solid. MH+ 358.

B. 1-1-(4-PYRIDINYLACETYL) -4-[3-BROMO-8-CHLORO-5,6-DIHYDRO-11H-BENZO[5,6]CYCLOHEPTA[1,2-b]PYRIDIN-11-YLIDENE]-PIPERIDINE



- 15       By essentially the same procedure as set forth in Example 180, but using 4-(8-chloro-3-nitro-5,6-dihydro-11-(4-piperidylidene)-11H-benzo[5,6]cyclohepta[1,2-b]pyridine instead of 4-(3,8-dichloro-5,6-dihydro-11-(4-piperidylidene)-11H-benzo[5,6]cyclohepta[1,2-b]pyridine, the title compound was obtained as an off-white solid. Mp = 111.3-  
20      112.2°C, MH+ 475.

- 190 -

### ASSAYS

1. In vitro enzyme assays: Inhibition of farnesyl protein transferase and geranylgeranyl protein transferase.

Both farnesyl protein transferase (FPT) and geranylgeranyl protein transferase (GGPT) I were partially purified from rat brain by ammonium sulfate fractionation followed by Q-Sepharose (Pharmacia, Inc.) anion exchange chromatography essentially as described by Yokoyama et al (Yokoyama, K., et al., (1991), A protein geranylgeranyltransferase from bovine brain: Implications for protein prenylation specificity, *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci USA* **88**: 5302-5306, the disclosure of which is incorporated herein by reference thereto). Human farnesyl protein transferase was also expressed in *E. coli*, using cDNA clones encoding both the  $\alpha$  and  $\beta$  subunits. The methods used were similar to those published (Omer, C. et al., (1993), Characterization of recombinant human farnesyl protein transferase: Cloning, expression, farnesyl diphosphate binding, and functional homology with yeast prenyl-protein transferases, *Biochemistry* 32:5167-5176). Human farnesyl protein transferase was partially-purified from the soluble protein fraction of *E. coli* as described above. The tricyclic farnesyl protein transferase inhibitors disclosed herein inhibited both human and rat enzyme with similar potencies. Two forms of val<sup>12</sup>-Ha-Ras protein were prepared as substrates for these enzymes, differing in their carboxy terminal sequence. One form terminated in cysteine-valine-leucine-serine (Ras-CVLS) the other in cysteine-valine-leucine-leucine (Ras-CVLL). Ras-CVLS is a substrate for the farnesyl protein transferase while Ras-CVLL is a substrate for geranylgeranyl protein transferase I. The cDNAs encoding these proteins were constructed so that the proteins contain an amino-terminal extension of 6 histidine residues. Both proteins were expressed in *Escherichia coli* and purified using metal chelate affinity chromatography. The radiolabelled isoprenyl pyrophosphate substrates, [<sup>3</sup>H]farnesyl pyrophosphate and [<sup>3</sup>H]geranylgeranyl pyrophosphate, were purchased from DuPont/New England Nuclear.

Several methods for measuring farnesyl protein transferase activity have been described (Reiss et al 1990, *Cell* **62**: 81; Schaber et al 1990, *J. Biol. Chem.* **265**: 14701; Manne et al 1990, *PNAS* **87**: 7541; and Barbacid & Manne 1993, U.S. Patent No. 5,185,248). The activity was assayed by measuring the transfer of [<sup>3</sup>H]farnesyl from [<sup>3</sup>H]farnesyl pyrophosphate to Ras-CVLS using conditions similar to those described

- 191 -

by Reiss et al. 1990 (*Cell* **62**: 81) The reaction mixture contained 40 mM Hepes, pH 7.5; 20 mM magnesium chloride; 5 mM dithiothreitol; 0.25 µM [<sup>3</sup>H]farnesyl pyrophosphate; 10 µl Q-Sepharose-purified farnesyl protein transferase; the indicated concentration of tricyclic compound or  
5 dimethylsulfoxide (DMSO) vehicle control (5% DMSO final); and 5 µM Ras-CVLS in a total volume of 100 µl. The reaction was allowed to proceed for 30 minutes at room temperature and then stopped with 0.5 ml of 4% sodium dodecyl sulfate (SDS) followed by 0.5 ml of cold 30% trichloracetic acid (TCA). Samples were allowed to sit on ice for 45  
10 minutes and precipitated Ras protein was then collected on GF/C filter paper mats using a Brandel cell harvester. Filter mats were washed once with 6% TCA, 2% SDS and radioactivity was measured in a Wallac 1204 Betaplate BS liquid scintillation counter. Percent inhibition was calculated relative to the DMSO vehicle control.  
15 The geranylgeranyl protein transferase I assay was essentially identical to the farnesyl protein transferase assay described above, with two exceptions: [<sup>3</sup>H]geranylgeranylpyrophosphate replaced farnesyl pyrophosphate as the isoprenoid donor and Ras-CVLL was the protein acceptor. This is similar to the assay reported by Casey et al (Casey, P.J.,  
20 et al., (1991), Enzymatic modification of proteins with a geranylgeranyl isoprenoid, *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci., USA* **88**: 8631-8635, the disclosure of which is incorporated herein by reference thereto).

2. Cell-Based Assay: Transient expression of val<sup>12</sup>-Ha-Ras-CVLS and val<sup>12</sup>-Ha-Ras-CVLL in COS monkey kidney  
25 cells: Effect of farnesyl protein transferase inhibitors on Ras processing and on disordered cell growth induced by transforming Ras.

COS monkey kidney cells were transfected by electroporation with the plasmid pSV-SPORT (Gibco/BRL) containing a cDNA insert encoding either Ras-CVLS or Ras-CVLL, leading to transient overexpression of a  
30 Ras substrate for either farnesyl protein transferase or geranylgeranyl protein transferase I, respectively (see above).

Following electroporation, cells were plated into 6-well tissue culture dishes containing 1.5 ml of Dulbecco's-modified Eagle's media (GIBCO, Inc.) supplemented with 10% fetal calf serum and the appropriate  
35 farnesyl protein transferase inhibitors. After 24 hours, media was removed and fresh media containing the appropriate drugs was re-added.

48 hours after electroporation cells were examined under the microscope to monitor disordered cell growth induced by transforming

- 192 -

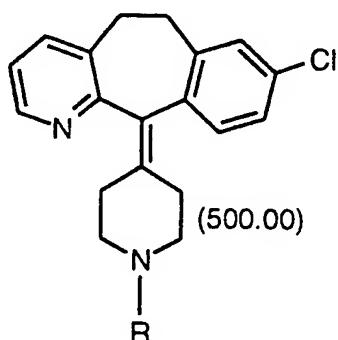
- Ras. Cells expressing transforming Ras become more rounded and refractile and overgrow the monolayer, reminiscent of the transformed phenotype. Cells were then photographed, washed twice with 1 ml of cold phosphate-buffered saline (PBS) and removed from the dish by
- 5 scraping with a rubber policeman into 1 ml of a buffer containing 25 mM Tris, pH 8.0; 1 mM ethylenediamine tetraacetic acid; 1 mM phenylmethylsulfonyl fluoride; 50 µM leupeptin; and 0.1 µM pepstatin. Cells were lysed by homogenization and cell debris was removed by centrifugation at 2000 x g for 10 min.
- 10 Cellular protein was precipitated by addition of ice-cold trichloroacetic acid and redissolved in 100 µl of SDS-electrophoresis sample buffer. Samples (5-10 µl) were loaded onto 14% polyacrylamide minigels (Novex, Inc.) and electrophoresed until the tracking dye neared the bottom of the gel. Proteins resolved on the gels were electroblotted
- 15 onto nitrocellulose membranes for immunodetection.
- Membranes were blocked by incubation overnight at 4°C in PBS containing 2.5% dried milk and 0.5% Tween-20 and then incubated with a Ras-specific monoclonal antibody, Y13-259 (Furth, M.E., et al., (1982), Monoclonal antibodies to the p21 products of the transforming gene of
- 20 Harvey murine sarcome virus and of the cellular ras gene family, *J. Virol.* **43:** 294-304), in PBS containing 1% fetal calf serum for one hour at room temperature. After washing, membranes were incubated for one hour at room temperature with a 1:5000 dilution of secondary antibody, rabbit anti-rat IgG conjugated to horseradish peroxidase, in PBS
- 25 containing 1% fetal calf serum. The presence of processed and unprocessed Ras-CVLS or Ras-CVLL was detected using a colorimetric peroxidase reagent (4-chloro-1-naphthol) as described by the manufacturer (Bio-Rad).
- 30 **3. Cell Mat Assay:**
- Normal human HEPM fibroblasts were planted in 3.5 cm dishes at a density of  $5 \times 10^4$  cells/dish in 2 ml growth medium, and incubated for 3-5d to achieve confluence. Medium was aspirated from each dish and the indicated tumor cells, T24-BAG4 human bladder carcinoma cells expressing an activated H-ras gene, were planted on top of the fibroblast
- 35 monolayer at a density of  $2 \times 10^3$  cells/dish in 2 ml growth medium, and allowed to attach overnight. Compound-induced colony inhibition was assayed by addition of serial dilutions of compound directly to the growth medium 24 h after tumor cell planting, and incubating cells for an

- 193 -

additional 14 d to allow colony formation. Assays were terminated by rinsing monolayers twice with phosphate-buffered saline (PBS), fixing the monolayers with a 1% glutaraldehyde solution in PBS, then visualizing tumor cells by staining with X-Gal (Price, J., et al., Lineage analysis in the  
5 vertebrate nervous system by retrovirus-mediated gene transfer, Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci.84, 156-160(1987)). In the colony inhibition assay, compounds were evaluated on the basis of two IC<sub>50</sub> values: the concentration of drug required to prevent the increase in tumor cell number by 50% (tIC<sub>50</sub>) and the concentration of drug required to reduce  
10 the density of cells comprising the cell mat by 50% (mIC<sub>50</sub>). Both IC<sub>50</sub> values were obtained by determining the density of tumor cells and mat cells by visual inspection and enumeration of cells per colony and the number of colonies under the microscope. The therapeutic index of the compound was quantitatively expressed as the ratio of mIC<sub>50</sub>/tIC<sub>50</sub>, with  
15 values greater than one indicative of tumor target specificity.

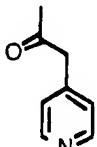
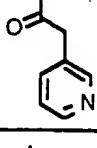
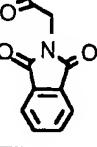
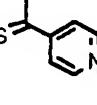
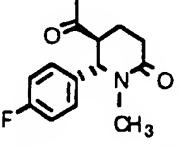
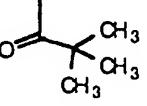
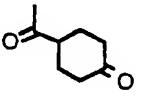
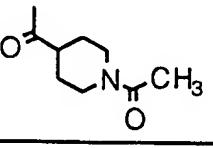
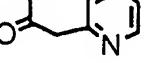
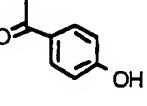
#### RESULTS OF ASSAYS - TABLES 7 TO 19

The compounds listed in Table 7 refer to compounds of Formula 500.00:



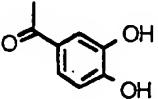
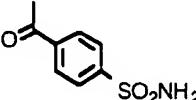
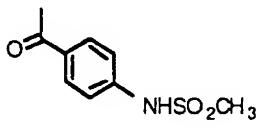
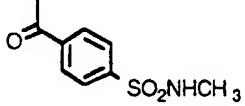
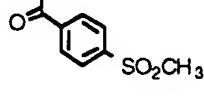
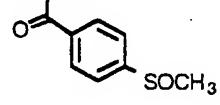
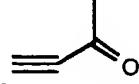
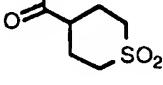
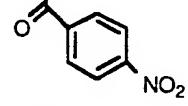
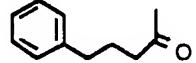
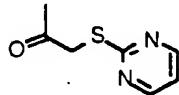
- 194 -

TABLE 7

EXAMPLE	R	FPT IC <sub>50</sub> (μM)
1		0.01-10
2		0.01-10
3		0.01-10
88		0.01-10
4		0.01-10
53		0.01-10
5		0.01-10
89		0.01-10
6		0.01-10
7		0.01-10

- 195 -

TABLE 7 - continued

EXAMPLE	R	FPT IC <sub>50</sub> (μM)
8		0.01-10
90		0.01-10
91		0.01-10
92		0.01-10
93		0.01-10
94		0.01-10
9		0.01-10
95		0.01-10
10		0.01-10
11		0.01-10
12		0.01-10

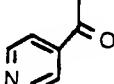
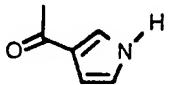
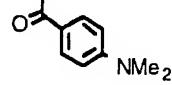
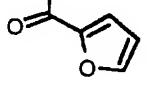
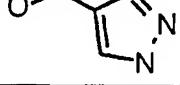
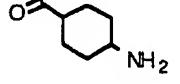
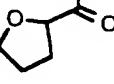
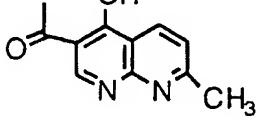
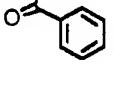
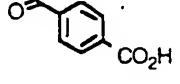
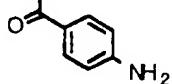
- 196 -

TABLE 7 - continued

EXAMPLE	R	FPT IC <sub>50</sub> (μM)
96		0.01-10
97		0.01-10
98		0.01-10
99		0.01-10
13		0.01-10
100		0.01-10
101		0.01-10
102		0.01-10
14		0.01-10
103		0.01-10
104		0.01-10

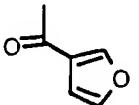
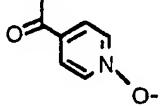
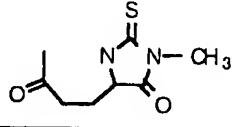
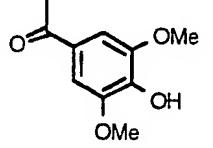
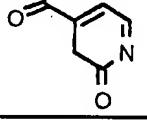
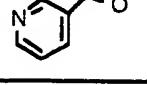
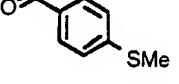
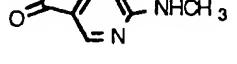
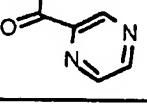
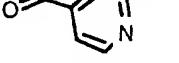
- 197 -

TABLE 7 - continued

EXAMPLE	R	FPT IC <sub>50</sub> ( $\mu$ M)
15		0.01-10
16		0.01-10
17		0.01-10
52		0.01-10
18		0.01-10
105		0.01-10
19A		0.01-10
20		0.01-10
54		0.01-10
106		0.01-10
21		0.01-10

- 198 -

TABLE 7 - continued

EXAMPLE	R	FPT IC <sub>50</sub> (μM)
55		0.01-10
22		0.01-10
23		0.01-10
24		0.01-10
25		0.01-10
26		0.01-10
108		0.01-10
109		0.01-10
27		0.01-10
28		0.01-10

- 199 -

TABLE 7 - continued

EXAMPLE	R	FPT IC <sub>50</sub> (μM)
56		0.01-10
29		0.01-10
30		0.01-10
31		0.01-10
110		0.01-10
111		0.01-10
32		0.01-10
33		0.01-10
112		0.01-10
34		0.01-10

- 200 -

TABLE 7 - continued

EXAMPLE	R	FPT IC <sub>50</sub> ( $\mu$ M)
57		0.01-10
35		0.01-10
113		10-100
114		10-100
36		10-100
37		10-100
38		10-100
39		10-100
115		10-100
58		10-100

- 201 -

TABLE 7 - continued

EXAMPLE	R	FPT IC <sub>50</sub> (μM)
116		10-100
117		10-100
118		10-100
59		10-100
119		10-100
120		10-100
121		0.01-10
40		10-100
122		10-100
123		10-100

- 202 -

TABLE 7 - continued

EXAMPLE	R	FPT IC <sub>50</sub> ( $\mu$ M)
124		10-100
125		10-100
126		0.01-10
127		0.01-10
128		0.01-10
129		10-100
41		0.01-10
42		0.01-10
43		0.01-10
44		0.01-10

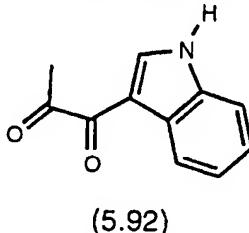
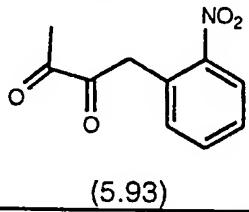
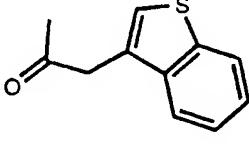
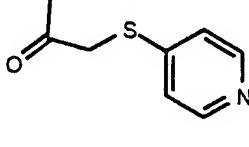
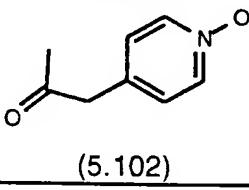
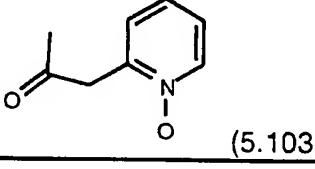
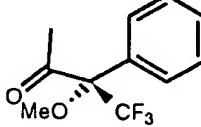
- 203 -

TABLE 7 - continued

EXAMPLE	R	FPT IC <sub>50</sub> (μM)
45		0.01-10
46		0.01-10
47		0.01-10
48		0.01-10
49		0.01-10
84		0.01-10
83		0.01-10
19		0.01-10
85		0.01-10

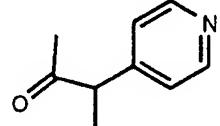
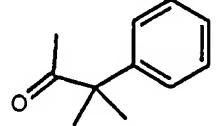
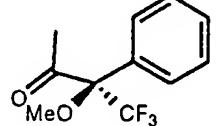
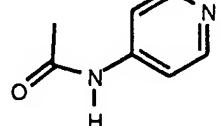
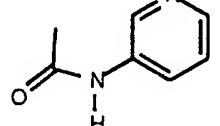
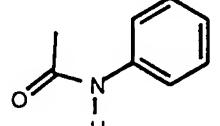
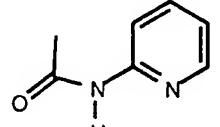
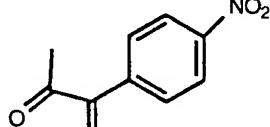
- 204 -

TABLE 7 - continued

EXAMPLE	R	FPT IC <sub>50</sub> ( $\mu$ M)
219	 (5.92)	0.01-10
220	 (5.93)	0.01-10
221	 (5.94)	0.01-10
222	 (5.95)	0.01-10
227	 (5.102)	0.01-10
228	 (5.103)	0.01-10
287		0.01-10

- 205 -

TABLE 7 - continued

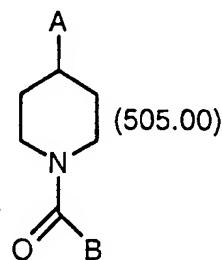
EXAMPLE	R	FPT IC <sub>50</sub> (μM)
288		0.01-10
289		0.01-10
290		0.01-10
291		0.01-10
292		0.01-10
293		0.01-10
294		0.01-10
295		0.01-10

- 206 -

TABLE 7 - continued

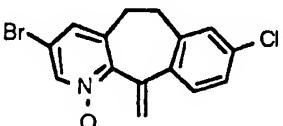
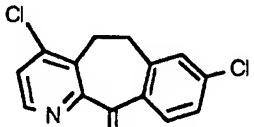
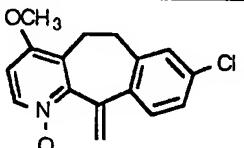
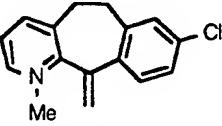
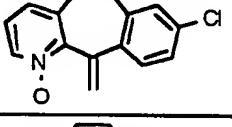
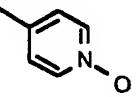
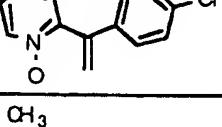
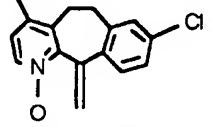
EXAMPLE	R	FPT IC <sub>50</sub> ( $\mu$ M)
296		0.01-10
297		0.01-10
298		0.01-10
299		0.01-10
300		0.01-10

The compounds listed in Table 8 refer to compounds of Formula 505.00:



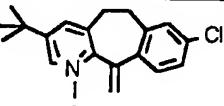
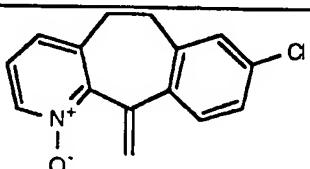
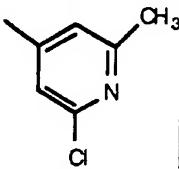
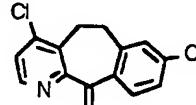
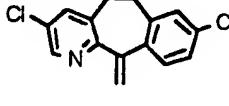
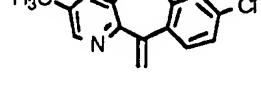
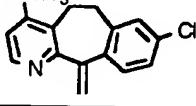
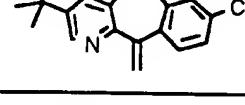
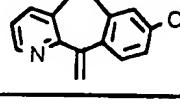
- 207 -

TABLE 8

EXAMPLE	A	B	FPT IC <sub>50</sub> (μM)
74B		CH <sub>3</sub>	0.01-10
74C		CH <sub>3</sub>	10-100
74A		CH <sub>3</sub>	10-100
130		CH <sub>3</sub>	10-100
131			10-100
73		CH <sub>3</sub>	10-100
132		CH <sub>3</sub>	10-100

- 208 -

TABLE 8 - continued

EXAMPLE	A	B	FPT IC <sub>50</sub> (μM)
133		CH <sub>3</sub>	10-100
134			>100
135		CH <sub>3</sub>	0.01-10
62		CH <sub>3</sub>	0.01-10
64		CH <sub>3</sub>	10-100
136		CH <sub>3</sub>	10-100
66		CH <sub>3</sub>	10-100
137		CH <sub>3</sub>	10-100

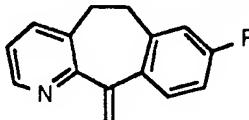
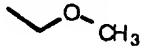
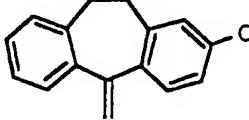
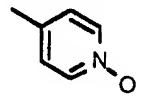
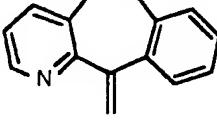
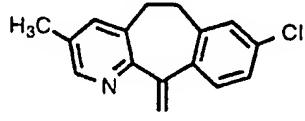
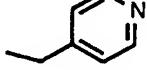
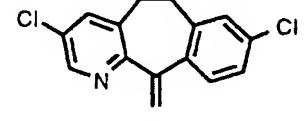
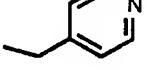
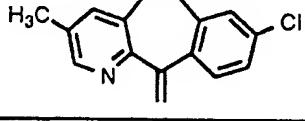
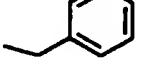
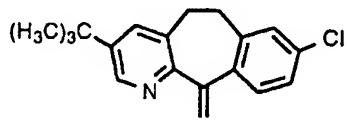
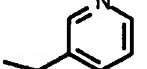
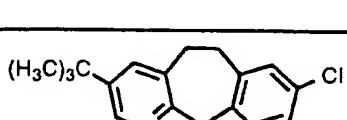
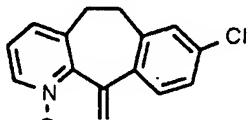
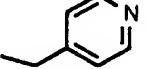
- 209 -

TABLE 8 - continued

EXAMPLE	A	B	FPT IC <sub>50</sub> (μM)
63		CH <sub>3</sub>	100
139		CH <sub>3</sub>	10-100
140		CH <sub>3</sub>	10-100
71A		CH <sub>3</sub>	10-100
141		CH <sub>3</sub>	10-100
143		CH <sub>3</sub>	10-100
71B		CH <sub>3</sub>	10-100
144		CH <sub>3</sub>	10-100
144a			10-100
71C		CH <sub>3</sub>	10-100

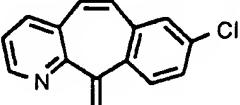
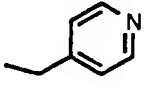
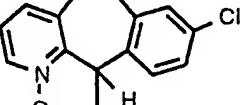
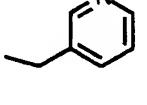
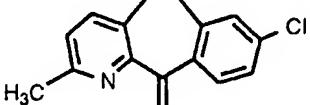
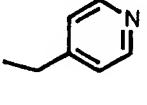
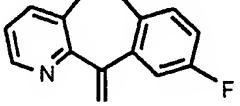
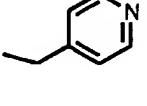
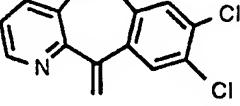
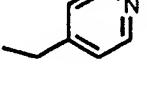
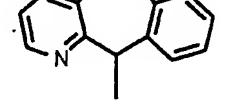
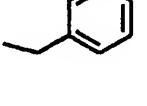
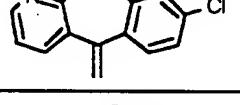
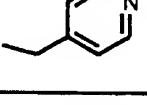
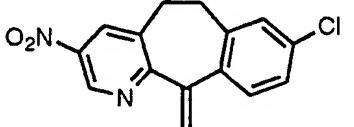
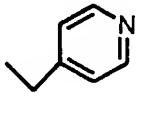
- 210 -

TABLE 8 - continued

EXAMPLE	A	B	FPT IC <sub>50</sub> (μM)
145			>100
146			10-100
147		CH <sub>3</sub>	>100
301			0.01-10
180			0.01-10
303			0.01-10
304			0.01-10
305			10-100
230			0.01-10

- 211 -

TABLE 8 - continued

EXAMPLE	A	B	FPT IC <sub>50</sub> (μM)
307			0.01-10
235			0.01-10
309			0.01-10
310			0.01-10
311			0.01-10
323			0.01-10
5.39			0.01-10
358			0.01-10

- 212 -

TABLE 8 - continued

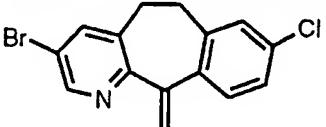
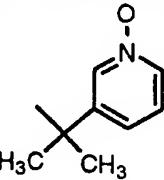
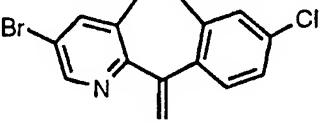
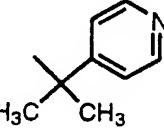
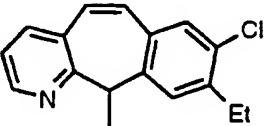
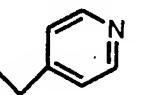
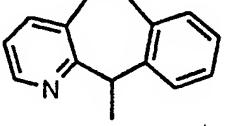
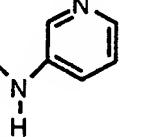
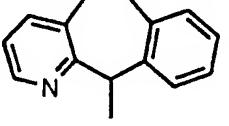
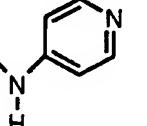
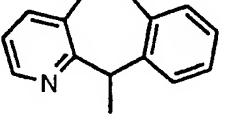
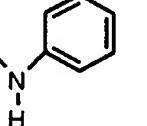
EXAMPLE	A	B	FPT IC <sub>50</sub> (μM)
360			0.01-10
361			0.01-10
362			0.01-10
365			0.01-10
366			0.01-10
367			0.01-10

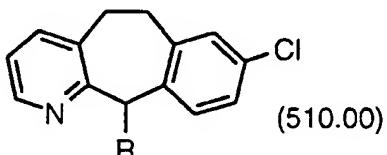
Table 9 lists FPT IC<sub>50</sub> results for additional compounds.

- 213 -

TABLE 9

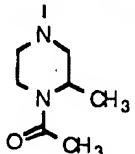
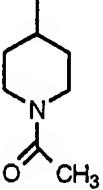
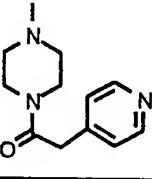
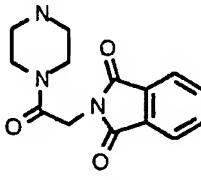
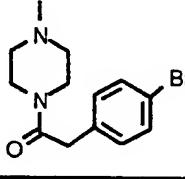
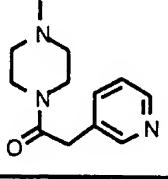
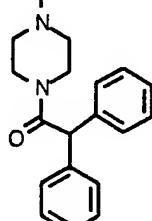
EXAMPLE	FPT IC <sub>50</sub> (μM)	EXAMPLE	FPT IC <sub>50</sub> (μM)	EXAMPLE	FPT IC <sub>50</sub> (μM)
229 (5.104)	0.01-10	231 (5.106)	10-100	232 (5.107)	0.01-10
236 (5.111)	0.01-10	237 (5.112)	10-100	238 (5.113)	10-100
239 (5.114)	0.01-10	240 (5.115)	0.01-10	246 (5.121)	0.01-10
247 (5.122)	0.01-10	248 (5.124)	0.01-10	248 (5.123)	0.01-10
249 (5.125)	0.01-10	250 (5.126)	0.01-10	256 (5.132)	0.01-10
257 (5.133)	0.01-10	258 (5.134)	10-100	259 (5.135)	0.01-10
260 (5.136)	0.01-10	266 (5.138)	0.01-10	269 (5.140)	0.01-10
276 (5.145)	0.01-10	279 (5.147)	0.01-10	280 (5.148)	10-100
281 (5.149)	0.01-10	282 (5.150)	0.01-10	283 (5.151)	0.01-10
284 (5.152)	0.01-10	285 (5.153)	0.01-10	286 (5.154)	0.01-10

The compounds listed in Table 10 refer to compounds of Formula 510.00:



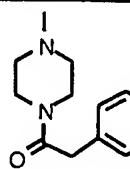
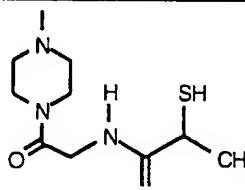
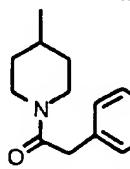
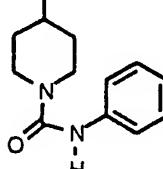
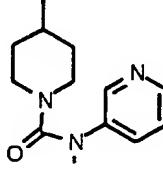
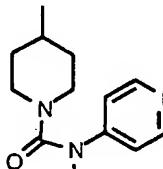
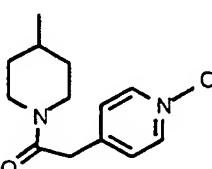
- 214 -

TABLE 10

EXAMPLE	R	FPT IC <sub>50</sub> (μM)
149		10-100
150		10-100
75		0.01-10 (5.17)
76		0.01-10 (5.18)
77		0.01-10 (5.19)
78		0.01-10 (5.20)
79		0.01-10 (5.21)

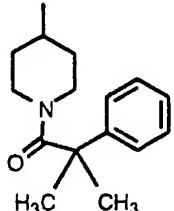
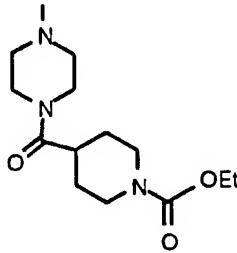
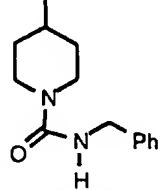
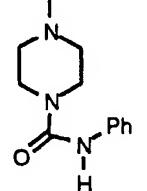
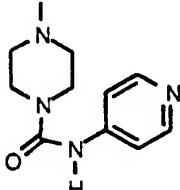
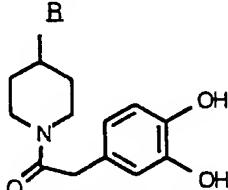
- 215 -

TABLE 10 - continued

EXAMPLE	R	FPT IC <sub>50</sub> (μM)
80	 (5.22)	0.01-10
81	 (5.23)	0.01-10
82	 (5.25)	0.01-10
312		0.01-10
313		0.01-10
314		0.01-10
234		0.01-10

- 216 -

TABLE 10 - continued

EXAMPLE	R	FPT IC <sub>50</sub> ( $\mu$ M)
316		0.01-10
317		10-100
318		0.01-10
182		0.01-10
183		0.01-10
321		0.01-10

- 217 -

TABLE 10 - continued

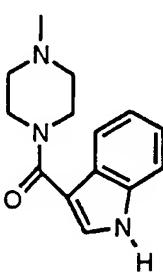
EXAMPLE	R	FPT IC <sub>50</sub> (μM)
368		>100

Table 11 lists FPT IC<sub>50</sub> results for additional compounds.

5

TABLE 11

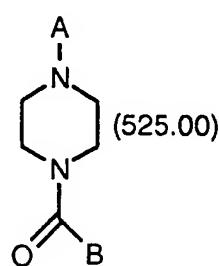
EXAMPLE	FPT IC <sub>50</sub> (μM)	EXAMPLE	FPT IC <sub>50</sub> (μM)	EXAMPLE	FPT IC <sub>50</sub> (μM)
187 (6.7)	0.01-10	187 (6.8)	0.01-10	188 (6.9)	0.01-10
189 (5.62)	0.01-10	190 (5.63)	0.01-10	191 (5.64)	0.01-10
192 (5.65)	0.01-10	194 (5.67)	0.01-10	195 (5.68)	0.01-10
196 (5.69)	0.01-10	197 (5.70)	0.01-10	198 (5.71)	0.01-10
199 (5.72A)	10-100	199 (5.72B)	10-100	200 (5.73)	0.01-10
201 (5.74)	0.01-10	202 (5.75)	10-100	203 (5.76)	10-100
205 (5.78)	0.01-10	206 (5.79)	0.01-10	207 (5.80)	10-100
208 (5.81)	0.01-10	209 (5.82)	0.01-10	210 (5.83)	0.01-10
211 (5.84)	0.01-10	212 (5.85)	0.01-10	213 (5.86)	10-100
214 (5.87)	>100	215 (5.88)	10-100	216 (5.89)	10-100

- 218 -

TABLE 11 - continued

EXAMPLE	FPT IC <sub>50</sub> (μM)	EXAMPLE	FPT IC <sub>50</sub> (μM)	EXAMPLE	FPT IC <sub>50</sub> (μM)
217 (5.90)	0.01-10	218 (5.91)	0.01-10	233 (5.108)	0.01-10
251 (5.127)	0.01-10	261 (6.12)	0.01-10	351	0.01-10
352	0.01-10	353	0.01-10	354	0.01-10
355	0.01-10	273 (5.143)	0.01-10	267 (6.17)	0.01-10
356	0.01-10	264 (6.15)	>100	262 (6.13)	0.01-10
263 (6.14)	0.01-10	253 (5.129)	0.01-10	350	0.01-10
252 (5.128)	0.01-10	182 (6.4)	0.01-10	268 (5.139)	0.01-10
277 (6.20)	0.01-10	----	----	----	----

The compounds listed in Table 12 refer to compounds of Formula 525.00:



- 219 -

TABLE 12

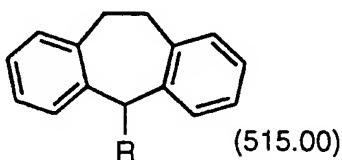
EXAMPLE	A	B	FPT IC <sub>50</sub> (μM)
184 (5.60)			0.01-10
185 (5.61)			0.01-10
223 (5.96)			0.01-10
223 (5.97)			0.01-10
224 (6.10)			0.01-10
224 (6.11)			0.01-10
225 (5.98)			0.01-10

- 220 -

TABLE 12 - continued

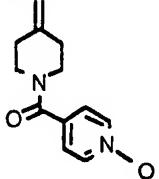
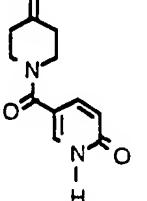
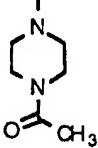
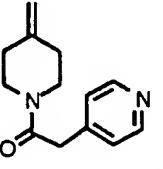
EXAMPLE	A	B	FPT IC <sub>50</sub> (μM)
225 (5.99)			0.01-10
226 (5.100)			0.01-10
226 (5.101)			0.01-10
351			0.01-10
354			0.01-10

The compounds listed in Table 13 refer to compounds of Formula 515.00:



- 221 -

TABLE 13

EXAMPLE	R	FPT IC <sub>50</sub> (μM)
151		10-100
152		10-100
153		10-100
87	 (5.24)	0.01-10

Additional FPT IC<sub>50</sub> results were: (1) Example 180, compound 5.47, 0.01-10 μM; (2) Example 181, compound 5.48, 0.01-10 μM; (3) 5 Example 182, compound 6.4, 0.01-10 μM; and (4) Example 183, compound 6.5, 0.01-10 μM.

TABLE 14  
COMPARISON OF FPT INHIBITION AND GGPT INHIBITION

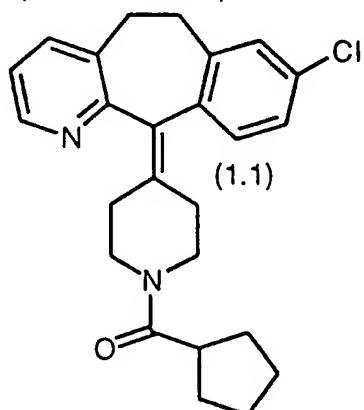
EXAMPLE	ENZYME INHIBITION FPT IC <sub>50</sub> μM	ENZYME INHIBITION GGPT IC <sub>50</sub> μM
1	0.01-10	>46
2	0.01-10	>46
3	0.01-10	>39
5	0.01-10	>46
7	0.01-10	>45
8	0.01-10	42
181	0.01-10	>42

- 222 -

TABLE 15  
ACTIVITY IN COS CELLS

Example	Inhibition of Ras Processing IC <sub>50</sub> (μM)	Example	Inhibition of Ras Processing IC <sub>50</sub> (μM)
1	0.01-10	----	----
82	0.01-10	156 (5.46)	0.01-10
75	0.01-10	2	0.01-10
45	0.01-10	157	0.01-10
78	0.01-10	42	0.01-10
19	0.01-10	89	0.01-10
83	0.01-10	5	0.01-10
77	0.01-10	43	0.01-10
6	0.01-10	49	10-100
47	10-100	44	10-100
87	10-100	46	10-100
85	10-100	84	10-100
3	10-100	76	10-100
154 (5.28)	10-100	48	10-100
5	10-100	88	10-100
53	10-100	181 (5.48)	0.01-10

- In Table 15, the numbers in parenthesis in the Example column  
 5 refer to the formula number for the compound used in the indicated example. Also, the compound of Example 157 is:



- 223 -

TABLE 16  
INHIBITION OF TUMOR CELL GROWTH  
MAT ASSAY

Example	Tumor IC <sub>50</sub> (μM)	Normal IC <sub>50</sub> (μM)	Example	Tumor IC <sub>50</sub> (μM)	Normal IC <sub>50</sub> (μM)
75	2.5	>50.0	----	----	----
1	3.1	25.0	82	3.1	40.0
5	6.3	>50.0	89	6.3	>25.0
127	6.3	>50.0	45	6.3	>50.0
88	8.0	>50.0	6	12.5	50.0
49	12.5	>50.0	47	12.5	>50.0
48	12.5	25.0	79	12.5	>50.0
158 (5.36)	12.5	18.0	2	25.0	>50.0
10	25.0	>50.0	128	25.0	>50.0
44	25.0	25.0	164 (5.30)	25.0	>50.0
43	25.0	50.0	165 (5.34)	25.0	50.0
53	25.0	>50.0	166 (5.26)	37.0	>50.0
159 (5.31)	37.0	>50.0	167 (5.32)	37.0	50.0
160 (5.39)	37.0	50.0	168 (5.44)	37.0	>50.0
161 (5.45)	37.0	>50.0	5	37.5	100.0
162 (5.29)	37.0	>50.0	93	40.0	>50.0
94	40.0	80.0	88	>50.0	>50.0
3	>50.0	>50.0	7	50.0	100.0
90	50.0	>50.0	91	50.0	80.0
95	>50.0	>50.0	11	>50.0	>50.0
12	50.0	>50.0	96	50.0	>50.0
97	>50.0	>50.0	98	50.0	>50.0
121	50.0	>50.0	126	50.0	>50.0
163 (5.27)	50.0	>50.0	42	50.0	>50.0
154 (5.28)	>50.0	>50.0	169 (5.33)	>50.0	>50.0
46	50.0	>50.0	80	>50.0	>50.0
77	>50.0	>50.0	76	>50.0	>50.0
81	>50.0	>50.0	173 (5.35)	>50.0	>50.0

- 224 -

TABLE 16 - continued

Example	Tumor IC <sub>50</sub> (μM)	Normal IC <sub>50</sub> (μM)	Example	Tumor IC <sub>50</sub> (μM)	Normal IC <sub>50</sub> (μM)
170 (5.37)	50.0	>50.0	174 (5.38)	50.0	50.0
171 (5.40)	50.0	>50.0	87	50.0	>50.0
172 (5.42)	>50.0	>50.0	175 (5.43)	>50.0	>50.0
180 (5.47)	18	>50.0	181 (5.48)	<3.1	>50.0

In Table 16, the numbers in parenthesis in the Example column refer to the formula number for the compound used in the indicated example.

TABLE 17

Example	Enzyme Inhibition GGPT IC <sub>50</sub> (μM)	COS CELLS Activity Inhibition of Ras Processing IC <sub>50</sub> (μM)	Inhibition of Tumor Cell Growth MAT Assay IC <sub>50</sub> (μM)	
			Tumor	Normal
180	>42	0.01-10	18	>50
			12.5	50
			12.5	>50
182 (6.4)	>40	10-100	37	>50
183 (6.5)	>40	10-100	5	18
184 (5.60)	----	10-100	12.5	>50
185 (5.61)	----	10-100	----	----
187 (6.7)	>46	0.01-10	37	>50
			25	>50
187 (6.8)	>46	0.01-10	9	>50
			4	50
189 (5.62)	42	0.01-10	37	>50
190 (5.63)	----	----	>50	>50
191 (5.64)	----	----	<3.1	50
192 (5.65)	>43	0.01-10	25	>50
			37	>50

- 225 -

TABLE 17 - continued

Example	Enzyme Inhibition GGPT IC <sub>50</sub> (μM)	COS CELLS Activity Inhibition of Ras Processing IC <sub>50</sub> (μM)	Inhibition of Tumor Cell Growth MAT Assay IC <sub>50</sub> (μM)	
			Tumor	Nomal
196 (5.69)	>46	0.01-10	37 25	>50 >50
197 (5.70)	----	10-100	25	>50
198 (5.71)	----	0.01-10	12.5	>50
200 (5.73)	----	0.01-10	18	>50
201 (5.74)	----	0.01-10	3.1	12.5
206	----	0.01-10	<3.1	16
208 (5.81)	----	----	>50	>50
209 (5.82)	----	----	25	>50
211 (5.84)	----	----	37	>50
212 (5.85)	----	----	25	37
217 (5.90)	----	----	37	50
218 (5.91)	----	----	37	50
219 (5.92)	----	----	25	>50
220 (5.93)	----	----	25	>50
221 (5.94)	----	----	6.25	>50
222 (5.95)	----	0.01-10	18	37
223 (5.96)	----	10-100	25	>50
223 (5.97)	----	0.01-10	8	>50
224 (6.11)	----	0.01-10	37	>50
225 (5.98)	----	----	12.5	50
225 (5.99)	----	0.01-10	12.5	>50
226 (5.100)	----	----	25	>50
226 (5.101)	----	0.01-10	12.5	>50
227 (5.102)	>41	0.01-10	4	>50
229 (5.104)	----	----	37	>50
230 (5.105)	----	10-100	37	>50
233 (5.108)	----	0.01-10	18	>50

- 226 -

TABLE 17 - continued

Example	Enzyme Inhibition GGPT IC <sub>50</sub> (μM)	COS CELLS Activity Inhibition of Ras Processing IC <sub>50</sub> (μM)	Inhibition of Tumor Cell Growth MAT Assay IC <sub>50</sub> (μM)	
			Tumor	Normal
234	>43	0.01-10	3.1	>50
235	----	0.01-10	12.5	>50
236 (5.111)	>45	0.01-10	4	>50
237 (5.112)	----	----	>50	>50
238 (5.113)	----	----	>50	>50
239 (5.114)	----	0.01-10	37	>50
246 (5.121)	>40	0.01-10	12.5 <3.1	50 >50
247 (5.122)	>40	0.01-10	25 8	>50 >50
248 (5.124)	----	0.01-10	18	>50
248 (5.123)	----	0.01-10	18	>50
250 (5.126)	----	0.01-10	18	>50
251 (5.127)	----	0.01-10	----	----
261 (6.12)	----	0.01-10	----	----
266 (5.138)	----	0.01-10	3.1	6.25
267 (6.17)	----	10-100	----	----
269 (5.140)	----	0.01-10	6.25	12.5
276 (5.145)	----	0.01-10	12.5	50
281 (5.149)	----	0.01-10	4	>50
283 (5.151)	----	0.01-10	10	>50
285 (5.153)	----	10-100	12.5	>50
286 (5.154)	----	0.01-10	25	>50
287	>40	10-100	3.1 50 25	>50 >50 >50

- 227 -

TABLE 17 - continued

Example	Enzyme Inhibition GGPT IC <sub>50</sub> (μM)	COS CELLS Activity Inhibition of Ras Processing IC <sub>50</sub> (μM)	Inhibition of Tumor Cell Growth MAT Assay IC <sub>50</sub> (μM)	
			Tumor	Normal
288	----	0.01-10	8	>50
289	>40	10-100	12.5	>50
			18	>50
			12.5	>50
290	>38	----	12.5	>50
			6.25	>50
			8	>50
291	>46	0.01-10	18	>50
292	>44	0.01-10	6.25	>50
293	>40	10-100	12.5	>50
			12.5	>50
			12.5	>50
294	----	0.01-10	18	>50
295	----	10-100	----	----
297	41	----	>50	>50
298	>35	10-100	>50	>50
299	1000	----	----	----
300	----	0.01-10	<3.1	>50
301	40	0.01-10	12.5	>50
			<3.1	>50
			<3.1	>50
303	>43	0.01-10	8	>50
304	>40	----	50	>50
305	----	----	25	>50
307	----	0.01-10	12.5	50
309	35.1	10-100	----	----
310	----	----	25	>50

- 228 -

TABLE 17 continued

Example	Enzyme Inhibition GGPT IC <sub>50</sub> (μM)	COS CELLS Activity Inhibition of Ras Processing IC <sub>50</sub> (μM)	Inhibition of Tumor Cell Growth MAT Assay IC <sub>50</sub> (μM)	
			Tumor	Normal
311	41.3	0.01-10	10	>50
312	>46	0.01-10	12.5	>50
313	>46	0.01-10	6.25	>50
314	>46	0.01-10	4	>50
316	>43	10-100	25	>50
318	----	----	37	37
321	----	----	6.25	>50
322	----	0.01-10	8	>50
351	1000	0.01-10	----	----
354	1000	----	----	----
365	----	0.01-10	6.25	>50
366	----	0.01-10	3.1	>50
367	----	0.01-10	6.25	>50

RESULTS:

5       1. Enzymology:

The data demonstrate that the compounds of the invention are inhibitors of Ras-CVLS farnesylation by partially purified rat brain farnesyl protein transferase (FPT). The data also show that there are compounds of the invention which can be considered as potent (IC<sub>50</sub> <10 μM) 10 inhibitors of Ras-CVLS farnesylation by partially purified rat brain FPT.

The data also demonstrate that compounds of the invention are poorer inhibitors of geranylgeranyl protein transferase (GGPT) assayed using Ras-CVLL as isoprenoid acceptor. Generally, the compounds of the invention are inactive or weakly active as geranylgeranyl transferase 15 inhibitors at 20 μg/mL. For example, with reference to Table 14, the compound of Example 1 inhibits GGPT 24% at 46 μM and is at least 184-fold selective for FPT inhibition. The compound of Example 2, for example, inhibits GGPT 25% at 46 μM and is at least 98-fold selective for

- 229 -

FPT inhibition. For another example, the compound of Example 3 inhibits GPPT 3% at 39  $\mu$ M and is at least 59-fold selective for FPT. This selectivity is important for the therapeutic potential of the compounds used in the methods of this invention, and increases the potential that the 5 compounds will have selective growth inhibitory properties against Ras-transformed cells.

2. Cell-Based: COS Cell Assay

Western blot analysis of the Ras protein expressed in Ras-transfected COS cells following treatment with the tricyclic farnesyl protein transferase 10 inhibitors of this invention indicated that they inhibit Ras-CVLS processing, causing accumulation of unprocessed Ras (see Table 15). The compound of Example 1, for example, inhibited Ras-CVLS processing with an IC<sub>50</sub> value of 0.01-10  $\mu$ M, but did not block the geranylgeranylation of Ras-CVLL at concentrations up to 20  $\mu$ g/mL. 15 Microscopic and photographic examination of the Ras-transfected COS cells following treatment with two of the tricyclic farnesyl transferase inhibitors of this invention indicated that they also blocked phenotypic changes induced by expression of oncogenic Ras. Cells expressing oncogenicRas-CVLS or Ras-CVLL overgrew the monolayer and formed 20 dense foci of cells. The compound of Example 1 inhibited the morphological changes induced by Ras-CVLS in a dose-dependent manner over the concentration range of 2 to 20  $\mu$ g/mL. The compound of Example 1 had little effect at 0.2 or 0.5  $\mu$ g/mL. Importantly, 20  $\mu$ g/mL of the compound of Example 1 did not prevent the morphological changes 25 induced by Ras-CVLL.

These results provide evidence for specific inhibition of farnesyl protein transferase, but not geranylgeranyl transferase I, by compounds of this invention in intact cells and indicate their potential to block cellular transformation by activated Ras oncogenes.

30 3. Cell-Based: Cell Mat Assay

Tricyclic farnesyl protein transferase inhibitors of this invention also inhibited the growth of Ras-transformed tumor cells in the Mat assay without displaying cytotoxic activity against the normal monolayer.

35 In Vivo Anti-Tumor Studies:

Tumor cells ( $5 \times 10^5$  to  $8 \times 10^6$  of M27 (mouse Lewis lung carcinoma), A431(human epidermal carcinoma) or SW620 (human colon adenocarcinoma [lymph node metastasis])) are innoculated

- 230 -

subcutaneously into the flank of 5-6 week old athymic nu/nu female mice. For the C-f-1 (mouse fibroblast transformed with c-fos oncogene) tumor model, 2 mm<sup>3</sup> tumor fragments are transplanted subcutaneously into the flank of 5-6 week old athymic nu/nu female mice. Tumor bearing animals  
 5 are selected and randomized when the tumors are established. Animals are treated with vehicle (beta cyclodextran for i.p. or corn oil for p.o.) only or compounds in vehicle twice a day (BID) for 5 (1-5), 6 (1-6), or 7 (1-7) days per week for 2 (x2) or 4 (x4) weeks. The percent inhibition of tumor  
 10 growth relative to vehicle controls are determined by tumor measurements. The results are reported in Table 18.

TABLE 18  
In-Vivo Anti-Tumor Results

s.c. Tumor	Route & Schedule	Ex 2	Ex 1	Ex 3	Ex 7	Ex 78	Ex 79	Ex 75
M27	po, BID, 1-7, x4	61.2	-----	27.3	58.2	-----	-----	-----
A431	ip, BID, 1-5, x4	-----	20.5	0	0	-----	-----	-----
A431	po, BID 1-5, x4	45.6	-----	8	29.1	-----	-----	-----
A431	po, BID, 1-5, x4	36.5	-----	26	-----	-----	-----	-----
A431	po, BID, 1-6, x4	-----	-----	-----	-----	31	0	34.5
C-f-1	ip, BID, 1-5, x2	8	0	8	39.7	-----	-----	-----
C-f-1	po, BID, 1-5, x4	9.6	-----	0	39.3	-----	-----	-----
C-f-1	po, BID, 1-5, x4	-----	-----	-----	-----	26.7	25	20
SW- 620	ip, BID, 1-5, x4	0	0	27	19.6	-----	-----	-----
SW- 620	po, BID, 1-5, x2	46.1	0	15.8	48.6	-----	-----	-----

- 231 -

TABLE 18 - continued

s.c. Tumor	Route & Schedule	Ex 2	Ex 1	Ex 3	Ex 7	Ex 78	Ex 79	Ex 75
SW- 620	po, BID, 1-5, x4	33.5	-----	-----	0	-----	-----	-----
SW- 620	po, BID, 1-5, x4	-----	-----	-----	-----	59.6	26.7	43.4

Additional in-vivo anti-tumor results are reported in Table 19. In Table 23, LOX is a human memanoma cell line, and the schedule "10/wk, 5 x4", for example, means 10 times per week (twice a day Monday to Friday) for 4 weeks.

TABLE 19  
In-Vivo Anti-Tumor Results

10

Example or Structure	Tumor	Dose (MPK)	Route & Schedule	Average % Tumor Inhibition
Ex. 2	SW620	100	ip, 10/wk, x2	0
	SW620	100	po, 10/wk, x2	0
	SW620	100	po, 10/wk, x4	1
	M27	100	po, 14/wk, x4	45
Ex. 4	SW620	100	po, 10/wk, x4	2
Ex. 7	SW620	100	po, 10wk, x2	13
	SW620	100	po, 10/wk, x4	0
	M27	100	po, 14/wk, x4	40
Ex. 45	SW620	100	po, 10/wk, x4	0
	SW620	100	po, 10/wk, x4	19
	M27	100	po, 10/wk, x3	0
Ex. 47	SW620	100	po, 10/wk, x4	0
	SW620	100	po, 10/wk, x4	30
	M27	100	po, 10/wk, x3	19
Ex. 49	SW620	100	po, 10/wk, x4	0
	SW620	100	po, 10/wk, x4	27
	M27	100	po, 10/wk, x3	30

- 232 -

TABLE 19 - continued

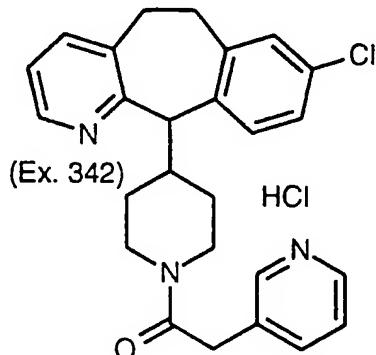
Example or Structure	Tumor	Dose (MPK)	Route & Schedule	Average % Tumor Inhibition
Ex. 75	SW620	100	po, 10/wk, x4	26
	SW620	100	po, 10/wk, x4	4
	SW620	100	po, 10/wk, x4	54
	SW620	100	po, 10/wk, x4	7
	M27	100	po, 10/wk, x4	0
Ex. 82	SW620	100	po, 10/wk, x4	25
	SW620	100	po, 10/wk, x4	32
Ex. 88	SW620	100	po, 10/wk, x4	43.25*
	M27	100	po, 10/wk, x4	19
	SW620	100	po, 10/wk, x4	38*
	LOX	100	po, 10/wk, x4	70
	SW620	100	po, 10/wk, x4	38
	SW620	100	po, 10/wk, x4	37
	SW620	50	po, 10/wk, x4	30
	SW620	50	po, 10/wk, x4	30
	SW620	25	po, 10/wk, x4	4
	SW620	25	po, 10/wk, x4	0
	SW620	100	po, 10/wk, x4	27.4*
	LOX	100	po, 10/wk, x4	33
	SW620	100	po, 10/wk, x4	28
Ex. 127	SW620	100	po, 10/wk, x4	25
	SW620	100	po, 10/wk, x4	42
	M27	100	po, 10/wk, x3	22
Ex. 187 (6.8)	SW620	100	po, 10/wk, x4	11
	SW620	100	po, 10/wk, x4	21
Ex. 192	SW620	100	po, 10/wk, x4	29
	SW620	100	po, 10/wk, x4	40
Ex. 287	SW620	100	po, 10/wk, x4	14
	SW620	100	po, 10/wk, x4	0
Ex. 290	SW620	100	po, 10/wk, x4	41
	SW620	100	po, 10/wk, x4	16

- 233 -

TABLE 19 - continued

Example or Structure	Tumor	Dose (MPK)	Route & Schedule	Average % Tumor Inhibition
Ex. 293	SW620	100	po, 10/wk, x4	5
	SW620	100	po, 10/wk, x4	47
Ex. 301	SW620	100	po, 10/wk, x4	16
	SW620	100	po, 10/wk, x4	0
Ex. 82A	SW620	100	po, 10/wk, x4	27
	SW620	100	po, 10/wk, x4	26
Ex. 342	SW620	100	po, 10/wk, x4	39
	SW620	100	po, 10/wk, x4	31
5.21	SW620	100	po, 10/wk, x4	19
	SW620	100	po, 10/wk, x4	17
	M27	100	po, 10/wk, x4	0
5.25	SW620	100	po, 10/wk, x4	7
	SW620	100	po, 10/wk, x4	36
* Average of several results				

The compound of Example 342 (Table 19) is:



- 5        For preparing pharmaceutical compositions from the compounds described by this invention, inert, pharmaceutically acceptable carriers can be either solid or liquid. Solid form preparations include powders, tablets, dispersible granules, capsules, cachets and suppositories. The powders and tablets may be comprised of from about 5 to about 70
- 10      percent active ingredient. Suitable solid carriers are known in the art, e.g. magnesium carbonate, magnesium stearate, talc, sugar, lactose. Tablets,

- 234 -

powders, cachets and capsules can be used as solid dosage forms suitable for oral administration.

For preparing suppositories, a low melting wax such as a mixture of fatty acid glycerides or cocoa butter is first melted, and the active

- 5 ingredient is dispersed homogeneously therein as by stirring. The molten homogeneous mixture is then poured into convenient sized molds, allowed to cool and thereby solidify.

- Liquid form preparations include solutions, suspensions and emulsions. As an example may be mentioned water or water-propylene  
10 glycol solutions for parenteral injection.

Liquid form preparations may also include solutions for intranasal administration.

- Aerosol preparations suitable for inhalation may include solutions and solids in powder form, which may be in combination with a  
15 pharmaceutically acceptable carrier, such as an inert compressed gas.

Also included are solid form preparations which are intended to be converted, shortly before use, to liquid form preparations for either oral or parenteral administration. Such liquid forms include solutions, suspensions and emulsions.

- 20 The compounds of the invention may also be deliverable transdermally. The transdermal compositions can take the form of creams, lotions, aerosols and/or emulsions and can be included in a transdermal patch of the matrix or reservoir type as are conventional in the art for this purpose.

- 25 Preferably the compound is administered orally.

Preferably, the pharmaceutical preparation is in unit dosage form. In such form, the preparation is subdivided into unit doses containing appropriate quantities of the active component, e.g., an effective amount to achieve the desired purpose.

- 30 The quantity of active compound in a unit dose of preparation may be varied or adjusted from about 0.1 mg to 1000 mg, more preferably from about 1 mg. to 300 mg, according to the particular application.

The actual dosage employed may be varied depending upon the requirements of the patient and the severity of the condition being treated.

- 35 Determination of the proper dosage for a particular situation is within the skill of the art. Generally, treatment is initiated with smaller dosages which are less than the optimum dose of the compound. Thereafter, the dosage is increased by small increments until the optimum effect under the

- 235 -

circumstances is reached. For convenience, the total daily dosage may be divided and administered in portions during the day if desired.

The amount and frequency of administration of the compounds of the invention and the pharmaceutically acceptable salts thereof will be  
5 regulated according to the judgment of the attending clinician considering such factors as age, condition and size of the patient as well as severity of the symptoms being treated. A typical recommended dosage regimen is oral administration of from 10 mg to 2000 mg/day preferably 10 to 1000 mg/day, in two to four divided doses to block tumor growth. The  
10 compounds are non-toxic when administered within this dosage range.

The following are examples of pharmaceutical dosage forms which contain a compound of the invention. The scope of the invention in its pharmaceutical composition aspect is not to be limited by the examples  
15 provided.

Pharmaceutical Dosage Form Examples

EXAMPLE A

Tablets

No.	Ingredients	mg/tablet	mg/tablet
1.	Active compound	100	500
2.	Lactose USP	122	113
3.	Corn Starch, Food Grade, as a 10% paste in Purified Water	30	40
4.	Corn Starch, Food Grade	45	40
5.	Magnesium Stearate	3	7
	Total	300	700

Method of Manufacture

20 Mix Item Nos. 1 and 2 in a suitable mixer for 10–15 minutes.

Granulate the mixture with Item No. 3. Mill the damp granules through a coarse screen (e.g., 1/4", 0.63 cm) if necessary. Dry the damp granules. Screen the dried granules if necessary and mix with Item No. 4 and mix for 10–15 minutes. Add Item No. 5 and mix for 1–3 minutes. Compress  
25 the mixture to appropriate size and weigh on a suitable tablet machine.

- 236 -

EXAMPLE B

Capsules

No.	Ingredient	mg/capsule	mg/capsule
1.	Active compound	100	500
2.	Lactose USP	106	123
3.	Corn Starch, Food Grade	40	70
4.	Magnesium Stearate NF	<u>7</u>	<u>7</u>
	Total	253	700

5    Method of Manufacture

Mix Item Nos. 1, 2 and 3 in a suitable blender for 10-15 minutes.

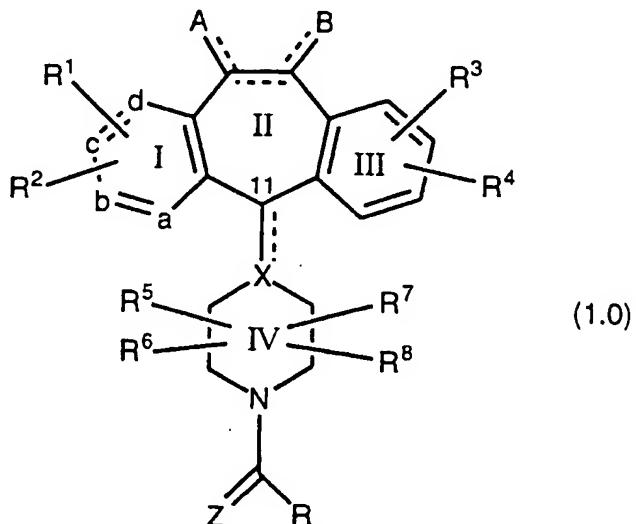
Add Item No. 4 and mix for 1-3 minutes. Fill the mixture into suitable two-piece hard gelatin capsules on a suitable encapsulating machine.

10      While the present invention has been described in conjunction with the specific embodiments set forth above, many alternatives, modifications and variations thereof will be apparent to those of ordinary skill in the art. All such alternatives, modifications and variations are intended to fall within the spirit and scope of the present invention.

- 237 -

WHAT IS CLAIMED IS:

1. A method for inhibiting the abnormal growth of cells comprising administering an effective amount of a compound of Formula 5 1.0:



or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt or solvate thereof, wherein:

- one of a, b, c and d represents N or NR<sup>9</sup> wherein R<sup>9</sup> is O<sup>-</sup>, -CH<sub>3</sub> or -(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>n</sub>CO<sub>2</sub>H wherein n is 1 to 3, and the remaining a, b, c and d groups 10 represent CR<sup>1</sup> or CR<sup>2</sup>; or
- each of a, b, c, and d are independently selected from CR<sup>1</sup> or CR<sup>2</sup>;
  - each R<sup>1</sup> and each R<sup>2</sup> is independently selected from H, halo, -CF<sub>3</sub>, -OR<sup>10</sup>, -COR<sup>10</sup>, -SR<sup>10</sup>, -S(O)<sub>t</sub>R<sup>11</sup> (wherein t is 0, 1 or 2), -N(R<sup>10</sup>)<sub>2</sub>, -NO<sub>2</sub>, -OC(O)R<sup>10</sup>, -CO<sub>2</sub>R<sup>10</sup>, -OCO<sub>2</sub>R<sup>11</sup>, -CN, -NR<sup>10</sup>COOR<sup>11</sup>, -SR<sup>11</sup>C(O)OR<sup>11</sup>, 15 -SR<sup>11</sup>N(R<sup>75</sup>)<sub>2</sub> (wherein each R<sup>75</sup> is independently selected from H and -C(O)OR<sup>11</sup>), benzotriazol-1-yloxy, tetrazol-5-ylthio, or substituted tetrazol-5-ylthio, alkynyl, alkenyl or alkyl, said alkyl or alkenyl group optionally being substituted with halo, -OR<sup>10</sup> or -CO<sub>2</sub>R<sup>10</sup>;
  - R<sup>3</sup> and R<sup>4</sup> are the same or different and each independently represents H, any of the substituents of R<sup>1</sup> and R<sup>2</sup>, or R<sup>3</sup> and R<sup>4</sup> taken together represent a saturated or unsaturated C<sub>5</sub>-C<sub>7</sub> fused ring to the benzene ring; 20
  - R<sup>5</sup>, R<sup>6</sup>, R<sup>7</sup> and R<sup>8</sup> each independently represents H, -CF<sub>3</sub>, -COR<sup>10</sup>, alkyl or aryl, said alkyl or aryl optionally being substituted with -OR<sup>10</sup>, 25 -SR<sup>10</sup>, -S(O)<sub>t</sub>R<sup>11</sup>, -NR<sup>10</sup>COOR<sup>11</sup>, -N(R<sup>10</sup>)<sub>2</sub>, -NO<sub>2</sub>, -COR<sup>10</sup>, -OCOR<sup>10</sup>, -OCO<sub>2</sub>R<sup>11</sup>, -CO<sub>2</sub>R<sup>10</sup>, OPO<sub>3</sub>R<sup>10</sup> or one of R<sup>5</sup>, R<sup>6</sup>, R<sup>7</sup> and R<sup>8</sup> can be taken

- 238 -

in combination with R<sup>40</sup> as defined below to represent -(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>r</sub> wherein r is 1 to 4 which can be substituted with lower alkyl, lower alkoxy, -CF<sub>3</sub> or aryl, or R<sup>5</sup> is combined with R<sup>6</sup> to represent =O or =S and/or R<sup>7</sup> is combined with R<sup>8</sup> to represent =O or =S;

5        R<sup>10</sup> represents H, alkyl, aryl, or aralkyl;

      R<sup>11</sup> represents alkyl or aryl;

      X represents N, CH or C, which C may contain an optional double bond, represented by the dotted line, to carbon atom 11;

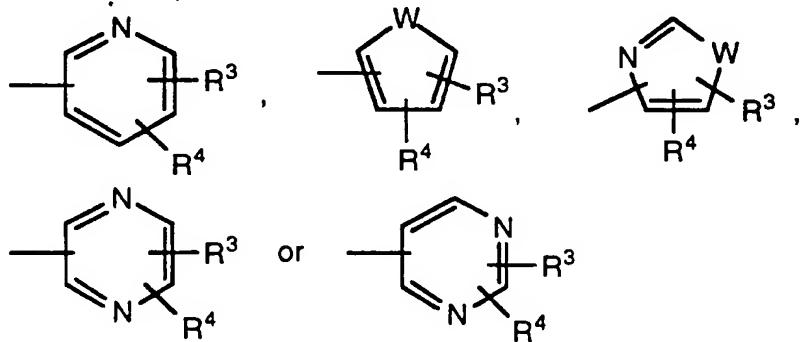
            the dotted line between carbon atoms 5 and 6 represents an

10      optional double bond, such that when a double bond is present, A and B independently represent -R<sup>10</sup>, halo, -OR<sup>11</sup>, -OCO<sub>2</sub>R<sup>11</sup> or -OC(O)R<sup>10</sup>, and when no double bond is present between carbon atoms 5 and 6, A and B each independently represent H<sub>2</sub>, -(OR<sup>11</sup>)<sub>2</sub>; H and halo, dihalo, alkyl and H, (alkyl)<sub>2</sub>, -H and -OC(O)R<sup>10</sup>, H and -OR<sup>10</sup>, =O, aryl and H, =NOR<sup>10</sup> or

15      -O-(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>p</sub>-O- wherein p is 2, 3 or 4;

      R represents R<sup>40</sup>, R<sup>42</sup>, R<sup>44</sup>, or R<sup>54</sup>, as defined below;

      R<sup>40</sup> represents H, aryl, alkyl, cycloalkyl, alkenyl, alkynyl or -D  
wherein -D represents



20      wherein R<sup>3</sup> and R<sup>4</sup> are as previously defined and W is O, S or NR<sup>10</sup>  
wherein R<sup>10</sup> is as defined above; said R<sup>40</sup> cycloalkyl, alkenyl and alkynyl groups being optionally substituted with from 1-3 groups selected from halo, -CON(R<sup>10</sup>)<sub>2</sub>, aryl, -CO<sub>2</sub>R<sup>10</sup>, -OR<sup>12</sup>, -SR<sup>12</sup>, -N(R<sup>10</sup>)<sub>2</sub>, -N(R<sup>10</sup>)CO<sub>2</sub>R<sup>11</sup>, -COR<sup>12</sup>, -NO<sub>2</sub> or D, wherein -D, R<sup>10</sup> and R<sup>11</sup> are as defined above and R<sup>12</sup> represents R<sup>10</sup>, -(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>m</sub>OR<sup>10</sup> or -(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>q</sub>CO<sub>2</sub>R<sup>10</sup>  
wherein R<sup>10</sup> is as previously defined, m is 1 to 4 and q is 0 to 4; said alkenyl and alkynyl R<sup>40</sup> groups not containing -OH, -SH or -N(R<sup>10</sup>)<sub>2</sub> on a carbon containing a double or triple bond respectively; or

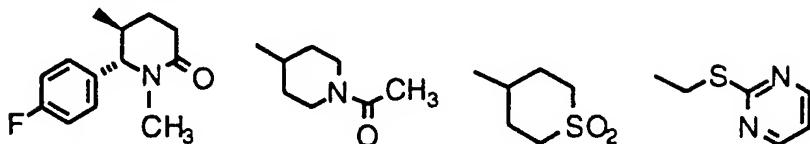
      R<sup>40</sup> represents phenyl substituted with a group selected from

30      -SO<sub>2</sub>NH<sub>2</sub>, -NHSO<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>3</sub>, -SO<sub>2</sub>NHCH<sub>3</sub>, -SO<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>3</sub>, -SOCH<sub>3</sub>, -SCH<sub>3</sub>, or

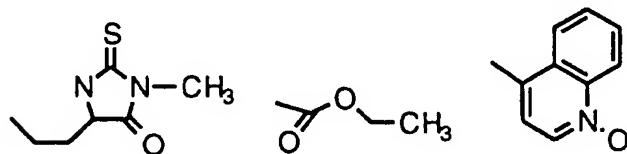
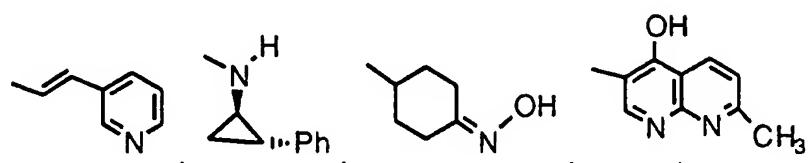
- 239 -

-NHSO<sub>2</sub>CF<sub>3</sub>, preferably, said group is located in the para position of the phenyl ring; or

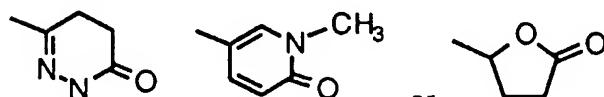
R<sup>40</sup> represents a group selected from



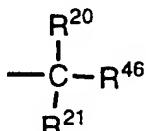
5



10



, or



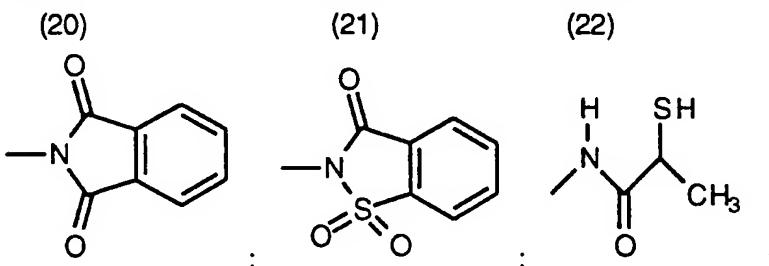
wherein R<sup>20</sup>, R<sup>21</sup> and R<sup>46</sup> are each independently selected from the group consisting of:

- 15      (1)    H;  
         (2)    -(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>q</sub>SC(O)CH<sub>3</sub> wherein q is 1 to 3;  
         (3)    -(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>q</sub>OSO<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>3</sub> wherein q is 1 to 3;  
         (4)    -OH;  
         (5)    -CS(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>w</sub>(substituted phenyl) wherein w is 1 to 3 and the  
 20     substituents on said substituted phenyl group are the same substituents  
        as described below for said substituted phenyl;  
         (6)    -NH<sub>2</sub>;  
         (7)    -NHCBZ;

- 240 -

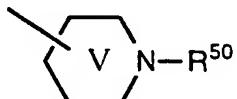
(8)  $-\text{NHC(O)OR}^{22}$  wherein  $\text{R}^{22}$  is an alkyl group having from 1 to 5 carbon atoms, or  $\text{R}^{22}$  represents phenyl substituted with 1 to 3 alkyl groups;

- (9) alkyl;
- 5 (10)  $-(\text{CH}_2)_k\text{phenyl}$  wherein  $k$  is 1 to 6;
- (11) phenyl;
- (12) substituted phenyl wherein the substituents are selected from the group consisting of: halo,  $\text{NO}_2$ ,  $-\text{OH}$ ,  $-\text{OCH}_3$ ,  $-\text{NH}_2$ ,  $-\text{NHR}^{22}$ ,  $-\text{N}(\text{R}^{22})_2$ , alkyl,  $-\text{O}(\text{CH}_2)_t\text{phenyl}$  (wherein  $t$  is from 1 to 3), and  $-\text{O}(\text{CH}_2)_t$  substituted phenyl (wherein  $t$  is from 1 to 3);
- 10 (13) naphthyl;
- (14) substituted naphthyl, wherein the substituents are as defined for substituted phenyl above;
- (15) bridged polycyclic hydrocarbons having from 5 to 10 carbon atoms;
- 15 (16) cycloalkyl having from 5 to 7 carbon atoms;
- (17) heteroaryl;
- (18) hydroxyalkyl;
- (19) substituted pyridyl or substituted pyridyl N-oxide wherein the substituents are selected from the substituents given above for said substituted phenyl, and said substituents are bound to a ring carbon by replacement of the hydrogen bound to said carbon;



- 25 (23)  $-\text{NHC(O)}-(\text{CH}_2)_k\text{-phenyl}$  or  $-\text{NH(O)}-(\text{CH}_2)_k$ -substituted phenyl, wherein said  $k$  is as defined above;

(24) piperidine Ring V:



- wherein  $\text{R}^{50}$  represents H, alkyl, alkylcarbonyl, alkyloxycarbonyl, haloalkyl, or  $-\text{C(O)NH(R}^{10})$  wherein  $\text{R}^{10}$  is H or alkyl;
- 30 (25)  $-\text{NHC(O)CH}_2\text{C}_6\text{H}_5$  or  $-\text{NHC(O)CH}_2$ -substituted-C<sub>6</sub>H<sub>5</sub>;

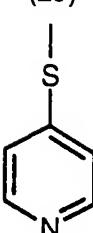
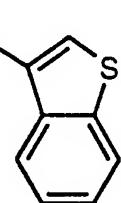
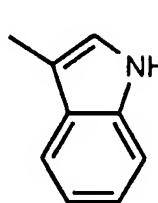
- 241 -

(26)  $-\text{NHC(O)OC}_6\text{H}_5;$

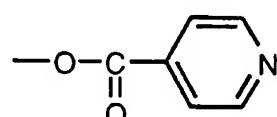
(27)

(28)

(29)



(30)  $-\text{OC(O)-heteroaryl, for example}$



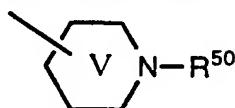
5

(31)  $-\text{O-alkyl}$  (e.g.,  $-\text{OCH}_3$ ); and

(32)  $-\text{CF}_3$ ; or

$\text{R}^{20}$  and  $\text{R}^{21}$  taken together form a  $=\text{O}$  group and the remaining  $\text{R}^{46}$  is as defined above; or

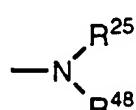
10 Two of  $\text{R}^{20}$ ,  $\text{R}^{21}$ , and  $\text{R}^{46}$  taken together form piperidine Ring V



wherein  $\text{R}^{50}$  is as defined above;

with the proviso that  $\text{R}^{46}$ ,  $\text{R}^{20}$ , and  $\text{R}^{21}$  are selected such that the carbon atom to which they are bound does not contain more than one heteroatom;

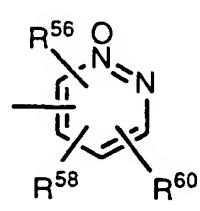
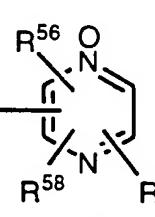
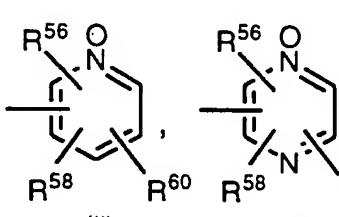
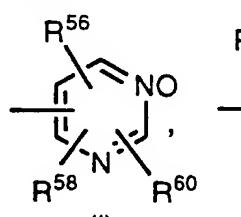
15  $\text{R}^{44}$  represents



wherein  $\text{R}^{25}$  represents heteroaryl or aryl; and  $\text{R}^{48}$  represents H or alkyl;

$\text{R}^{54}$  represents an N-oxide heterocyclic group of the formula (i), (ii),

20 (iii) or (iv):

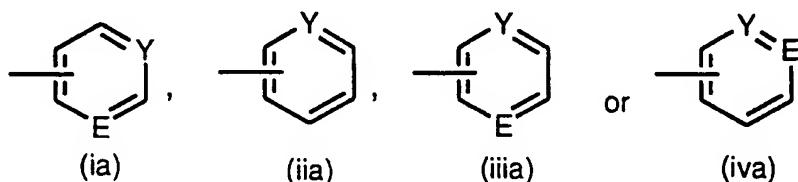


(iv)

- 242 -

wherein R<sup>56</sup>, R<sup>58</sup>, and R<sup>60</sup> are the same or different and each is independently selected from H, halo, -CF<sub>3</sub>, -OR<sup>10</sup>, -C(O)R<sup>10</sup>, -SR<sup>10</sup>, -S(O)eR<sup>11</sup> (wherein e is 1 or 2), -N(R<sup>10</sup>)<sub>2</sub>, -NO<sub>2</sub>, -CO<sub>2</sub>R<sup>10</sup>, -OCO<sub>2</sub>R<sup>11</sup>, -OCOR<sup>10</sup>, alkyl, aryl, alkenyl or alkynyl, which alkyl may be substituted with -OR<sup>10</sup>, -SR<sup>10</sup> or -N(R<sup>10</sup>)<sub>2</sub> and which alkenyl may be substituted with OR<sup>11</sup> or SR<sup>11</sup>; or

R<sup>54</sup> represents an N-oxide heterocyclic group of the formula (ia), (iia), (iiiia) or (iva):



10 wherein Y represents N<sup>+</sup>-O<sup>-</sup> and E represents N; or

R<sup>54</sup> represents an alkyl group substituted with one of said N-oxide heterocyclic groups (i), (ii), (iii), (iv), (ia), (iia), (iiiia) or (iva);

Z represents O or S such that R can be taken in combination with R<sup>5</sup>, R<sup>6</sup>, R<sup>7</sup> or R<sup>8</sup> as defined above, or R represents R<sup>40</sup>, R<sup>42</sup>, R<sup>44</sup> or R<sup>54</sup>.

15

2. The method of Claim 1 wherein a is N and b, c, and d are carbon; R<sup>1</sup> and R<sup>2</sup> are the same or different and each is independently selected from H, halo, -CF<sub>3</sub>, lower alkyl, or benzotriazol-1-yloxy, and R<sup>1</sup> is at the C-4 position and R<sup>2</sup> is at the C-3 position; R<sup>3</sup> and R<sup>4</sup> are the same or different and each is independently selected from H or halo, and R<sup>3</sup> is at the C-8 position and R<sup>4</sup> is at the C-9 position; when the double bond between carbon atoms 5 and 6 is present, A and B independently represent H, lower alkyl or alkyloxy; and when the double bond between carbon atoms 5 and 6 is absent, A and B independently represent H<sub>2</sub>, (-H and -OH) or =O; R<sup>5</sup>, R<sup>6</sup>, R<sup>7</sup>, and R<sup>8</sup> are H; Z is O; and R represents R<sup>42</sup> and the R<sup>46</sup> is selected from phenyl, substituted phenyl, heteroaryl or piperidine Ring V.

30 3. The method of Claim 2 wherein R<sup>20</sup> and R<sup>21</sup> are each independently selected from H and alkyl; R<sup>3</sup> is Cl; R<sup>4</sup> is H; R<sup>1</sup> and R<sup>2</sup> are individually selected from H, benzotriazol-1-yloxy, C<sub>1</sub> to C<sub>4</sub> alkyl or halo; and R<sup>46</sup> represents 3-pyridyl, 3-pyridyl N-oxide, 4-pyridyl, 4-pyridyl N-oxide, 3-N-methylpiperidinyl, 4-N-methylpiperidinyl, 3-N-acetyl piperidinyl or 4-N-acetyl piperidinyl.

- 243 -

4. The method of Claim 3 wherein both R<sup>20</sup> and R<sup>21</sup> are H, or both R<sup>20</sup> and R<sup>21</sup> are methyl; R<sup>1</sup> and R<sup>2</sup> are individually selected from H, Br, Cl, methyl or benzotriazol-1-yloxy; and R<sup>46</sup> represents 3-pyridyl, 3-pyridyl N-oxide, 4-pyridyl, 4-pyridyl N-oxide, 3-N-methylpiperidinyl or 4-N-methylpiperidinyl.

5. The method of Claim 1 wherein a is N and b, c, and d are carbon; R<sup>1</sup> and R<sup>2</sup> are the same or different and each is independently selected from H, halo, -CF<sub>3</sub>, lower alkyl, or benzotriazol-1-yloxy, and R<sup>1</sup> is at the C-4 position and R<sup>2</sup> is at the C-3 position; R<sup>3</sup> and R<sup>4</sup> are the same or different and each is independently selected from H or halo, and R<sup>3</sup> is at the C-8 position and R<sup>4</sup> is at the C-9 position; when the double bond between carbon atoms 5 and 6 is present, A and B independently represent H, lower alkyl or alkyloxy; and when the double bond between carbon atoms 5 and 6 is absent, A and B independently represent H<sub>2</sub>, (-H and -OH) or =O; R<sup>5</sup>, R<sup>6</sup>, R<sup>7</sup>, and R<sup>8</sup> are H; Z is O; and R represents R<sup>44</sup> and the R<sup>25</sup> represents pyridyl or phenyl.

6. The method of Claim 5 wherein R<sup>25</sup> represents 3-pyridyl or phenyl; R<sup>3</sup> is Cl; R<sup>4</sup> is H; R<sup>48</sup> represents are H or methyl; and R<sup>1</sup> and R<sup>2</sup> are individually selected from H, benzotriazol-1-yloxy, C<sub>1</sub> to C<sub>4</sub> alkyl or halo.

7. The method of Claim 6 wherein R<sup>1</sup> and R<sup>2</sup> are individually selected from H, Br, Cl, methyl or benzotriazol-1-yloxy.

8. The method of Claim 1 wherein the the cells inhibited are tumor cells expressing an activated ras oncogene.

30 9. The method of Claim 8 wherein the cells inhibited are pancreatic tumor cells, lung cancer cells, myeloid leukemia tumor cells, thyroid follicular tumor cells, myelodysplastic tumor cells, epidermal carcinoma tumor cells, bladder carcinoma tumor cells or colon tumors cells.

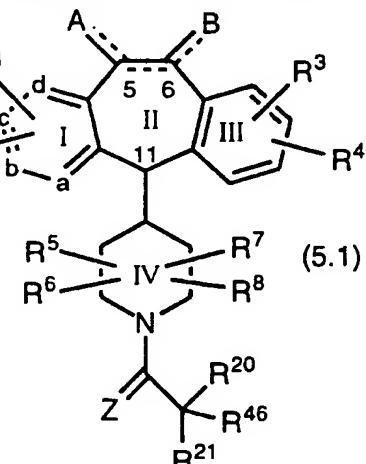
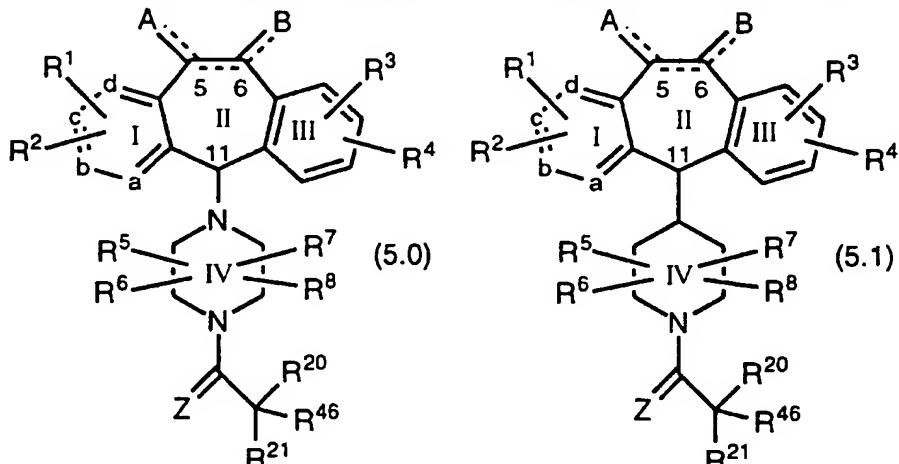
35 10. The method of Claim 1 wherein the inhibition of the abnormal growth of cells occurs by the inhibition of ras farnesyl protein transferase.

- 244 -

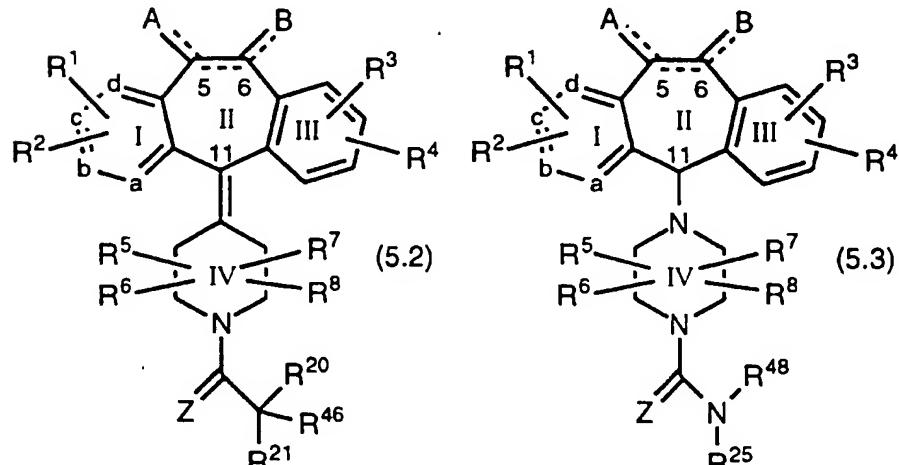
11. The method of Claim 1 wherein the inhibition is of tumor cells wherein the Ras protein is activated as a result of oncogenic mutation in genes other than the Ras gene.

- 5        12. The method of Claim 1 wherein the compound is selected from the compounds of Examples: 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 19, 42, 43, 44, 45, 46, 47, 48, 49, 75, 76, 78, 82, 83, 84, 85, 89, 121, 180, 182, 183, 184, 187 structure 6.7, 187 structure 6.8, 192, 196, 197, 198, 200, 201, 206, 222, 223, 224, 225, 226, 227, 233, 234, 236, 239, 246, 247, 248, 249, 250, 10      251, 261, 262, 266, 267, 269, 273, 276, 283, 285, 286, 287, 288, 289, 291, 292, 293, 299, 300, 301, 303, 307, 309, 311, 312, 313, 314, 316, 350, 351, 352, 354 or 356.

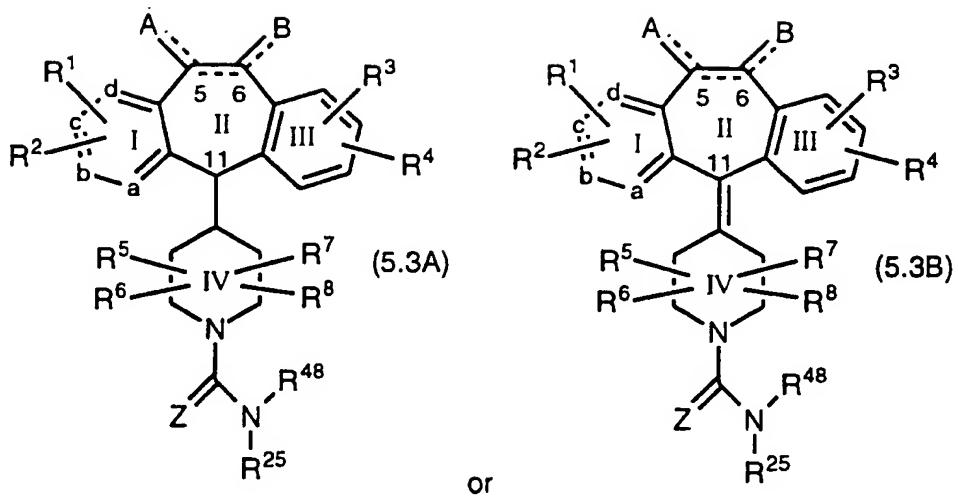
13. A compound selected from a compound of the formula:



15



- 245 -



or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt or solvate thereof, wherein all the substituents are as defined in Claim 1, and wherein for the compounds of Formula 5.2 the substituents R<sup>20</sup>, R<sup>21</sup>, and R<sup>46</sup> are selected such that

- 5 when one of said substituents R<sup>20</sup>, R<sup>21</sup>, and R<sup>46</sup> is selected from the group consisting of: (1) H, (2) -OH, (3) -NH<sub>2</sub>, (4) -NHC(O)OR<sup>22</sup>, (5) alkyl, (6) phenyl, (7) heteroaryl, (8) hydroxyalkyl, (9) substituted pyridyl, (10) substituted phenyl and (11) -O-alkyl, then the remaining two of said substituents R<sup>20</sup>, R<sup>21</sup> and R<sup>46</sup> cannot both be H when: (a) R<sup>1</sup> and R<sup>2</sup> are both H, and (b) the double bond between C-5 and C-6 is absent, and (c) both A and B are H<sub>2</sub>, and (d) R<sup>4</sup> is H, and (e) R<sup>3</sup> is H or Cl at C-8.

14. The compound of Claim 13 wherein a is N and b, c, and d are carbon; R<sup>1</sup> and R<sup>2</sup> are the same or different and each is independently selected from H, halo, -CF<sub>3</sub>, lower alkyl, or benzotriazol-1-yloxy, and R<sup>1</sup> is at the C-4 position and R<sup>2</sup> is at the C-3 position; R<sup>3</sup> and R<sup>4</sup> are the same or different and each is independently selected from H or halo, and R<sup>3</sup> is at the C-8 position and R<sup>4</sup> is at the C-9 position; when the double bond between carbon atoms 5 and 6 is present, A and B independently represent H, lower alkyl or alkoxy; and when the double bond between carbon atoms 5 and 6 is absent, A and B independently represent H<sub>2</sub>, (-H and -OH) or =O; R<sup>5</sup>, R<sup>6</sup>, R<sup>7</sup>, and R<sup>8</sup> are H; Z is O; and R<sup>46</sup> is selected from phenyl, substituted phenyl, heteroaryl or piperidine Ring V.

25

15. The compound of Claim 14 wherein R<sup>20</sup> and R<sup>21</sup> are each independently selected from H and alkyl; R<sup>3</sup> is Cl; R<sup>4</sup> is H; R<sup>1</sup> and R<sup>2</sup> are

- 246 -

individually selected from H, benzotriazol-1-yloxy, C<sub>1</sub> to C<sub>4</sub> alkyl or halo; and R<sup>46</sup> represents 3-pyridyl, 3-pyridyl N-oxide, 4-pyridyl, 4-pyridyl N-oxide, 3-N-methylpiperidinyl, 4-N-methylpiperidinyl, 3-N-acetyl piperidinyl or 4-N-acetyl piperidinyl.

5

16. The compound of Claim 15 wherein both R<sup>20</sup> and R<sup>21</sup> are H, or both R<sup>20</sup> and R<sup>21</sup> are methyl; R<sup>1</sup> and R<sup>2</sup> are individually selected from H, Br, Cl, methyl or benzotriazol-1-yloxy; and R<sup>46</sup> represents 3-pyridyl, 3-pyridyl N-oxide, 4-pyridyl, 4-pyridyl N-oxide, 3-N-methylpiperidinyl or 4-N-methylpiperidinyl.

10

17. The compound of Claim 13 wherein a is N and b, c, and d are carbon; R<sup>1</sup> and R<sup>2</sup> are the same or different and each is independently selected from H, halo, -CF<sub>3</sub>, lower alkyl, or benzotriazol-1-yloxy, and R<sup>1</sup> is at the C-4 position and R<sup>2</sup> is at the C-3 position; R<sup>3</sup> and R<sup>4</sup> are the same or different and each is independently selected from H or halo, and R<sup>3</sup> is at the C-8 position and R<sup>4</sup> is at the C-9 position; when the double bond between carbon atoms 5 and 6 is present, A and B independently represent H, lower alkyl or alkyloxy; and when the double bond between carbon atoms 5 and 6 is absent, A and B independently represent H<sub>2</sub>, (-H and -OH) or =O; R<sup>5</sup>, R<sup>6</sup>, R<sup>7</sup>, and R<sup>8</sup> are H; Z is O; and R<sup>25</sup> represents phenyl, 3-pyridyl, 3-pyridyl N-oxide, 4-pyridyl, 4-pyridyl N-oxide, 3-N-methylpiperidinyl, 4-N-methylpiperidinyl, 3-N-acetyl piperidinyl or 4-N-acetyl piperidinyl.

25

18. The compound of Claim 17 wherein R<sup>25</sup> represents phenyl, 3-pyridyl, 3-pyridyl N-oxide, 4-pyridyl, 4-pyridyl N-oxide, 3-N-methylpiperidinyl or 4-N-methylpiperidinyl; R<sup>3</sup> is Cl; R<sup>4</sup> is H; R<sup>48</sup> represents are H or methyl; and R<sup>1</sup> and R<sup>2</sup> are individually selected from H, benzotriazol-1-yloxy, C<sub>1</sub> to C<sub>4</sub> alkyl or halo.

30

19. The compound of Claim 18 wherein R<sup>1</sup> and R<sup>2</sup> are individually selected from H, Br, Cl, methyl or benzotriazol-1-yloxy.

35

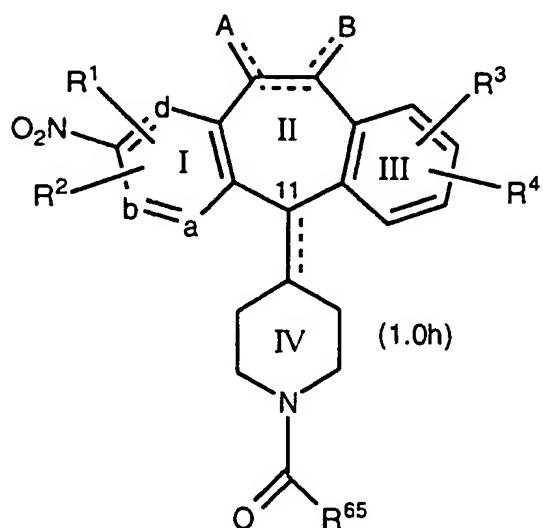
20. The compound of Claim 13 selected from a compound having the structure number: 5.17, 5.18, 5.19, 5.20, 5.21, 5.22, 5.23, 5.60, 5.61, 5.62, 5.63, 5.64, 5.65, 5.66, 5.67, 5.68, 5.69, 5.70, 5.71, 5.72, 5.73, 5.74, 5.75, 5.76, 5.77, 5.78, 5.79, 5.81, 5.82, 5.83, 5.84, 5.85, 5.90, 5.91,

- 247 -

5.96, 5.97, 5.98, 5.99, 5.100, 5.101, 5.108, 5.109, 5.110, 5.111, 5.138,  
 5.139, 5.140, 5.141, 5.143, 5.4, 5.5, 5.6, 5.7, 5.8, 5.9, 5.10, 5.11, 5.12,  
 5.13, 5.14, 5.15, 5.16, 5.24, 5.26, 5.27, 5.29, 5.30, 5.31, 5.32, 5.33, 5.34,  
 5.35, 5.36, 5.37, 5.38, 5.40, 5.42, 5.44, 5.45, 5.46, 5.48, 5.92, 5.93, 5.94,  
 5 5.95, 5.102, 5.103, 5.104, 5.105, 5.107, 5.114, 5.115, 5.121, 5.122, 5.123,  
 5.124, 5.125, 5.126, 5.127, 5.128, 5.129, 5.132, 5.133, 5.134, 5.135,  
 5.136, 5.145, 5.146, 5.147, 5.149, 5.150, 5.151, 5.152, 5.153, 5.154, 6.4,  
 6.5, 6.6, 6.7, 6.8, 6.9, 6.10, 6.11, 6.17, 6.19, 6.12, 6.13, 6.14 or 6.20; or  
 selected from the compound of example number 82, 82A, 235, 316, 323,  
 10 310, 350, 352, 355, 89, 180, 181, 204, 234, 287, 288, 289, 290, 295, 296,  
 297, 298, 299, 300, 301, 303, 304, 305, 307, 309, 311, 356, 312, 313,  
 314, 354, 291, 292, 293 or 294 .

21. A pharmaceutical composition for inhibiting the abnormal  
 15 growth of cells comprising an effective amount of compound of Claim 13  
 in combination with a pharmaceutically acceptable carrier.

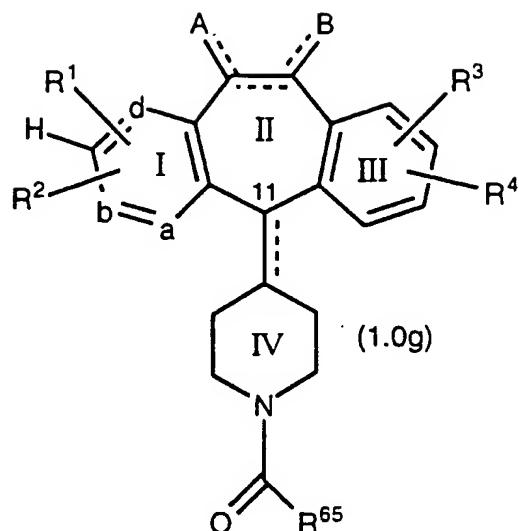
22. A process for producing 3-nitro substituted compounds of  
 Formula 1.0h:



20 wherein R<sup>1</sup>, R<sup>2</sup>, R<sup>3</sup>, R<sup>4</sup>, A, B, a, b, d, and the dotted lines are as defined for  
 Formula 1.0 in Claim 1, and R<sup>65</sup> represents H or -OR<sup>66</sup> wherein R<sup>66</sup>  
 represents alkyl, comprising:

reacting one molar equivalent of a compound of Formula 1.0g:

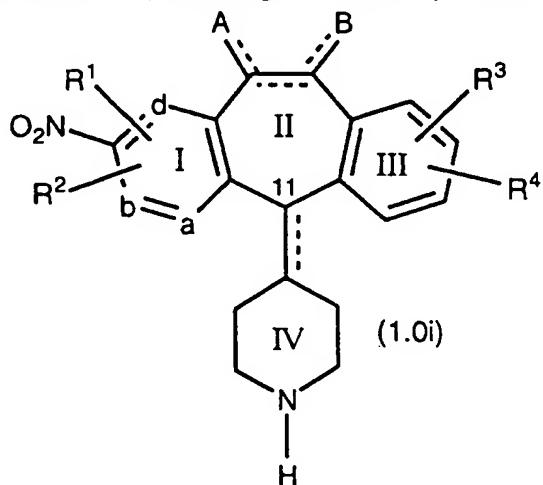
- 248 -



wherein R<sup>1</sup>, R<sup>2</sup>, R<sup>3</sup>, R<sup>4</sup>, A, B, a, b, d, and the dotted lines are as defined for Formula 1.0 in Claim 1, and R<sup>65</sup> represents H or -OR<sup>66</sup> wherein R<sup>66</sup> represents alkyl;

- 5        with one molar equivalent of a nitrating reagent, said nitrating reagent being preformed by mixing, at cold temperature, equimolar amounts of tetrabutyl ammonium nitrate with trifluoroacetic anhydride; the reaction of said nitrating reagent with said compound of Formula 1.0g taking place in a suitable aprotic solvent; and
- 10      said reaction with said nitrating reagent being conducted at a temperature and for a period of time sufficient to allow the reaction to proceed at a reasonable rate to produce the 3-nitro compound of Formula 1.0h.

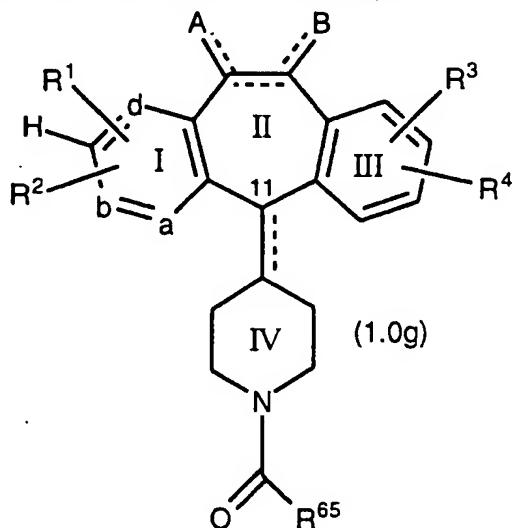
- 15      23. A process for producing 3-nitro compounds of the formula:



- 249 -

wherein R<sup>1</sup>, R<sup>2</sup>, R<sup>3</sup>, R<sup>4</sup>, A, B, a, b, d, and the dotted lines are as defined for Formula 1.0 in Claim 1, comprising:

reacting one molar equivalent of a compound of Formula 1.0g:



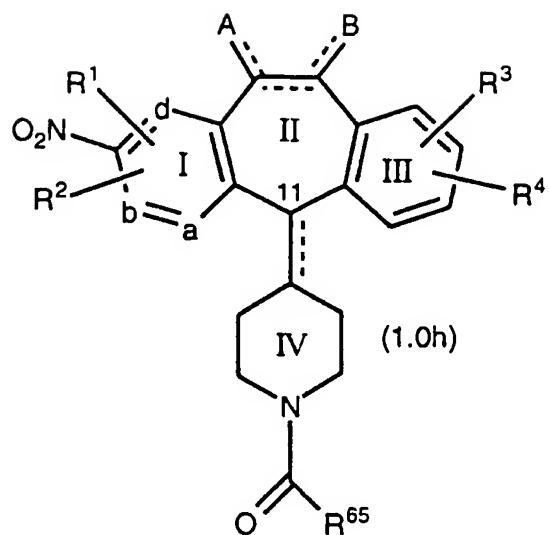
5 wherein R<sup>1</sup>, R<sup>2</sup>, R<sup>3</sup>, R<sup>4</sup>, A, B, a, b, d, and the dotted lines are as defined for Formula 1.0 in Claim 1, and R<sup>65</sup> represents H or -OR<sup>66</sup> wherein R<sup>66</sup> represents alkyl;

10 with one molar equivalent of a nitrating reagent, said nitrating reagent being preformed by mixing, at cold temperature, equimolar amounts of tetrabutyl ammonium nitrate with trifluoroacetic anhydride;

the reaction of said nitrating reagent with said compound of Formula 1.0g taking place in a suitable aprotic solvent; and

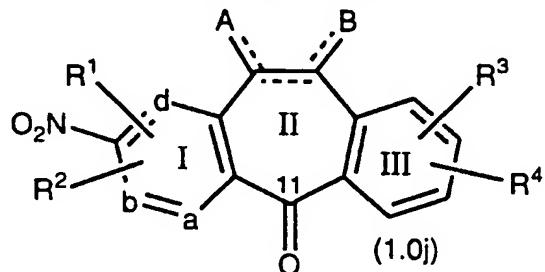
15 said reaction with said nitrating reagent being conducted at a temperature and for a period of time sufficient to allow the reaction to proceed at a reasonable rate to produce the 3-nitro compound of Formula 1.0h:

- 250 -



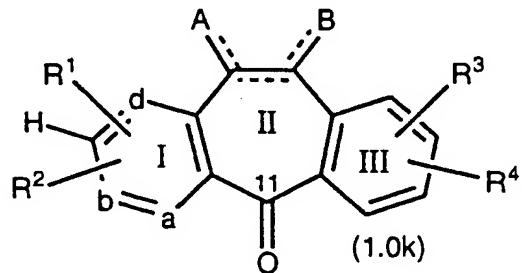
hydrolyzing the compound of Formula 1.0h by dissolving the compound of Formula 1.0h in a sufficient amount of concentrated acid, and heating the resulting mixture to a temperature sufficient to remove the -C(O)R<sup>65</sup> substituent to produce the compound of Formula 1.0i.

24. A process for producing compounds of the formula:



wherein R<sup>1</sup>, R<sup>2</sup>, R<sup>3</sup>, R<sup>4</sup>, A, B, a, b, d, and the dotted lines are as defined for  
10 Formula 1.0 in Claim 1, comprising:

reacting one molar equivalent a compound of formula:



with one molar equivalent of a nitrating reagent;

- 251 -

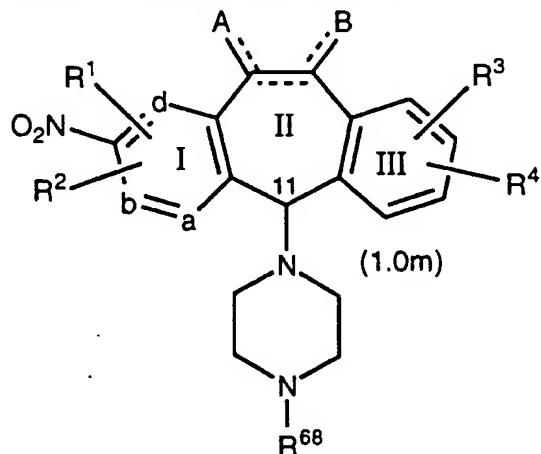
said nitrating reagent being preformed, by mixing at a cold temperature, equimolar amounts of tetrabutyl ammonium nitrate with trifluoroacetic anhydride;

- the reaction of said nitrating reagent with the compound of Formula 5 1.0k taking place in a suitable aprotic solvent;

said reaction with said nitrating reagent being conducted at a temperature and for a period of time sufficient to allow the reaction to proceed at a reasonable rate to produce the 3-nitro compound of Formula 1.0j.

10

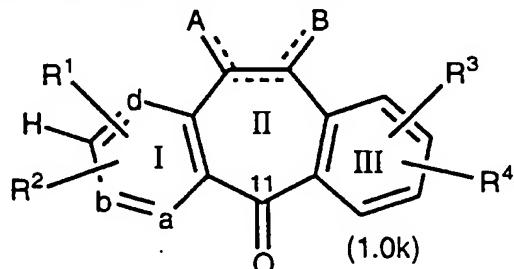
25. A process for producing a compound of Formula 1.0m:



wherein R<sup>1</sup>, R<sup>2</sup>, R<sup>3</sup>, R<sup>4</sup>, A, B, a, b, d, and the dotted lines are as defined for Formula 1.0 in Claim 1, and wherein R<sup>68</sup> is H or -COOR<sup>a</sup> wherein R<sup>a</sup> is a

- 15 C<sub>1</sub> to C<sub>3</sub> alkyl group, comprising:

reacting one molar equivalent a compound of formula:



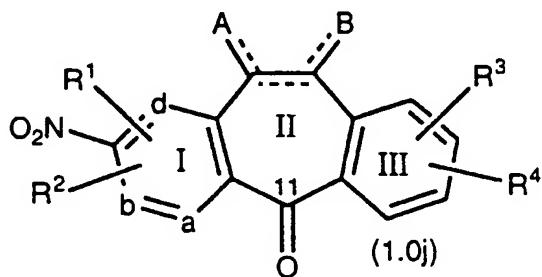
with one molar equivalent of a nitrating reagent;

- said nitrating reagent being preformed, by mixing at a cold 20 temperature, equimolar amounts of tetrabutyl ammonium nitrate with trifluoroacetic anhydride;

- 252 -

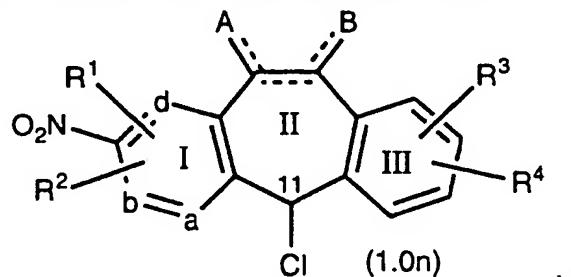
the reaction of said nitrating reagent with the compound of Formula 1.0k taking place in a suitable aprotic solvent;

- said reaction with said nitrating reagent being conducted at a temperature and for a period of time sufficient to allow the reaction to proceed at a reasonable rate to produce the 3-nitro compound of Formula 1.0j:



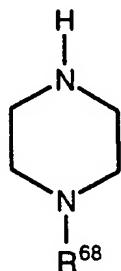
- reducing said compound of Formula 1.0j with a suitable reducing agent in a suitable solvent at a suitable temperature to allow the reaction to proceed at a reasonable rate;

reacting the resulting hydroxy product with a chlorinating agent in a suitable organic solvent at a suitable temperature to allow the reaction to proceed at a reasonable rate to produce a compound of Formula 1.0n:



; and

- reacting said compound of Formula 1.0n with a compound of the formula:

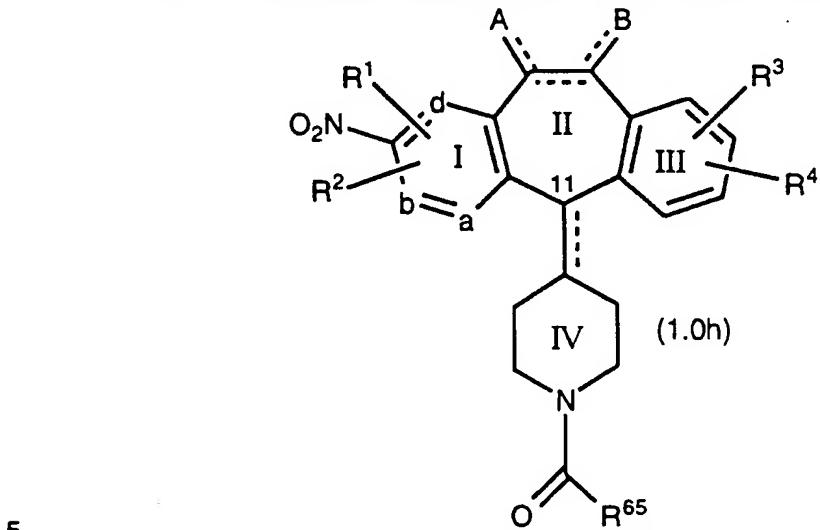


wherein R<sup>68</sup> is as previously defined, in a suitable organic solvent containing a suitable base at a suitable temperature to allow the reaction

- 253 -

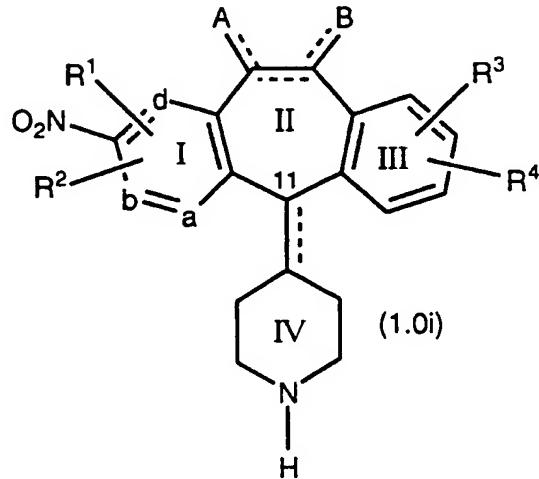
to proceed at a reasonable rate to produce the compounds of Formula 1.0m.

26. A compound selected from a compound of the formula:



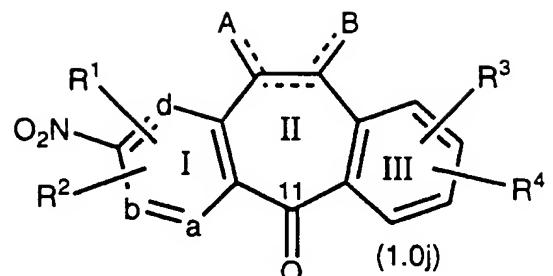
5

wherein R<sup>1</sup>, R<sup>2</sup>, R<sup>3</sup>, R<sup>4</sup>, A, B, a, b, d, and R<sup>65</sup> are as defined for Formula 1.0h in Claim 22;

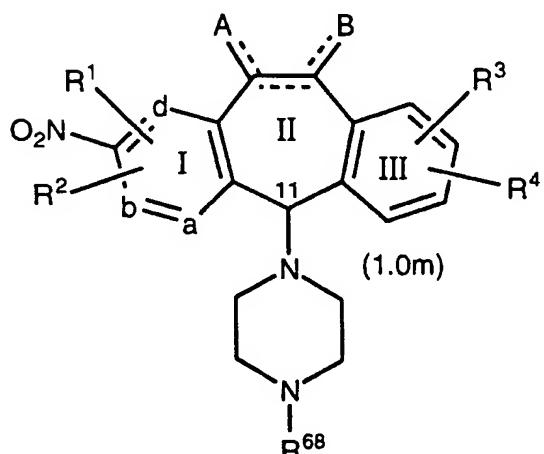


10 wherein R<sup>1</sup>, R<sup>2</sup>, R<sup>3</sup>, R<sup>4</sup>, A, B, a, b, and d are as defined for Formula 1.0i in Claim 23;

- 254 -

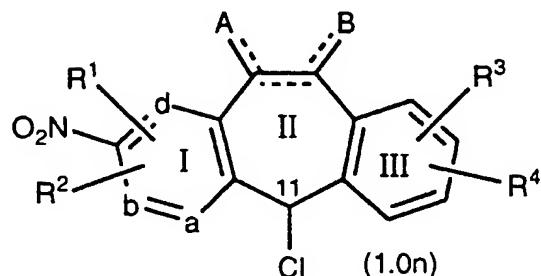


wherein R<sup>1</sup>, R<sup>2</sup>, R<sup>3</sup>, R<sup>4</sup>, A, B, a, b, and d are as defined for Formula 1.0j in Claim 24;



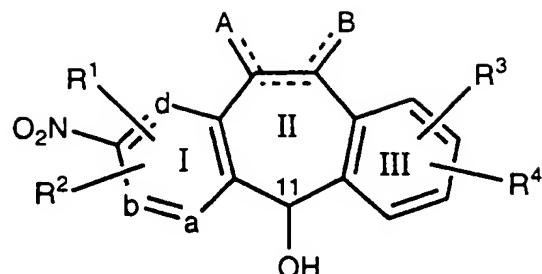
5

wherein R<sup>1</sup>, R<sup>2</sup>, R<sup>3</sup>, R<sup>4</sup>, A, B, a, b, d and R<sup>68</sup> are as defined for Formula 1.0m in Claim 25;



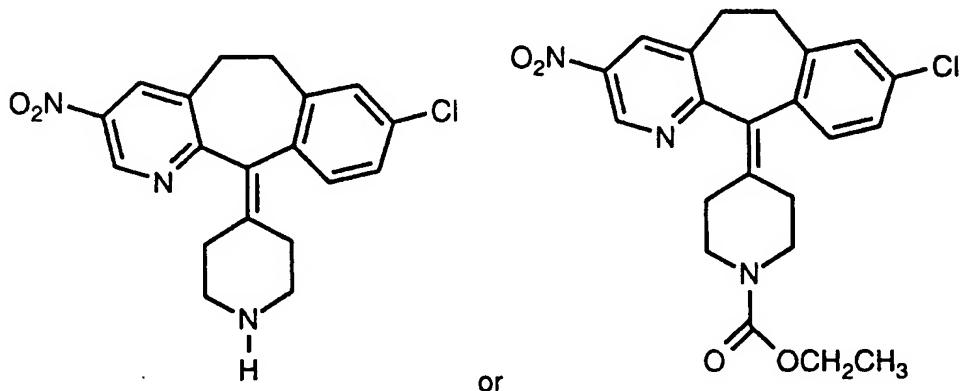
10 wherein R<sup>1</sup>, R<sup>2</sup>, R<sup>3</sup>, R<sup>4</sup>, A, B, a, b, and d are as defined for Formula 1.0j in Claim 24; or

- 255 -



wherein R<sup>1</sup>, R<sup>2</sup>, R<sup>3</sup>, R<sup>4</sup>, A, B, a, b, and d are as defined for Formula 1.0j in Claim 24.

5        27. A compound selected from a compound of the formula:



28. The use of a compound of Claim 13 for the manufacture of a medicament for use in inhibiting the abnormal growth of cells.

10

29. The use of a compound of Claim 13 for inhibiting the abnormal growth of cells.

15

30. A process for producing a compound of Formula 5.0, 5.1 or 5.3, comprising:

- (a) reacting a compound of Formula 405.00 with RCOOH at a temperature between 0°C and reflux in an inert solvent;
- (b) reacting a compound of Formula 405.00 with RC(O)L, wherein L represents a suitable leaving group, in the presence of a base;
- (c) reacting a compound of Formula 420.00 with an appropriate acyl halide or an acyl anhydride;
- (d) reducing compounds of Formula 405.00, wherein X is carbon and the bond to C-11 is a double bond, with lithium aluminum hydride in tetrahydrofuran, and then reacting reduced Formula 405.00

- 256 -

with RCOOH or RC(O)L to produce compounds of Formula 1.0 wherein X is carbon and the bond to C-11 is a single bond;

- (e) reducing compounds of Formula 470.00d with sodium borohydride in methanol or ethanol, converting the resulting alcohol (470.00e) to a chloride (470.00f) with thionyl chloride, displacing with piperazine (405.00c), and reacting the resulting compound with RCOOH or RC(O)L as described above for the conversion of Formula 405.00 to Formula 1.0 wherein the bond to C-11 is a single bond;
- 5 (f) cyclizing a compound of Formula 455.00 to produce a compound of Formula 1.0 wherein the bond to C-11 is a double bond;
- 10 (g) reacting the azaketone of Formula 470.00 with an oxidizing agent to produce the corresponding compound wherein the nitrogen of the pyridine ring is an N-oxide, reacting the resulting product with a chlorinating agent to produce a compound of Formula 470.00b, optionally repeating the chlorination to produce the disubstituted compound of Formula 470.00c, optionally reacting the compound of Formula 470.00b or 470.00c with nucleophiles to obtain the substituted compound of Formula 470.00d, reacting the compound of 470.00d as described in (f) above to produce compounds of Fromula 1.0;
- 15 (h) reacting the N-oxide of the compound of Formula 405.00 with POCl<sub>3</sub> to form a compound of Formula 415.01 wherein R<sup>1</sup> or R<sup>2</sup> is Cl;
- 20 (i) reacting a halo-substituted compound of formula 405.00, wherein R<sup>1</sup> is halo, an alkyl lithium to provide the lithio derivative and then quenching the lithio derivative with the appropriate electrophile;
- 25 (j) reacting a compound of Formula 1.0, wherein Z is O, with P<sub>2</sub>S<sub>5</sub> to produce a compound of Fromula 1.0 wherein Z is S;
- (k) reacting a compound of Formula 470.00h in acetic acid with SeO<sub>2</sub> to produce a compound of Formula 470.00i and then converting the compound of 470.00i to a compound of Formula 1.0.
- 30 (l) alkylating the appropriately substituted piperazine compound of Formula 700.00 with a compound of Formula 705.00 to produce a compound of formula 1.0 wherein X is N; or
- (m) reductive amination of the aza ketone of Formula 715.00 with the piperazine of Formula 700.00.

## INTERNATIONAL SEARCH REPORT

International Application No  
PCT/US 94/11392

A. CLASSIFICATION OF SUBJECT MATTER  
IPC 6 C07D401/04 C07D221/16 C07D401/14 A61K31/55 C07D401/12

According to International Patent Classification (IPC) or to both national classification and IPC

## B. FIELDS SEARCHED

Minimum documentation searched (classification system followed by classification symbols)  
IPC 6 C07D

Documentation searched other than minimum documentation to the extent that such documents are included in the fields searched

Electronic data base consulted during the international search (name of data base and, where practical, search terms used)

## C. DOCUMENTS CONSIDERED TO BE RELEVANT

Category *	Citation of document, with indication, where appropriate, of the relevant passages	Relevant to claim No.
X	EP,A,0 495 484 (SS PHARMACEUTICAL CO,LTD) 22 July 1992 see claims ---	13-20
X	EP,A,0 396 083 (SCHERING CORPORATION) 7 November 1990 see claims ---	13-20
X	EP,A,0 270 818 (SCHERING CORPORATION) 15 June 1988 see claims ---	13-20
	-/-	

Further documents are listed in the continuation of box C.

Patent family members are listed in annex.

## \* Special categories of cited documents :

- \*A\* document defining the general state of the art which is not considered to be of particular relevance
- \*E\* earlier document but published on or after the international filing date
- \*L\* document which may throw doubts on priority claim(s) or which is cited to establish the publication date of another citation or other special reason (as specified)
- \*O\* document referring to an oral disclosure, use, exhibition or other means
- \*P\* document published prior to the international filing date but later than the priority date claimed

\*T\* later document published after the international filing date or priority date and not in conflict with the application but cited to understand the principle or theory underlying the invention

\*X\* document of particular relevance; the claimed invention cannot be considered novel or cannot be considered to involve an inventive step when the document is taken alone

\*Y\* document of particular relevance; the claimed invention cannot be considered to involve an inventive step when the document is combined with one or more other such documents, such combination being obvious to a person skilled in the art.

\*&\* document member of the same patent family

Date of the actual completion of the international search

9 January 1995

Date of mailing of the international search report

16. 01. 95

## Name and mailing address of the ISA

European Patent Office, P.B. 5818 Patentstaan 2  
NL - 2280 HV Rijswijk  
Tel. (+31-70) 340-2040, Tx. 31 651 epo nl,  
Fax (+31-70) 340-3016

## Authorized officer

Henry, J

## INTERNATIONAL SEARCH REPORT

International Application No
PCT/US 94/11392

## C.(Continuation) DOCUMENTS CONSIDERED TO BE RELEVANT

Category *	Citation of document, with indication, where appropriate, of the relevant passages	Relevant to claim No.
X	JOURNAL OF MEDICINAL CHEMISTRY, vol.15, no.7, 1972, WASHINGTON US pages 750 - 754 FRANK J. VILLANI ET AL 'Derivatives of 10,11-Dihydro-5H-dibenzo[a,d]cycloheptene and related compounds.6.Aminoalkyl derivatives of the aza isosteres' *page 751, column 2, lines 16-29; page 752, table II, compounds 50, 51* ---	13-20
X	LIPIDS, vol.26, no.2, 1991 pages 1172 - 1174 M.MOTASIM BILLAH ET AL 'Discovery and preliminary pharmacology of SCH 37370, adual antagonist of PAF and histamine' see the whole document ---	13-20
X	JOURNAL OF MEDICINAL CHEMISTRY, vol.34, no.1, 1991, WASHINGTON US pages 457 - 461 JOHN J. PIWINSKI ET AL 'Dual antagonists of platelet activating factor and histamine. Identification of structural requirements for dual activity of N-acyl-4 -(5,6-dihydro-11H-benzo[5,6]cyclohepta-[1, 2-b]pyridin-11-ylidene)piperidines' see the whole document ----	13-20
A	WO,A,92 11034 (THE WELLCOME FOUNDATION LIMITED) 9 July 1992 cited in the application see claims -----	1-12

## INTERNATIONAL SEARCH REPORT

In national application No.

PCT/US 94/ 11392

## Box I Observations where certain claims were found unsearchable (Continuation of item 1 of first sheet)

This international search report has not been established in respect of certain claims under Article 17(2)(a) for the following reasons:

1.  Claims Nos.: because they relate to subject matter not required to be searched by this Authority, namely:  
Although claims 1 - 12 and 29 are directed to a method of treatment of the human body the search has been carried out and based on the alleged effects of the compounds.
2.  Claims Nos.: because they relate to parts of the international application that do not comply with the prescribed requirements to such an extent that no meaningful international search can be carried out, specifically:
3.  Claims Nos.: because they are dependent claims and are not drafted in accordance with the second and third sentences of Rule 6.4(a).

## Box II Observations where unity of invention is lacking (Continuation of item 2 of first sheet)

This International Searching Authority found multiple inventions in this international application, as follows:

1.  As all required additional search fees were timely paid by the applicant, this international search report covers all searchable claims.
2.  As all searchable claims could be searched without effort justifying an additional fee, this Authority did not invite payment of any additional fee.
3.  As only some of the required additional search fees were timely paid by the applicant, this international search report covers only those claims for which fees were paid, specifically claims Nos.:
4.  No required additional search fees were timely paid by the applicant. Consequently, this international search report is restricted to the invention first mentioned in the claims; it is covered by claims Nos.:

## Remark on Protest

- The additional search fees were accompanied by the applicant's protest.  
 No protest accompanied the payment of additional search fees.

## INTERNATIONAL SEARCH REPORT

In. .ation on patent family members

International Application No  
PCT/US 94/11392

Patent document cited in search report	Publication date	Patent family member(s)		Publication date
EP-A-0495484	22-07-92	JP-A-	5059040	09-03-93
		JP-B-	6076403	28-09-94
		US-A-	5231101	27-07-93
EP-A-0396083	07-11-90	US-A-	5089496	18-02-92
		AT-T-	114650	15-12-94
		AU-B-	643946	02-12-93
		AU-A-	5642090	29-11-90
		EP-A-	0471750	26-02-92
		IL-A-	94258	07-10-94
		JP-T-	4504724	20-08-92
		OA-A-	9521	15-11-92
		WO-A-	9013548	15-11-90
		US-A-	5151423	29-09-92
EP-A-0270818	15-06-88	US-A-	4826853	02-05-89
		AU-A-	7285991	30-05-91
		AU-B-	604285	13-12-90
		AU-A-	8336287	25-05-88
		CA-A-	1305147	14-07-92
		CA-A-	1321589	24-08-93
		EP-A-	0330673	06-09-89
		JP-B-	6078316	05-10-94
		JP-T-	2500910	29-03-90
		OA-A-	9546	31-01-93
		WO-A-	8803138	05-05-88
		US-A-	5089496	18-02-92
		ZA-A-	8708128	29-04-88
WO-A-9211034	09-07-92	AU-A-	9062691	22-07-92
		EP-A-	0563134	06-10-93
		JP-T-	6504772	02-06-94